CLASSICAL WORKS.

ementary
nguage.
. Revised

s, Notes,

tion, for
intended
ax. Part
to Idioms

ar, with
ns of Bat-

al Gram-
.D. 12mo.

Composi-
.D. 12mo.

Imitative
NSON, Pro-
dition, en-
ndex, etc.

291 pages.
English
hical and
CER, D.D.

hools and
e Univer-

lated from
Zump and Bonnell. By THOMAS A. THACHER, of Yale College. 12mo. 194 pages.

Dear Mr. [illegible]

[illegible]

January 14. 1879.

[illegible]

A
LATIN GRAMMAR
FOR
SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

BY

ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph. D.,
PROFESSOR IN BROWN UNIVERSITY.

REVISED EDITION,
EMBRACING
IMPORTANT RESULTS OF RECENT PHILOLOGICAL RESEARCH.

NEW YORK:
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,
549 AND 551 BROADWAY.
LONDON: 16 LITTLE BRITAIN.
1877.

PREFACE.

THE work now offered to the public had its origin in a desire to promote the cause of Classical study. It has long been the opinion of the author, in common with numerous classical teachers

NOTE TO THE REVISED EDITION.

Teachers will observe that, by the help of the table on page 356, all text-books which refer to this grammar can be used with this edition without inconvenience.

and are calling loudly for a better method than has hitherto prevailed in classical study.

The present work has been prepared in view of these facts. To explain its general plan, the author begs leave to specify the following points.

1. This volume is designed to present a systematic arrangement of the great facts and laws of the Latin language; to exhibit not only grammatical forms and constructions, but also those *vital principles* which underlie, control, and explain them.

2. Designed at once as a text-book for the class-room, and a book of reference in study, it aims to introduce the beginner easily and pleasantly to the first principles of the language, and yet to make adequate provision for the wants of the more advanced student. Accordingly it presents in large type a general survey of the whole subject in a brief and concise statement of facts and

PREFACE.

THE work now offered to the public had its origin in a desire to promote the cause of Classical study. It has long been the opinion of the author, in common with numerous classical teachers, that the subject of Latin Grammar, often regarded as dry and difficult, may be presented to the learner in a form at once simple, attractive, and philosophical. It is the aim of this manual to aid the instructor in the attainment of this most desirable end.

That the present is a favorable time for the production of a Latin Grammar scarcely admits of a doubt. Never before were there such facilities for the work. The last quarter of a century has formed an epoch in the study of language and in the methods of instruction. During this period some of the most gifted minds of Germany have been gathering the choicest treasures in the field of philology, while others have been equally successful in devising improved methods of instruction. In our own country too, the more enterprising teachers have caught the spirit of improvement, and are calling loudly for a better method than has hitherto prevailed in classical study.

The present work has been prepared in view of these facts. To explain its general plan, the author begs leave to specify the following points.

1. This volume is designed to present a systematic arrangement of the great facts and laws of the Latin language; to exhibit not only grammatical forms and constructions, but also those *vital principles* which underlie, control, and explain them.

2. Designed at once as a text-book for the class-room, and a book of reference in study, it aims to introduce the beginner easily and pleasantly to the first principles of the language, and yet to make adequate provision for the wants of the more advanced student. Accordingly it presents in large type a general survey of the whole subject in a brief and concise statement of facts and

laws, while parallel with this, in smaller type, it furnishes a fuller discussion of irregularities and exceptions for later study and for reference.

3. By brevity and conciseness in the choice of phraseology and compactness in the arrangement of forms and topics, the author has endeavored to compress within the limits of a convenient manual an amount of carefully selected grammatical facts, which would otherwise fill a much larger volume.

4. He has, moreover, endeavored to present the whole subject in the light of modern scholarship. Without encumbering his pages with any unnecessary discussions, he has aimed to enrich them with the *practical results* of the recent labors in the field of philology.

5. In the regular paradigms, both of declension and of conjugation, the stems and endings have been distinguished by a difference of type, thus keeping constantly before the pupil the significance of the two essential elements which enter into the composition of inflected forms.

6. Syntax has received in every part special attention. An attempt has been made to exhibit, as clearly as possible, that beautiful system of laws which the genius of the language—that highest of all grammatical authority—has created for itself. The leading principles of construction have been put in the form of definite rules, and illustrated by carefully selected examples. To secure convenience of reference and to give completeness and vividness to the general outline, these rules, after being separately discussed, are presented in a body at the close of the Syntax.

7. The subdivisions in each discussion are developed, as far as practicable, from the leading idea which underlies the whole subject. Thus in the treatment of cases, moods, and tenses, various uses, comparatively distinct in themselves, are found to centre around some leading idea or thought, thus imparting to the subject both unity and simplicity.

8. Topics which require extended illustration are first presented in their completeness in general outline, before the separate points are discussed in detail. Thus a single page often foreshadows all the leading features of an extended discussion, imparting a completeness and vividness to the impression of the learner, impossible under any other treatment.

9. Special care has been taken to explain and illustrate with

the requisite fulness all difficult and intricate subjects. The Subjunctive Mood—that severest trial of the teacher's patience—has been presented, it is hoped, in a form at once simple and comprehensive. The different uses have not only been carefully classified, but also distinguished by characteristic and appropriate terms, convenient for the class-room.

For the benefit of those who prefer to begin with a more elementary manual in the study of Latin, it is in contemplation to publish a smaller Grammar on precisely the same plan as the present work, and with the same mode of treatment. This will be especially adapted to the wants of those who do not contemplate a collegiate course of study.

A Latin Reader, prepared with special reference to this work and intended as a companion to it, will be published at an early day.

In conclusion the author cheerfully acknowledges his indebtedness to other scholars, who have labored in the same field. The classification of verbs is founded in part on that of Grotefend and Krüger, a mode of treatment generally adopted in the recent German works on the subject, and well exhibited by Allen in his Analysis of Latin Verbs.

In Prosody much aid has been derived from the excellent works of Ramsay and Habenicht.

On the general subjects of Etymology and Syntax, his indebtedness is less direct, though perhaps no less real. His views of philology have been formed in a great measure under the moulding influence of the great German masters; and perhaps few Latin Grammars of any repute have appeared within the last half century, either in this country, England, or Germany, from which he has not received valuable suggestions. In the actual work of preparation, however, he has carried out his own plan, and presented his own modes of treatment, but he has aimed to avoid all untried novelties and to admit only that which is sustained by the highest authority, and confirmed by the actual experience of the class-room.

The author is happy to express his grateful acknowledgments to the numerous Instructors who have favored him with valuable suggestions; especially to his esteemed friend and colleague, Professor J. L. Lincoln, of this University.

PROVIDENCE, R. I., May 10th, 1864.

PREFACE

TO THE REVISED EDITION.

PARTS First and Second in this edition have been entirely rewritten. The recent researches in Comparative Philology have thrown new light upon Latin forms and inflections, and have revealed many important facts in the development and growth of the language. Accordingly, in the present revision, it has been the constant aim of the author to secure for the learner the full benefit of all the practical results which these labors in the field of philology have brought within the proper sphere of the school. The general plan and scope of the work, however, remain the same as in former editions. Only such changes and additions have been made as seemed to promise desirable aid to the learner. Care has been taken to exclude from the work every thing which might divert his attention from the one object before him—the attainment of a full and accurate knowledge of the language.

In this connection, the author desires to express anew his grateful acknowledgments to the teachers and educators whose verdict of approval has contributed so largely to the success of his works. To their hands this new edition is now respectfully committed.

A. HARKNESS.

BROWN UNIVERSITY, *July*, 1874.

CONTENTS.

PART FIRST.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

PART SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

CHAPTER V.

PARTICLES.

CHAPTER VI.

FORMATION OF WORDS.

PART THIRD.

SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

CHAPTER II.

SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

CHAPTER III.

SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.

CHAPTER IV.

SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

CHAPTER V.

SYNTAX OF VERBS.

CHAPTER VI.

SYNTAX OF PARTICLES.

CHAPTER VII.

CHAPTER VIII.

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS AND CLAUSES.

PART FOURTH.

PROSODY.

CHAPTER I.

QUANTITY.

CHAPTER II.

VERSIFICATION.

APPENDIX.

LATIN GRAMMAR.

1. Latin Grammar treats of the principles of the Latin language. It comprises four parts:

I. Orthography, which treats of the letters and sounds of the language.

II. Etymology, which treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

III. Syntax, which treats of the construction of sentences.

IV. Prosody, which treats of quantity and versification.

PART FIRST.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

ALPHABET.

2. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English with the omission of *w*.

1. *U* supplies the place of *w*.

2. *H* is only a breathing, and not strictly entitled to the rank of a letter.

3. Originally *i* and *u* were used both as vowels and as consonants, and accordingly supplied the place of *j* and *v*.

4. *K* is seldom used, and *y* and *z* occur only in words of Greek origin.

3. Classes of Letters.—Letters are divided into two classes:

I. Vowels,	a, e, i, o, u, y.
II. Consonants:	
1. *Liquids*,	l, m, n, r.
2. *Spirants*,	h, f, v, j, s.
3. *Mutes:* 1) Labials—*lip-letters*,	b, p, f, v.
2) Dentals—*teeth-letters*,	d, t.
3) Gutturals—*throat-letters*,	c, g, k, q, h.
4. *Double Consonants*,	x, z.

4. Combinations of Letters.—We notice here,

1. *Diphthongs*—combinations of two vowels in one syllable. The most common are—*ae*, *oe*, *au*.

2. *Double Consonants*—*x* = *cs* or *gs*; *z* = *ds* or *sd*.

3. *Ch*, *ph*, *th* are best treated, not as combinations of letters, but only as aspirated forms of *c*, *p*, and *t*, as *h* is only a breathing.

5. Pronunciation.—Scholars in different countries generally pronounce Latin substantially as they do their own languages. In this country, however, three distinct *Methods* are recognized, generally known as the *English*, the *Roman*, and the *Continental*.[1] For the convenience of the instructor, we add a brief outline of each.

ENGLISH METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.

1. Sounds of the Vowels.

6. Vowels generally have their long or short English sounds. But

1. These sounds in Latin, as in English, are somewhat modified by the consonants which accompany them.

2. Before *r*, *final*, or followed by another consonant, *e*, *i*, and *u* are scarcely distinguishable from each other, as in the English *her*, *fir*, *fur*, while *a* and *o* are pronounced as in *far*, *for*.

3. Between *qu* and *dr*, or *rt*, *a* approaches the sound of *o*: *quar'-tus*, as in *quarter*.

7. Long Sounds.—Vowels have their long English

[1] Strictly speaking, there is no Continental Method, as every nation on the Continent of Europe has its own method.

sounds—**a** as in *fate*, **e** in *mete*, **i** in *pine*, **o** in *note*, **u** in *tube*, **y** in *type*—in the following situations:

1. In final syllables ending in a vowel: *se*, *si*, *ser'-vi*, *ser'-vo*, *cor'-nu*, *mi'-sy*.

2. In all syllables, before a vowel or diphthong: *de'-us*, *de-o'-rum*, *de'-ae*, *di-e'-i*, *ni'-hi-lum*.[1]

3. In penultimate[2] syllables before a single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r*: *pa'-ter*, *pa-'tres*, *A'-thos*, *O'-thrys*.

4. In unaccented syllables, not final, before a single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*: *do-lo'-ris*, *a-gric'-o-la*.

1) **A** *unaccented* has the sound of *a final* in *America*: *men'-sa*.

2) **I** and **y** *unaccented* in any syllable except the first and last generally have the short sound: *nob'-i-lis* (nob'-e-lis), *Am'-y-cus* (Am'-e-cus).

3) **U**, etc.—**U** has the short sound before *bl*; and the other vowels before *gl* and *tl*: *Pub-lic'-o-la*, *Ag-la'-o-phon*, *At'-las*.

4) **I**.—Between an accented *a*, *e*, *o*, or *y*, and another vowel, *i* sometimes stands for *j*. It is then pronounced like *y* in *yet*: *A-cha'-ia* (A-ka'-ya), *Pom-pe'-ius* (Pom-pe'-yus), *La-to'-ia* (La-to'-ya), *Har-py'-ia* (Har-py'-ya).

5) **U**.—After *q* and generally after *g*, *u* has the sound of *w*: *qui* (kwi), *qua*; *lin'-gua* (lin'-gwa), *lin'-guis*. Sometimes also after *s*: *sua'-de-o* (swa'-de-o).

6) Compound Words.—When the first part of a compound is entire and ends in a consonant, any vowel before such consonant has generally the *short* sound: *a* in *ab'-es*, *e* in *red'-it*, *i* in *in'-it*, *o* in *ob'-it*, *prod'-est*. But those final syllables which, as exceptions, have the *long* sound before a consonant (8, 1), retain that sound in compounds: *post'-quam*, *hos'-ce*. *E'-ti-am* and *quo'-ni-am* are generally pronounced as simple words.

8. Short Sounds.—Vowels have their short English sounds—**a** as in *fat*, **e** in *met*, **i** in *pin*, **o** in *not*, **u** in *tub*, **y** in *myth*—in the following situations:

1. In final syllables ending in a consonant: *a'-mat*, *a'-met*, *rex'-it*, *sol*, *con'-sul*, *Te'-thys*: except *post*, *es final*, and *os final* in plural cases: *res*, *di'-es*, *hos*, *a'-gros*.

2. In all syllables before *x*, or any two consonants ex-

---

[1] In these rules no account is taken of *h*, as that is only a breathing: hence the first *i* in *nihilum* is treated as a vowel before another vowel. for the same reason, *ch*, *ph*, and *th* are treated as single mutes; thus *th* in *Athos* and *Othrys*.

[2] Penultimate, the last syllable but one.

cept a mute with *l* or *r* (7, 3 and 4): *rex'-it, bel'-lum, rex-e'-runt, bel-lo'-rum.*

3. In all accented syllables, not penultimate, before one or more consonants: *dom'-ĭ-nus, pat'-rĭ-bus.*

1) **A, e,** or **o,** before a single consonant (or a mute with *l* or *r*) followed by *e, i,* or *y,* before another vowel, has the long sound: *a'-ci-es, a'-cri-a, me'-re-o, do'-ce-o.*

2) **U,** in any syllable not final, before a single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r*, except *bl*, has the long sound: *Pu'-ni-cus, sa-lu'-bri-tas.*

3) Compounds. See 7, 6.)

2. Sounds of the Diphthongs.

9. Ae like *e*: *Cae'-sar, Daed'-ă-lus.*[1]
Oe like *e*: *Oe'-ta, Oed'-ĭ-pus.*[1]
Au, as in author: *au'-rum.*
Eu, . . . neuter: *neu'-ter.*

1. **Ei** and **oi** are seldom diphthongs, but when so used they are pronounced as in height, coin: *hei, proin.* See Synaeresis, 669, II.

2. **Ui,** as a diphthong with the long sound of *i*, occurs in *cui, hui, huic.*

3. Sounds of the Consonants.

10. The consonants are pronounced in general as in English, but a few directions may aid the learner.

11. C, G, S, T, and **X** are generally pronounced with their ordinary English sounds. Thus

1. **C** and **g** are *soft* (like s and j) before *e, i, y, ae,* and *oe,* and *hard* in other situations: *ce'-do* (se'-do), *ci'-vis, Cy'-rus, cae'-do, coe'-pi, a'-ge* (a'-je), *a'-gi; ca'do* (ka'-do), *co'-go, cum, Ga'-des.* But

1) *Ch* is hard like *k*: *Cho'-rus* (ko'-rus), *Chi'-os* (Ki'-os).

2) *G* has the soft sound before *g* soft: *ag'-ger.*

2. **S** generally has its English sound, as in son, this: *sa'-cer, si'-dus.*

1) *S final,* after *e, ae, au, b, m, n, r,* is pronounced like *z*: *spes, praes, laus, urbs, hi'-ems, mons, pars.*

2) In a few words *s* has the sound of *z*, because so pronounced in English words derived from them: *Cae'-sar,* Caesar; *cau'-sa,* cause; *mu'-sa,* muse; *mi'-ser,* miser, etc.

---

[1] The diphthong has the *long sound* in *Cae'-sar* and *Oe'-ta* according to 7, 3, but the *short sound* in *Daed'-ă-lus* (Ded'-a-lus) and *Oed'-ĭ-pus* (Ed'-i-pus) according to 8, 3, as *e* would be thus pronounced in the same situations.

3. **T** has its regular English sound, as in time: *ti'-mor*, *to'-tus*.

4. **X** has generally its regular English sound like *ks*: *rex'-i* (rek'-si). But at the beginning of a word it has the sound of *z*: *Xan'-thus*.

12. C, S, T, X—*Aspirated.*—Before *i* preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel, *c*, *s*, *t*, and *x* are aspirated—*c*, *s*, and *t* taking the sound of *sh*, *x* that of *ksh*: *so'-ci-us* (so'-she-us), *Al'-si-um* (Al'-she-um), *ar'-ti-um* (ar'-she-um), *anx'-i-us* (ank'-she-us). *C* has also the sound of *sh* before *eu* and *yo* preceded by an accented syllable: *ca-du'-ce-us* (ca-du'-she-us), *Sic'-y-on* (Sish'-e-on).

1. **T** loses the aspirate—(1) after *s*, *t*, or *x*; *Os'-ti-a*, *At'-ti-us*, *mix'-ti-o*:—(2) in old infinitives in *ier*; *flec'-ti-er*:—(3) generally in proper names in *tion* (tyon); *Phi-lis'-ti-on*, *Am-phic'-ty-on*.

4. Syllables.

13. In Latin, every word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs: *mo'-re*, *per-sua'-de*, *men'-sae*.

14. In the division of words into syllables:

1. After a vowel (or diphthong), with the *Long Sound* (7), consonants are joined to the following vowel: *pa'-ter*, *pa'-tres*, *a-gro'-rum*, *au-di'-vi*.

2. After a vowel with the *Short Sound* (8),

1) *A single* or *double consonant* is joined to such vowel, except after *i* unaccented: *gen'-e-ri*, *rex'-i*, *dom'-i-nus*.

2) *Two consonants* are separated: *bel'-lum*, *men'-sa*, *pat'-ri-bus*. But *x* following a consonant is joined to the preceding syllable: *Xerx'-es*.

3) *Of three* or *more consonants*, the last, or, if a mute with *l* or *r*, the last two are joined to the following vowel: *emp'-tus*, *tem'-plum*, *claus'-tra*.

3. But compound words are separated into their component parts, if the first of those parts is entire, and ends in a consonant: *hos'-ce*, *post'-quam*.

ROMAN METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.

1. Sounds of the Vowels.

15. The vowel sounds are the following:

LONG.			SHORT.		
ā like *a* in	father:	*ā'-rīs*.	ă like *a* in	fast:	*ă'-mĕt*.
ē *a*	made:	*ē'-dī*.	ĕ *e*	net:	*rĕ'-gĕt*.

LONG.				SHORT.			
ī like	*e* in	me:	*ī'-rī.*	ĭ like	*i* in	divert:	*vĭ'-dĕt.*
ō	*o*	rode:	*ō'-rās.*	ŏ	*o*	romance:	*mŏ'-nĕt.*
ū	*o*	do:	*ū'-nō.*	ŭ	*u*	full:	*sŭ'-mŭs.*

1. When a short vowel is lengthened by position (21, 2), it retains its short sound: *sunt*, *u* as in *sŭ'-mŭs*.

2. **Y**, found only in Greek words, is in sound intermediate between the Latin *u* and *i*: *Nȳ'-să*.

3. **I.**—Between an accented *a*, *e*, *o*, or *y*, and another vowel, *i* generally stands for *j*. It is then pronounced like *y* in *yet* (17): *A-chā'-iă* (A-ka'-ya).

4. **U.**—After *q*, and generally after *g*, *u* has the sound of *w*: *quī* (kwe), *lin'-guă* (lin'-gwa). So also in *cuī*, *huī*, *huic*, and sometimes after *s*: *suā'-dĕ-o* (swa'-de-o).

2. Sounds of the Diphthongs.

16. In diphthongs each vowel retains its own sound:

ae (for *ai*) like the English *aye* (yes): *men'-sae.*[1]
au like *ow* in how: *cau'-să.*
oe (for *oi*) like *oi* in coin: *foe'-dŭs.*

1. **Ei**, as in *veil*, and **eu**, with the sounds of *e* and *u* combined, occur in a few words: *dein*, *neu'-tĕr*.

3. Sounds of the Consonants.

17. Most of the consonants are pronounced nearly as in English, but the following require special notice:

c like	*k* in	king:	*cē'-lēs* (kalas), *cī'-vī* (kewe).
g	*g*	get:	*gĕ'-nŭs, rĕ'-gĭs.*
j	*y*	yet:	*jă'-cĕt* (yaket), *jūs'-sŭm.*
s	*s*	son:	*să'-cĕr, sŏ'-rŏr.*
t	*t*	time:	*tĭ'-mŏr, tō'-tŭs.*
v	*w*	we:	*vă'-dŭm, vī'-cī.*

4. Syllables.

18. In dividing words into syllables

1. Make as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs: *mō'-rĕ, per-suā'-dē, men'-sae.*

---

[1] Combining the sounds of *a* and *i*.

2. Join to each vowel as many of the consonants which precede it—one or more—as can be conveniently pronounced at the beginning of a word or syllable:[1] *pă'-tĕr*, *pă'-trēs*, *gĕ'-nĕ-rī*, *dŏ'-mĭ-nŭs*, *no'-scĭt*, *si'-stĭs*, *clau'-strā*, *men'-sā*, *bel'-lŭm*, *jūs'-sŭm*, *tem'-plŭm*, *emp'-tŭs*. But

3. Compound words must be separated into their component parts, if the first of these parts is entire and ends in a consonant: *ăb'-ĕs*, *ŏb-ī'-rĕ*.

CONTINENTAL METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.

19. The Continental Method, as adopted in this country, is almost identical with the Roman, except in the pronunciation of the consonants, in which it more nearly coincides with the English. See 15, 16, 10, 11, 12, and 18.

QUANTITY.

20. Syllables are in quantity or length either long, short, or common.[2]

21. Long.—A syllable is long in quantity

1. If it contains a dipththong: *haec*.

2. If its vowel is followed by *j*, *x*, *z*, or any two consonants, except a mute with *l* or *r*: *rex*, *mons*.

22. Short.—A syllable is short, if its vowel is followed by another vowel or a diphthong: *di'-ēs*, *vi'-ae*, *ni'-hĭl*.[3]

23. Common.—A syllable is common, if its vowel, naturally short, is followed by a mute with *l* or *r*: *a'-grī*.

1. The signs ¯, ˘, ˘̄ are used to mark quantity, the first denoting that the syllable over which it is placed is *long*, the second that it is *short*, and the third that it is *common*: *ă̄-grō-rŭm*.

ACCENTUATION.

24. Words of two syllables are always accented on the first: *men'-sa*.

---

[1] By some grammarians a mute and a liquid are always joined to the following vowel, as also any combination of consonants which can begin a Greek word: *i'-gnĭs*, *o'-mnĭs*, *i'-psĕ*, but there is little evidence that the ancient Romans divided words in this way.

[2] Common, i. e., sometimes long and sometimes short. For rules of quantity see Prosody. Two or three leading facts are here given for the convenience of the learner.

[3] No account is taken of the breathing *h* (2, 2).

25. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the *Penult*[1] if that is long in quantity, otherwise on the *Antepenult*:[2] *hŏ-nō'-rĭs, con'-sŭ-lĭs.*

1. Genitives in *i* for ii and vocatives in *i* for ie retain the accent of the full form: *in-gĕ'-nī* for in-ge'-ni-i; *Mer-cŭ'-rī* for Mer-cu'-ri-e.

2. Penults common in quantity take the accent when used as long.

3. Compounds are accented like simple words; but

1) The enclitics, *quĕ, vĕ, nĕ*, throw back their accents upon the last syllable of the word to which they are appended: *hŏm'-ĭ-nĕ'-quĕ, men-să'-quĕ.*

2) *Făcio*, compounded with other words than prepositions, retains its own accent: *căl-ĕ-fă'-cĭt.*

4. A second accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the primary accent,—on the second, if that is the first syllable of the word, or is long in quantity, otherwise on the third: *mŏn'-u-ē'-runt; mŏn'-u-ĕ-ră'-mŭs; in-stau'-ră-vē'-runt.*

5. In the same way, a third accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the second accent: *hŏn'-ŏ-rĭf'-ĭ-cen-tis'-sĭ-mŭs.*

EUPHONIC LAWS.

26. Latin words have undergone important changes in accordance with certain euphonic laws.

I. Changes in Vowels.

27. Vowels are often lengthened, especially in compensation for the dropping of consonants: *servoms, servōs; rēgems, rēgēs.*

28. Vowels are sometimes changed through the influence of the consonants which follow them. Thus e is the favorite vowel before *r*, i before *s*, u before *l*, especially before *l* followed by another consonant: *cĭnĭs, cĭnĕrĭs* for *cinisis* (35), ashes; *vult* for *volt*, he wishes.

1. **E** *final* is a favorite vowel: *servĕ* for *servo*, O slave: *mŏnērĕ*, for *monēri*, for *monēris*, you are advised. See 34.

2. **E** is also a favorite vowel for ĭ,

1) Before *x* or two or more consonants, especially in final syllables: *jūdex* for *judix*, judge; *mīlĕs* for *milets* for *milits*, soldier.

---

[1] In the subsequent pages the pupil will be expected to accent words in pronunciation according to these rules. The quantity of the penult in words of more than two syllables will therefore be marked (unless determined by 21 and 22), to enable him to ascertain the place of the accent.

[2] Penult, the last syllable but one; antepenult, the last but two.

2) In accented syllables before *a*, *i*, *o*, or *u*: *ea* for *ia*, this; *eī* for *iī*, these; *eo* for *io*, I go; *eunt* for *iunt*, they go.

29. Vowels are sometimes shortened, regularly so in final syllables before *m* and *t*; *ĕrăm* for *erām*, I was; *ĕrăt* for *erāt*, he was.

30. Vowels are often weakened, i. e., changed to weaker vowels, in consequence of the lengthening of the word by inflection, composition, etc.

The order of the vowels from the strongest to the weakest is as follows:

a, o, u, e, i:

confĭcio for *confacio*, I accomplish; *servŭs* for *servos*, slave; *fructĭbŭs* for *fructŭbus*, with fruits; *carmĭnĭs* for *carmĕnis*, of song.

1. Diphthongs are also sometimes weakened:
   - **ae** (for *ai*) to **ī** or **ē**: *incīdĭt* for *incaedit*, he cuts into.
   - **oe** (for *oi*) to **ū** or **ī**: *pūnīrĕ* for *poenīre*, to punish.
   - **au** to **ū** or **ō**: *exclūdo* for *exclaudo*, to shut out.

31. Vowels are often dropped in the middle or at the end of words, sometimes even at the beginning: *tempŭlŭm*, *templŭm*, temple; *pătĕrĭs*, *patrĭs*, of a father; *ănĭmālĕ*, *ănĭmăl*, an animal; *ĕsŭm*, *sŭm*, I am.

32. Two successive vowels are sometimes contracted

I. Into a DIPHTHONG: *mensā-ī*, *mensae*, tables.

II. More frequently into a LONG VOWEL. In this case the second vowel generally disappears. Thus **e** and **i** often disappear after *a*, *e*, and *o*; *ămāvĕrăt*, *ama-ĕ-rat*, *ămārăt*, he had loved; *ămāvissĕ*, *ama-isse*, *ămāssĕ*, to have loved. But

1. The first vowel disappears in the following endings:

1) In **a-is**, in Declension I.: *mensa-is*, *mensīs*, with tables.

2) In **o-is**, and **o-i**, in Declension II.: *servo-is*, *servīs*, for slaves, *servo-i*, *servī*, slaves. But in the Dative Singular, **o-i** becomes **ō**; *servo-i*, *servō*, for the slave.

3) In **a-o** in Conjugation I.: *ămā-o*, *ămo*, I love.

2. **A-i** becomes **ē** in the Subjunctive of Conjugation I.: *ămā-īs*, *ămēs*, you may love.

3. **O-ă** becomes **ă** in neuters of Declension II.: *templo-ă*, *templă*, temples.

II. CHANGES IN CONSONANTS.

33. **S** uniting with a preceding *c* or *g* forms *x*: *dux* for *ducs*, leader; *rex* for *regs*, king.

34. S final is often dropped: *mŏnērĕ* for *monēri* for *monēris*, you are advised. See 28, 1.

35. S standing between two vowels is generally changed to *r*: *flōrēs* for *floses*, flowers.

36. D and t are generally dropped before *s*: *lăpĭs* for *lapids*, stone; *aetās* for *aetats*, age; *mīlĕs* for *milets*, *milits*, soldier.

PART SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

37. ETYMOLOGY treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

38. The Parts of Speech are—*Nouns*, *Adjectives*, *Pronouns*, *Verbs*, *Adverbs*, *Prepositions*, *Conjunctions*, and *Interjections*.

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

39. A Noun or Substantive is a name, as of a person, place, or thing: *Cĭcĕro*, Cicero; *Rōmă*, Rome; *dŏmŭs*, house.

1. A PROPER NOUN is a proper name, as of a person or place: *Cĭcĕro*; *Rōmă*.

2. A COMMON NOUN is a name common to all the members of a class of objects: *vĭr*, a man; *ĕquŭs*, horse. Common nouns include

1) *Collective Nouns*—designating a collection of objects: *pŏpŭlŭs*, people; *exercĭtŭs*, army.

2) *Abstract Nouns*—designating properties or qualities: *virtūs*, virtue; *justĭtiă*, justice.

3) *Material Nouns*—designating materials as such: *aurŭm*, gold; *lignŭm*, wood; *ăquă*, water.

40. Nouns have *Gender*, *Number*, *Person*, and *Case*.

I. GENDER.

41. There are three genders[1]—*Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*.

1. In some nouns, gender is determined by signification; in others, by endings.

42. GENERAL RULES FOR GENDER.

I. MASCULINES.

1. Names of *Males*: *Cĭcĕro*; *vĭr*, man; *rex*, king.

2. Names of *Rivers*, *Winds*, and *Months*: *Rhēnŭs*, Rhine; *Nŏtŭs*, south wind; *Martiŭs*, March.

II. FEMININES.

1. Names of *Females*: *mŭliĕr*, woman; *leaenă*, lioness.

2. Names of *Countries*, *Towns*, *Islands*, and *Trees*: *Aegyptŭs*, Egypt; *Rōmă*, Rome; *Dēlŏs*, Delos; *pĭrŭs*, pear-tree.

III. NEUTERS.

1. *Indeclinable Nouns*: *fās*, right; *nihĭl*, nothing.

2. *Words* and *Clauses* used as *indeclinable nouns*: *tristĕ vălē*, a sad farewell.

43. REMARKS ON GENDER.

1. EXCEPTIONS.—The endings[2] of nouns sometimes give them a gender at variance with these rules. Thus

1) The names of rivers—*Albŭlă*, *Alliă*, *Lēthē*, *Styx*, and sometimes others, are feminine by ending.

2) Some names of *countries*, *towns*, *islands*, *trees*, and *animals*, take the gender of their endings. See 53, 1.

2. MASCULINE OR FEMININE.—A few personal appellatives applicable to both sexes and a few names of animals are sometimes *masculine* and sometimes *feminine*, but when used without distinct reference to sex they are generally *masculine*: *cīvĭs*, citizen (man or woman); *bōs*, ox, cow.

3. EPICENE NOUNS have but one gender, but are used for both sexes. They apply only to the inferior animals, and usually take the gender of their endings: *ansĕr*, goose, masculine; *ăquĭlă*, eagle, feminine.

---

[1] In English, *Gender* denotes *sex*. Accordingly, masculine nouns denote *males*; feminine nouns, *females*; and neuter nouns, objects which are *neither male nor female*. In Latin, however, this natural distinction of gender is applied only to the names of *males* and *females*; while, in all other nouns, gender depends upon an artificial distinction according to grammatical rules.

[2] Gender as determined by the endings of nouns will be noticed in connection with the several declensions.

II. Person and Number.

44. The Latin, like the English, has three persons and two numbers. The first person denotes the speaker; the second, the person spoken to; the third, the person spoken of. The singular number denotes one, the plural more than one.

III. Cases.[1]

45. The Latin has six cases:

Names.	English Equivalents.
Nominative,	Nominative.
Genitive,	Possessive, or Objective with *of*.
Dative,	Objective with *to* or *for*.
Accusative,	Objective.
Vocative,	Nominative Independent.
Ablative,	Objective with *from*, *by*, *in*, *with*.

1. Oblique Cases.—The Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative, are called the Oblique Cases.

2. Locative.—The Latin has also a few remnants of another case, called the Locative, denoting the *place in which*.

DECLENSION.

46. Stem and Endings.—The process by which the several cases of a word are formed is called Declension. It consists in the addition of certain endings to one common base called the stem.

1. Meaning.—Accordingly, each case-form contains two distinct elements—the *stem*, which gives the general meaning of the word, and the *case-ending*, which shows the relation of that meaning to some other word. Thus in *rēg-ĭs*, of a king, the general idea, *king*, is denoted by the stem *reg*, the relation *of*, by the ending *is*.

2. Cases alike.—But certain cases are not distinguished in form.

1) The *Nominative*, *Accusative*, and *Vocative in neuters* are alike, and in the plural end in *a*.

---

[1] The *case* of a noun shows the relation which that noun sustains to other words; as, *John's book*. Here the *possessive case* (*John's*) shows that John sustains to the book the relation of *possessor*.

2) The *Nominative* and *Vocative* are alike, except in the singular of nouns in *us* of the second declension (51).[1]

3) The *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* are alike.

47. Five Declensions.—In Latin there are five declensions, distinguished from each other by the endings of the Stem, or of the Genitive Singular, as follows:

	Stem-Endings.	Genitive Endings.
Dec. I.	**a**	**ae**
II.	**o**	**ī**
III.	**i** *or* consonant.	**ĭs**
IV.	**u**	**ūs**
V.	**e**	**ēī**

1. The five declensions are only five varieties of one general system of inflection, as the case-endings are nearly identical in all nouns.

2. But these case-endings appear distinct and unchanged only in nouns of the Third Declension, while in all others they are seen only in combination with the final vowel of the stem.

FIRST DECLENSION: A NOUNS.

48. Nouns of the first declension end in

ă and **ē**,—*feminine*; **ās** and **ēs**,—*masculine*.[2]

Nouns in *a* are declined as follows:

SINGULAR.

	Example.	Meaning.	Case-Endings.
Nom.	mens**ă**,	*a table,*	ă
Gen.	mens**ae**,	*of a table,*	ae
Dat.	mens**ae**,	*to, for a table,*	ae
Acc.	mens**ăm**,	*a table,*	ăm
Voc.	mens**ă**,	*O table,*	ă
Abl.	mens**ā**,	*with, from, by a table,*	ā

PLURAL.

Nom.	mens**ae**,	*tables,*	ae
Gen.	mens**ārŭm**,	*of tables,*	ārŭm
Dat.	mens**īs**,	*to, for tables,*	īs
Acc.	mens**ās**,	*tables,*	ās
Voc.	mens**ae**,	*O tables,*	ae
Abl.	mens**īs**,	*with, from, by tables.*	īs.

[1] And in some nouns of Greek origin.

[2] That is, nouns of this declension in *a* and *e* are feminine, and those in *as* and *es* are masculine.

1. STEM.—In nouns of the First Declension, the stem ends in **a**.

2. In the PARADIGM, observe

1) That the stem is *mensa*, and that the Nominative Singular is the same.

2) That the several cases are distinguished from each other by their case-endings.

3) That these case-endings contain the stem-ending **a** (47, 2), which disappears in the ending **īs**, contracted from *a-is*, in the Dative and Ablative Plural. See 32,1,1).

3. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.—Like *mensa* decline:

Ala, wing; *ăqua*, water; *causa*, cause; *fortūna*, fortune.

4. LOCATIVE.—Names of towns and a very few other words have a Locative Singular in **ae**: *Rōmae*, at Rome; *mĭlĭtiae*, in war.

5. EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.—*Hadria*, Adriatic Sea, is masculine; sometimes also *dāma*, deer, and *talpa*, mole. See also 43, 1.

6. ARTICLE.—The Latin has no article. A noun may therefore, according to the connection in which it is used, be translated either without any article, with *a* or *an*, or with *the*: *cŏrōna*, crown, a crown, the crown.

49. IRREGULAR CASE-ENDINGS.—The following occur:

1. **Ās**, an old form for *ae*, in the Genitive of *fămĭlia*, in composition with *pătĕr*, *mātĕr*, *fīlĭŭs*, and *fīlia*: *paterfamiliās*, father of a family.

2. **Āī** for the genitive ending *ae*, in the poets: *aulāī* for *aulae*, of a hall.

3. **Um** for *ārum* in the Gen. Plur.: *Dardănĭdūm* for *Dardanidārum*, of the descendants of Dardanus.

4. **Ābŭs**, the original form for **īs**, in the Dat. and Abl. Plur., especially in *dea*, goddess, and *fīlia*, daughter, to distinguish them from the same cases of *deŭs*, god, and *fīlĭŭs*, son: *deābŭs* for *deīs*, to goddesses.

50. GREEK NOUNS.—Nouns of this declension in **e**, **as**, and **es** are of Greek origin, and are declined as follows:

Epitŏme, *epitome*.	Aenēas, *Aeneas*.	Pyrītes, *pyrites*.
	SINGULAR.	
N. ĕpĭtŏm**ē**	Aenē**ās**	pŷrīt**ēs**
G. epitŏm**ēs**	Aenē**ae**	pyrīt**ae**
D. epitŏm**ae**	Aenē**ae**	pyrīt**ae**
A. epitŏm**ēn**	Aenē**ām, ān**	pyrīt**ēn**
V. epitŏm**ē**	Aenē**ā**	pyrīt**ē, ā**
A. epitŏm**ē**	Aenē**ā.**	pyrīt**ē, ā**

PLURAL.

N.	ĕpĭtŏm**ae**	pȳrĭt**ae**
G.	epitom**ārŭm**	pyrit**ārŭm**
D.	epitŏm**īs**	pyrĭt**īs**
A.	epitŏm**ās**	pyrĭt**ās**
V.	epitŏm**ae**	pyrĭt**ae**
A.	epitŏm**īs.**	pyrĭt**īs.**

1. Paradigms.—Observe

1) That in the Plural and in the Dative Singular, Greek nouns are declined like *mensa.*

2) That the stem-ending **a** is changed into **e** in certain cases of nouns in *e* and *es.*

2. Many Greek nouns assume the Latin ending *a*, and are declined like *mensa.* Many in *e* have also a form in *a ; epitŏme, epitŏma,* epitome.

SECOND DECLENSION: O NOUNS.

51. Nouns of the second declension end in

ĕr, ĭr, ŭs, and **os**—*masculine;* **ŭm,** and **on**—*neuter.*

Nouns in *er, ir, us,* and *um,* are declined as follows:

Servus, *slave.* Puer, *boy.* Ager, *field.* Templum, *temple.*

SINGULAR.

	Servus	Puer	Ager	Templum
N.	serv**ŭs**	puĕr	ăgĕr	templ**ŭm**
G.	serv**ī**	puĕr**ī**	ăgr**ī**	templ**ī**
D.	serv**ō**	puĕr**ō**	agr**ō**	templ**ō**
A.	serv**ŭm**	puĕr**ŭm**	agr**ŭm**	templ**ŭm**
V.	serv**ĕ**	puĕr	agĕr	templ**ŭm**
A.	serv**ō**	puĕr**ō**	agr**ō**	templ**ō**

PLURAL.

	Servus	Puer	Ager	Templum
N.	serv**ī**	puĕr**ī**	ăgr**ī**	templ**ă**
G.	serv**ōrŭm**	puer**ōrŭm**	agr**ōrŭm**	templ**ōrŭm**
D.	serv**īs**	puĕr**īs**	agr**īs**	templ**īs**
A.	serv**ōs**	puĕr**ōs**	agr**ōs**	templ**ă**
V.	serv**ī**	puĕr**ī**	agr**ī**	templ**ă**
A.	serv**īs.**	puĕr**īs.**	agr**īs.**	templ**īs.**

1. Stem.—In nouns of the Second Declension, the stem ends in **o**.

2. In the Paradigms, observe

1) That the stems are *servo, puĕro, agro,* and *templo.*

2) That the stem-ending **o** becomes **u** in the endings *us* and *um*, and **e** in *serve,*[1] that it disappears by contraction in the endings *a, i,* and *is* (for *o-a, o-i* and *o-is*),[2] and is dropped in the forms *puer* and *ăger.*

---

[1] See 30, and 28, 1.

[2] See 32, II. 1 and 3.

3) That the case-endings, including the stem-ending **o** (47, 2), are as follows:

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	Neut.
Nom.	ŭs, —[1]	ŭm
Gen.	ī	ī
Dat.	ō	ō
Acc.	ŭm	ŭm
Voc.	ĕ, —[1]	ŭm
Abl.	ō	ō

PLURAL.

Nom.	ī	ă
Gen.	ōrŭm	ōrŭm
Dat.	īs	īs
Acc.	ōs	ă
Voc.	ī	ă
Abl.	īs.	īs.

4) That *puer* and *ăger* differ in declension from *servus* in dropping the endings *us* and *e* in the Nom. and Voc.; Nom. *puer* for *puĕrus*, Voc. *puer* for *puĕre.*

5) That *ăger* inserts *e* before *r* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing.[2]

6) That *templum*, as a neuter noun, has the Nom., Accus., and Voc. alike, ending in the plural in *a*. See 46, 2, 1).

3. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.—Like SERVUS: *dŏmĭnus*, master.—Like PUER: *gĕner*, son-in-law.—Like AGER: *măgister*, master.—Like TEMPLUM: *bellum*, war.

4. NOUNS IN **er** AND **ir**.—Most nouns in *er* are declined like *ăger*, but the following in *er* and *ir* are declined like *puer.*

1) Nouns in *ir: vir, vĭri*, man.

2) Compounds in *fer* and *ger: armĭger, armĭgĕri*, armor-bearer; *signĭfer, signĭfĕri*, standard-bearer.

3) *Adulter*, adulterer; *Celtĭber*, Celtiberian;[3] *gĕner*, son-in-law; *Iber*, Spaniard;[3] *Līber*, Bacchus; *lĭbĕri*, children; *Mulcĭber*, Vulcan;[3] *presbўter*, elder; *sŏcer*, father-in-law; *vesper*, evening.

5. DEUS.—Declined thus: Sing. *deŭs, deī, deō, deŭm, deŭs, deō:* Plur. N. and V. *deī, diī, dī;* G. *deōrŭm, deŭm;* D. and A. *deīs, diīs, dīs*, Acc. *deōs.*

---

[1] The endings of the Nom. and Voc. Sing. are wanting in nouns in *er*.

[2] In *puer*, *e* belongs to the stem, and is accordingly retained in all the cases; but in *ăger* it is inserted in the Nom. and Voc. Sing., as *agr* would be difficult to pronounce.

[3] Celtĭber and Iber have *e long* in the Gen., and Mulcĭber sometimes drops *e*.

6. Locative.—Names of Towns and a few other words have a Locative Singular in **i**: *Cŏrinthi*, at Corinth; *Ephĕsi*, at Ephesus; *hŭmi*, on the ground.

52. Irregular Case-Endings.—The following occur:

1. **I** for *ii* by contraction in the Gen. Sing., without change of accent: *ingĕ'nī* for *inge'nii*, of talent.

2. **I** for *ie*, common in proper names in *ius*, without change of accent: *Mercŭ'rī* for *Mercŭ'rie*, Mercury. Also in *fīlī* for *fīlie*, son; *gĕnī* for *gĕnie*, guardian spirit.

3. **Us** for *e* in the Voc. of *deus*, god, rare in other words.

4. **Um** for *ōrŭm*, common in a few words denoting money, weight, and measure: *tălentŭm* for *tălentōrum*, of talents; also in a few other words: *deŭm* for *deōrum*; *lībĕrŭm* for *lībĕrōrum*; *Argīvŭm* for *Argīvōrum*.

53. Exceptions in Gender.

1. *Feminine*:—(1) See 42, II., but observe that many names of *countries*, *towns*, *islands*, and *trees*, follow the gender of their endings. (2) Most names of gems and ships are feminine: also *alvus*, belly; *carbăsus*, sail; *cŏlus*, distaff; *hŭmus*, ground; *vannus*, sieve. (3) A few Greek feminines.

2. *Neuter*:—*pĕlăgus*, sea; *vīrus*, poison; *vulgus* (rarely masc.), common people.

54. Greek Nouns.—Nouns of this declension in **os** and **on** are of Greek origin, and are declined in the singular as follows:

Delos, F.,[1] *Delos.*	Androgeos, *Androgeos.*	Ilion, *Ilium.*
	SINGULAR.	
N. Dēlŏ**s**	Andrŏge**ōs**	Ili**ŏn**
G. Del**ī**	Androge**ō, ī**	Ili**ī**
D. Del**ō**	Androge**ō**	Ili**ō**
A. Del**ŏn**	Androge**ōn, ō**	Ili**ŏn**
V. Del**ĕ**	Androge**ōs**	Ili**ŏn**
A. Del**ō**.	Androge**ō**.	Ili**ō**.

1. The Plural of nouns in *os* and *on* is generally regular, but certain Greek endings occur, as *oe* in the Nom. Plur., and *ōn* in the Gen.

2. Most Greek nouns generally assume the Latin forms in *us* and *um*, and are declined like *servus* and *regnum*. Many in *os* or *on* have also a form in *us* or *um*.

3. Greek nouns in *eus*. See 68 and 68, 1.

4. *Panthus* has Voc. *Panthū*; *pĕlăgus*, Acc. Plur., *pĕlăgē*.

---

[1] M stands for *masculine*, F for *feminine*, and N for *neuter*.

THIRD DECLENSION: CONSONANT AND I NOUNS.

55. Nouns of the third declension end in

a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, and **x.**

56. Nouns of this declension may be divided into two classes:

I. Nouns whose stem ends in a *Consonant.*

II. Nouns whose stem ends in **I.**[1]

CLASS I.—CONSONANT STEMS.

57. Stems ending in a Labial: **B** or **P.**

Princeps, M.,[2] *a leader, chief.* Case-Endings.

	SINGULAR.	
N. princep**s**,	*a leader,*	s
G. princĭp**ĭs**,	*of a leader,*	ĭs
D. princĭp**ī**,	*to, for a leader,*	ī
A. princĭp**ĕm**,	*a leader,*	ĕm
V. princep**s**,	*O leader,*	s
A. princĭp**ĕ**,	*with, from, by a leader,*	ĕ
	PLURAL.	
N. princĭp**ēs**,	*leaders,*	ēs
G. princĭp**ŭm**,	*of leaders,*	ŭm
D. princip**ĭbŭs**,	*to, for leaders,*	ĭbŭs
A. princĭp**ēs**,	*leaders,*	ēs
V. princĭp**ēs**,	*O leaders,*	ēs
A. princip**ĭbŭs**,	*with, from, by leaders.*	ĭbŭs.

1. Stem and Case-Endings.—In this Paradigm observe

1) That the stem is *princĕp*, modified before an additional syllable to *princĭp*. See 30 and 57, 2.

2) That the case-endings are appended to the stem without change. See 47, 2.

2. Variable Radical Vowel.—In the final syllable of dissyllabic consonant stems, short **e** or **i** generally takes the form of *ĕ* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. and that of *ĭ* in all the other cases. Thus *princeps, princĭpis*, and *jūdex, jūdĭcis* (59), both alike have *e* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. and *i* in all the other cases, though in *princeps*, the original form of the radical vowel is **e** and in *jūdex*, **i**. For a similar change in the radical vowel, see *mīlĕs, mīlĭtis* (58) and *carmĕn, carmĭnis* (60). See also *ŏpŭs, ŏpĕris* (61).

[1] For Gender see 99–115.

[2] See foot-note p. 17.

3. In monosyllables in *bs* the stem ends in **i**. See *urbs*, 64.

4. Synopsis of Declension. See 86, 88.

58. Stems ending in a Dental: D or T.

Lapis, M., *stone.*	Aetas, F., *age.*	Miles, M., *soldier.*
	SINGULAR.	
N. lăpĭ**s**	aetā**s**	mīlĕ**s**
G. lapĭd**ĭs**	aetāt**ĭs**	milĭt**ĭs**
D. lapĭd**ī**	aetāt**ī**	milĭt**ī**
A. lapĭd**ĕm**	aetāt**ĕm**	milĭt**ĕm**
V. lapĭ**s**	aetā**s**	milĕ**s**
A. lapĭd**ĕ**	aetāt**ĕ**	milĭt**ĕ**
	PLURAL.	
N. lapĭd**ēs**	aetāt**ēs**	milĭt**ēs**
G. lapĭd**ŭm**	aetāt**ŭm**	milĭt**ŭm**
D. lapid**ĭbŭs**	aetat**ĭbŭs**	milit**ĭbŭs**
A. lapĭd**ēs**	aetāt**ēs**	milĭt**ēs**
V. lapĭd**ēs**	aetāt**ēs**	milĭt**ēs**
A. lapid**ĭbŭs.**	aetat**ĭbŭs.**	milit**ĭbŭs.**

Nepos, M., *grandson.*	Virtus, F., *virtue.*	Caput, N., *head.*
	SINGULAR.	
N. nĕpō**s**	virtū**s**	căpŭt
G. nepōt**ĭs**	virtūt**ĭs**	capĭt**ĭs**
D. nepōt**ī**	virtūt**ī**	capĭt**ī**
A. nepōt**ĕm**	virtūt**ĕm**	capŭt
V. nepō**s**	virtū**s**	capŭt
A. nepōt**ĕ**	virtūt**ĕ**	capĭt**ĕ**
	PLURAL.	
N. nepōt**ēs**	virtūt**ēs**	capĭt**ă**
G. nepōt**ŭm**	virtūt**ŭm**	capĭt**ŭm**
D. nepot**ĭbŭs**	virtut**ĭbŭs**	capit**ĭbŭs**
A. nepōt**ēs**	virtūt**ēs**	capĭt**ă**
V. nepōt**ēs**	virtūt**ēs**	capĭt**ă**
A. nepot**ĭbŭs.**	virtut**ĭbŭs.**	capit**ĭbŭs.**

1. Stems and Case-Endings.—In these Paradigms observe

1) That the stems are *lăpĭd*, *aetāt*, *mīlĭt*, *nĕpōt*, *virtūt* and *căpŭt*.

2) That *mīlĕs* has the variable vowel, **ĕ**, **ĭ**, and *căpŭt*, **ŭ**, **ĭ**. See 57, 2.

3) That the dental **d** or **t** is dropped before **s**: *lăpis* for *lapids*, *aetās* for *aetats*, *mīlĕs* for *milets*, *virtūs* for *virtuts*. See 36.

4) That the case-endings, except in the *neuter căpŭt* (46, 2), are the same as those given above. See 57.

5) That the *neuter*, *căpŭt*, has no case-ending in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Sing., ă in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur., and the case-endings of masculine and feminine nouns in the other cases.

2. Neuter stems in **at** drop **t** in the Nom. Sing. and end in **ă**: Nom., *poēma*, Gen., *poemătis;* Stem, *poēmăt*. These nouns sometimes have **īs** for **ĭbŭs** in the Dat. and Abl. Plur.: *poemătīs* for *poematĭbŭs*.

3. Synopsis of Declension. See 69, 78–84.

59. Stems ending in a Guttural: C or G.

Rex, m., *king.*	Judex, m. & f., *judge.*	Radix, f., *root.*	Dux, m. & f., *leader.*
	SINGULAR.		
N. rex	jūdex	rādix	dux
G. rēg**ĭs**	judĭc**ĭs**	radīc**ĭs**	dŭc**ĭs**
D. reg**ī**	judĭc**ī**	radīc**ī**	duc**ī**
A. reg**ĕm**	judĭc**ĕm**	radīc**ĕm**	duc**ĕm**
V. rex	judex	radix	dux
A. reg**ĕ**	judĭc**ĕ**	radīc**ĕ**	duc**ĕ**
	PLURAL.		
N. reg**ēs**	judĭc**ēs**	radīc**ēs**	duc**ēs**
G. reg**ŭm**	judĭc**ŭm**	radīc**ŭm**	duc**ŭm**
D. reg**ĭbŭs**	judic**ĭbŭs**	radic**ĭbŭs**	duc**ĭbŭs**
A. reg**ēs**	judĭc**ēs**	radīc**ēs**	duc**ēs**
V. reg**ēs**	judĭc**ēs**	radīc**ēs**	duc**ēs**
A. reg**ĭbŭs.**	judic**ĭbŭs.**	radic**ĭbŭs.**	duc**ĭbŭs.**

1. Stems and Case-Endings.—In the Paradigms observe .

1) That the stems are *rēg*, *jūdĭc*, *rādīc* and *dŭc*—*jūdĭc* with the variable vowel—**ĭ, ĕ.** See 57, 2.

2) That the case-endings are those given in 57.

3) That **s** in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. unites with *c* or *g* of the stem and forms *x*. See 33.

2. Synopsis of Declension.—See Nouns in **x**: 92–98.

60. Stems ending in a Liquid: L, M, N, or R.

Sol, m., *sun.*	Consul, m., *consul.*	Passer, m., *sparrow.*	Pater, m., *father.*
	SINGULAR.		
N. sōl	consŭl	passĕr	pătĕr
G. sol**ĭs**	consŭl**ĭs**	passĕr**ĭs**	pătr**ĭs**
D. sol**ī**	consŭl**ī**	passĕr**ī**	patr**ī**

A. sol**ĕm**	consŭl**ĕm**	passĕr**ĕm**	patr**ĕm**
V. sōl	consŭl	passĕr	patĕr
A. sol**ĕ**	consŭl**ĕ**	passĕr**ĕ**	patr**ĕ**
		PLURAL.	
N. sol**ēs**	consŭl**ēs**	passĕr**ēs**	patr**ēs**
G.	consŭl**ŭm**	passĕr**ŭm**	patr**ŭm**
D. sol**ĭbŭs**	consul**ĭbŭs**	passer**ĭbŭs**	patr**ĭbŭs**
A. sol**ēs**	consŭl**ēs**	passĕr**ēs**	patr**ēs**
V. sol**ēs**	consŭl**ēs**	passĕr**ēs**	patr**ēs**
A. sol**ĭbŭs.**	consul**ĭbŭs.**	passer**ĭbŭs.**	patr**ĭbŭs.**

Pastor, M., *shepherd.*	Leo, M., *lion.*	Virgo, F., *maiden.*	Carmen, N., *song.*
		SINGULAR.	
N. pastŏr	leo	virgo	carmĕn
G. pastōr**ĭs**	leōn**ĭs**	virgĭn**ĭs**	carmĭn**ĭs**
D. pastōr**ī**	leōn**ī**	virgĭn**ī**	carmĭn**ī**
A. pastōr**ĕm**	leōn**ĕm**	virgĭn**ĕm**	carmĕn
V. pastŏr	leo	virgo	carmĕn
A. pastōr**ĕ**	leōn**ĕ**	virgĭn**ĕ**	carmĭn**ĕ**
		PLURAL.	
N. pastōr**ēs**	leōn**ēs**	virgĭn**ēs**	carmĭn**ă**
G. pastōr**ŭm**	leōn**ŭm**	virgĭn**ŭm**	carmĭn**ŭm**
D. pastor**ĭbŭs**	leon**ĭbŭs**	virgin**ĭbŭs**	carmin**ĭbŭs**
A. pastōr**ēs**	leōn**ēs**	virgĭn**ēs**	carmĭn**ă**
V. pastōr**ēs**	leōn**ēs**	virgĭn**ēs**	carmĭn**ă**
A. pastor**ĭbŭs.**	leon**ĭbŭs.**	virgin**ĭbŭs.**	carmin**ĭbŭs.**

1. STEMS AND CASE-ENDINGS.—In the Paradigms observe

1) That the stems are *sōl*, *consŭl*, *passĕr*, *pătĕr*, *pastōr*, *leōn*, *virgŏn*, and *carmĕn*.

2) That *virgo* (virgŏn) has the variable vowel, **ŏ**, **ĭ**, and *carmĕn*, **ĕ**, **ĭ**.

3) That in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. **s**, the usual case-ending for masc. and fem. nouns, is omitted, and that in those cases the stem *pastōr* shortens **o**, while *leōn* and *virgŏn* drop **n**.

2. HIEMS, the only stem in **m**, takes *s* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. Also *sanguĭs* (for *sanguins*), blood, and *Sălămĭs* (for *Salămins*), Salamis, which drop *n* before *s*.

3. PASSER, PATER.—Most nouns in **er** are declined like *passĕr*, but those in **ter**, and a few others, are declined like *pătĕr*. See 77, II.

4. LEO and VIRGO.—Most nouns in **o** are declined like *leo*, but those in **do** and **go**, with a few others, are declined like *virgo*. See 72 with exceptions.

5. Four stems in ŏr change *o* to *u*. See 77, IV.
6. Synopsis of Declension. See 72, 75–77.

61. Stems ending in **S.**

Flos, m., *flower.*	Jus, n., *right.*	Opus, n., *work.*	Corpus, n., *body.*
		SINGULAR.	
N. flōs	jūs	ŏpŭs	corpŭs
G. flōr**ĭs**	jūr**ĭs**	opĕr**ĭs**	corpŏr**ĭs**
D. flor**ī**	jur**ī**	opĕr**ī**	corpŏr**ī**
A. flor**ĕm**	jus	opŭs	corpŭs
V. flos	jus	opŭs	corpŭs
A. flor**ĕ**	jur**ĕ**	opĕr**ĕ**	corpŏr**ĕ**
		PLURAL.	
N. flor**ēs**	jur**ă**	opĕr**ă**	corpŏr**ă**
G. flor**ŭm**	jur**ŭm**	opĕr**ŭm**	corpŏr**ŭm**
D. flor**ĭbŭs**	jur**ĭbŭs**	oper**ĭbŭs**	corpor**ĭbŭs**
A. flor**ēs**	jur**ă**	opĕr**ă**	corpŏr**ă**
V. flor**ēs**	jur**ă**	opĕr**ă**	corpŏr**ă**
A. flor**ĭbŭs.**	jur**ĭbŭs.**	oper**ĭbŭs.**	corpor**ĭbŭs.**

1. Stems and Case-Endings.—In the Paradigms observe
1) That the stems are *flōs*, *jūs*, *ŏpĕs*, and *corpŏs*.
2) That *ŏpŭs* has the variable vowel, **ĕ**, **ŭ**, and *corpŭs*, **ŏ**, **ŭ**.
3) That **s** of the stem becomes **r** between two vowels: *flōs*, *flōris* (for *flōsis*). See 35.
4) That the Nom. and Voc. Sing. omit the case-ending. See 60, 1, 3).
2. Synopsis of Declension. See 79, 80, 82–84.

CLASS II.—I STEMS.

62. Stems ending in **I.**—*Nouns in* **ĭs**,—*Abl. Sing. in* **ī**, *or in* **ī** *or* **ĕ**.

Tussis, f., *cough.*	Turris, f., *tower.*	Ignis, m., *fire.*	Case-Endings.
		SINGULAR.	
N. tuss**ĭs**	turr**ĭs**	ign**ĭs**	ĭs
G. tuss**ĭs**	turr**ĭs**	ign**ĭs**	ĭs
D. tuss**ī**	turr**ī**	ign**ī**	ī
A. tuss**ĭm**	turr**ĭm, ĕm**	ign**ĕm**	ĭm, ĕm

V. tuss**ĭs**	turr**ĭs**	ign**ĭs**	ĭs
A. tuss**ī**	turr**ī, ĕ**	ign**ī, ĕ**	ī, ĕ

PLURAL.

N. tuss**ēs**	turr**ēs**	ign**ēs**	ēs
G. tuss**ĭŭm**	turr**ĭŭm**	ign**ĭŭm**	iŭm
D. tuss**ĭbŭs**	turr**ĭbŭs**	ign**ĭbŭs**	ĭbŭs
A. tuss**ēs, īs**	turr**ēs, īs**	ign**ēs, īs**	ēs, īs
V. tuss**ēs**	turr**ēs**	ign**ēs**	ēs
A. tuss**ĭbŭs.**	turr**ĭbŭs.**	ign**ĭbŭs.**	ĭbŭs.

I. PARADIGMS.—Observe

1. That the stems are *tussi*, *turri*, and *igni*.

2. That the case-endings here given include the stem-ending **i**, which disappears in certain cases.

3. That these Paradigms differ in declension only in the Acc. and Abl. Sing.

II. Like TUSSIS—ACC. **ĭm**, ABL. **ī**—are declined

1. *Būris*, plough-tail; *rāvis*, hoarseness; *sĭtis*, thirst.

2. In the Sing. (1) Names of *rivers* and *places* in **is** not increasing in the Gen.: *Tĭbĕris*, *Hispălis*. See 629. (2) Greek nouns in **is**, G. *is*, and some others.

III. Like TURRIS—ACC. **ĭm, ĕm**; ABL. **ī, ĕ**—are declined

Clāvis, key; *fĕbris*, fever; *messis*, harvest; *nāvis*, ship; *puppis*, stern; *restis*, rope; *sĕcūris*, axe; *sēmentis*, seed-time; *strĭgĭlis*, strigil.

1. *Pars*, part, sometimes has *partim* in the Acc.

2. *Arărĭs* or *Arăr*, the Saône, and *Lĭgĕr*, the Loire, have Acc. **ĭm, ĕm**, Abl. **ī, ĕ**.

IV. Like IGNIS—ACC. **ĕm**, ABL. **ī, ĕ**—are declined

Amnis, river; *anguis*, serpent; *ăvis*, bird; *bīlis*, bile; *cīvis*, citizen; *classis*, fleet; *collis*, hill; *fīnis*, end; *orbis*, circle; *postis*, post; *unguis*, nail, and a few others.

1. Adjectives in **ĕr** and **ĭs** used substantively have the Abl. generally in **ī**: *Septembĕr*, *Septembrī*, September;[1] *fămĭlĭāris*, *familiārī*, friend. But adjectives used as proper names, and *jŭvĕnis*, youth, have **ĕ**: *Jŭvĕnālis*, *Juvenāle*, Juvenal.

2. *Imbĕr*, storm; *rūs*, country; *sors*, lot; *sŭpellex*, furniture; *vespĕr*, evening, and a few others, sometimes have the Abl. in **ī**.

3. Many names of towns have a *Locative* in **ī**: *Carthāgĭni*, at Carthage; *Tĭbŭri*, at Tibur. See 45, 2; 48, 4.

---

[1] Names of months are adjectives used substantively, with *mensis*, month, understood.

63. Stems ending in I.—*Neuters in* ĕ, al, *and* ar.

Mare, *sea.*	Animal, *animal.*	Calcar, *spur.*	Case-Endings.
	SINGULAR.		
N. mărĕ	ănĭmăl	calcăr	ĕ—[2]
G. marĭs	animālĭs	calcārĭs	ĭs
D. marī	animālī	calcārī	ī
A. marĕ	anĭmăl	calcăr	ĕ—[2]
V. marĕ	anĭmăl	calcăr	ĕ—[2]
A. marī[1]	animālī	calcārī	ī
	PLURAL.		
N. mariă	animaliă	calcariă	iă
G. mariŭm	animaliŭm	calcariŭm	iŭm
D. marĭbŭs	animalĭbŭs	calcarĭbŭs	ĭbŭs
A. mariă	animaliă	calcariă	iă
V. mariă	animaliă	calcariă	iă
A. marĭbŭs.	animalĭbŭs.	calcarĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs.

1. Paradigms.—Observe

1) That the stem-ending **i** is changed to **e** in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. Sing. of *măre*, and dropped in the same cases of *ănĭmăl* (for *animāle*) and *calcăr* (for *calcāre*). See 28, 1; 31.

2) That the case-endings include the stem-ending **i**.

2. The following have **ĕ** in the Abl. Sing.:—(1) Names of towns in **ĕ**; *Praeneste*.—(2) Nouns in **al** and **ar** with **a** *short* in Gen.: *săl*, *săle*, salt; *nectăr*, *nectăre*, nectar.—(3) *Făr*, *farre*, corn.—(4) Generally *rēte*, net, and in poetry sometimes *măre*.

64. Stems ending in I.—*Nouns in* ĭs, es, *and* s (x) *preceded by a Consonant,—Abl. Sing. in* ĕ.

Hostis, M. & F., *enemy.*	Nubes, F., *cloud.*	Urbs, F., *city.*	Arx, F., *citadel.*
	SINGULAR.		
N. hostĭs	nūbēs	urbs	arx[3]
G. hostĭs	nubĭs	urbĭs	arcĭs

[1] Sometimes *mare* in poetry.

[2] The dash here implies that the case-ending is sometimes wanting.

[3] *X* in *arx*=*cs*,—*c* belonging to the stem, and *s* being the Nom. ending.

D. host**ī**	nub**ī**	urb**ī**	arc**ī**
A. host**ĕm**	nub**ĕm**	urb**ĕm**	arc**ĕm**
V. host**ĭs**	nub**ēs**	urb**s**	ar**x**
A. host**ĕ**	nub**ĕ**	urb**ĕ**	arc**ĕ**
	PLURAL.		
N. host**ēs**	nub**ēs**	urb**ēs**	arc**ēs**
G. host**iŭm**	nub**iŭm**	urb**iŭm**	arc**iŭm**
D. host**ĭbŭs**	nub**ĭbŭs**	urb**ĭbŭs**	arc**ĭbŭs**
A. host**ēs, īs**	nub**ēs, īs**	urb**ēs, īs**	arc**ēs, īs**
V. host**ēs**	nub**ēs**	urb**ēs**	arc**ēs**
A. host**ĭbŭs.**	nub**ĭbŭs.**	urb**ĭbŭs.**	arc**ĭbŭs.**

1. Stems.—These Paradigms show a combination of **i**-stems and consonant stems: *hosti, host; urbi, urb; arci, arc.* The **i**-stem appears especially in the endings of the Gen. and Acc. Plur. **iŭm, ēs, īs.** The stem of *nūbēs* seems to be *nūbēs, nūbi, nūb.*

65. Endings **iŭm, īs.**—Like the preceding Paradigms, the following classes of words have *iŭm* in the Gen. Plur., and *īs* with *ēs* in the Acc. Plur.

1. Most nouns in **ns** and **rs**:[1] *cliens, clientium, clientes, is,* client; *ars, artium, artes, is,* art; *cohors, cohortium, cohortes, is,* cohort.

2. Monosyllables in **s** and **x** preceded by a *consonant*,[2] and a few in **s** and **x** preceded by a *vowel*:[3] *urbs, urbium, urbes, is,* city; *arx, arcium, arces, is,* citadel; *nox, noctium, noctes, is,* night.

3. Many nouns not increasing in the genitive:

1) Most nouns in **ēs** and **ĭs** not increasing:[4] *nūbes, nubium, nubes, is,* cloud; *ăvis, avium, aves, is,* bird.

2) *Căro,* flesh; *imbĕr,* storm; *lintĕr,* boat; *ūtĕr,* leathern sack; *ventĕr,* belly; and generally *Insŭbĕr,* Insubrian.

4. Many nouns in **ās** and **īs** (Plur. *ātes* and *ītes*). Thus

1) Names of nations: *Arpīnas, Arpīnātium,* etc.; *Samnis, Samnītium,* etc.

2) *Optīmātes* and *Pĕnātes,* and occasionally other nouns in *as.*

---

[1] Some of these often have *ŭm* in poetry and sometimes even in prose, as *părens,* parent, generally has.

[2] Except (*ops*) *ŏpis* and the Greek nouns, *gryps, lynx, sphynx.*

[3] Namely, *faux, glīs, līs, mās, nix, nox, ŏs* (ossis), *vīs,* generally *fraus* and *mūs.*

[4] But cănis, jŭvĕnis, strues, vātes, have *ŭm;* ăpis, mensis, sēdes, vŏlŭcris, *ŭm* or *iŭm;* compes, *iŭm.*

66. Special Paradigms.

	Sus, M. & F., *swine.*	Bos, M. & F., *ox, cow.*	Nix, F., *snow.*	Senex, M., *old man.*	Vis, F., *force.*
			SINGULAR.		
N.	sūs	bōs[1]	nix	sĕnex	vīs
G.	suĭs	bŏvĭs	nĭvĭs	senĭs	vīs[2]
D.	suī	bovī	nivī	senī	vī[2]
A.	suĕm	bovĕm	nivĕm	senĕm	vīm
V.	sus	bos	nix	senex	vīs
A.	suĕ	bovĕ	nivĕ	senĕ	vī
			PLURAL.		
N.	suēs	bovēs	nivēs	senēs	vīrēs
G.	suŭm	{ bovĭŭm { boŭm	nivĭŭm	senŭm	virĭŭm
D.	{ suĭbŭs { sŭbŭs	{ bōbŭs[1] { būbŭs[1]	nivĭbŭs	senĭbŭs	virĭbŭs
A.	suēs	bovēs	nivēs	senēs	virēs
V.	suēs	bovēs	nivēs	senēs	virēs
A.	{ suĭbŭs { sŭbŭs	{ bōbŭs { būbŭs.	nivĭbŭs.	senĭbŭs.	virĭbŭs.

1. Stems.—These are *su ; bŏv ; nĭg* (nix = nigs), *nĭv, nĭvi ; sĕnec, sĕn ; vīs, vi* (sing.), *vīri* (for *visi*, plur.). See 35.

2. Sus, and grus (crane), the only u stems in this declension, are declined alike except in the Dat. and Abl. Pl., where *grūs* is regular: *gruĭbŭs.*

3. Jupiter, *Jupiter.*—Declined thus: Jūpĭtĕr, Jŏvĭs, Jovī, Jovĕm, Jupĭtĕr, Jovĕ. Stems *Jūpĭtĕr* and *Jŏv.*

67. Case-Endings of the Third Declension.

SINGULAR.

	Consonant stems.		I-stems.	
	Masc. & Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. & Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	s—[3]	—[3]	ĭs, ēs, s	ĕ—[3]
G.	ĭs	ĭs	ĭs	ĭs
D.	ī	ī	ī	ī
A.	ĕm	—	ĭm, ĕm	ĕ—
V.	s	—	ĭs, ēs, s	ĕ—
A.	ĕ	ĕ	ī, ĕ	ī

[1] *Bōs*=bovs, bous; *bōbus, būbus*=bovĭbus, boubus.
[2] The Gen. and Dat. Sing.—*vis, vi*—are rare.
[3] The dash denotes that the case-ending is wanting.

PLURAL.

N.	ēs	ă	ēs	iă
G.	ŭm	ŭm	iŭm	iŭm
D.	ĭbŭs	ĭbŭs	ĭbŭs	ĭbŭs
A.	ēs	ă	ēs, īs	iă
V.	ēs	ă	ēs	iă
A.	ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs.

1. IRREGULAR CASE-ENDINGS.—The following occur:

1) **E**, for *i*, in the Dat. Sing.: *aerĕ* for *aeri*.

2) **Eis**, for *is*, in the Acc. Plur.: *civeis* for *civis, cives*.

3) GREEK ENDINGS. See 68.

GREEK NOUNS.

68. Most Greek nouns of the third declension are entirely regular, but a few retain certain peculiarities of the Greek. The following are examples:

	Lampas, F., *torch.*	Phryx, M. & F., *Phrygian.*	Heros, M., *hero.*	Case-Endings.
	SINGULAR.			
N.	lampă**s**	Phryx	hērō**s**	s
G.	lampădĭ**s**, ŏ**s**	Phrўgĭ**s**, ŏ**s**	herōĭ**s**	ĭs, ŏs
D.	lampădī	Phrygī	herōī	ī
A.	lampăd**ĕm**, **ă**	Phryg**ĕm**, **ă**	herō**ĕm**, **ă**	ĕm, ă
V.	lampă**s**	Phryx	herō**s**	s
A.	lampăd**ĕ**	Phryg**ĕ**	herō**ĕ**	ĕ
	PLURAL.			
N.	lampăd**ēs**, **ĕs**	Phryg**ēs**, **ĕs**	herō**ēs**, **ĕs**	ēs, ĕs
G.	lampăd**ŭm**	Phryg**ŭm**	herō**ŭm**	ŭm
D.	lampad**ĭbŭs**	Phryg**ĭbŭs**	herō**ĭbŭs**	ĭbŭs
A.	lampăd**ēs**, **ăs**	Phryg**ēs**, **ăs**	herō**ēs**, **ăs**	ēs, ăs
V.	lampăd**ēs**, **ĕs**	Phryg**ēs**, **ĕs**	herō**ēs**, **ĕs**	ēs, ĕs
A.	lampad**ĭbŭs**.	Phryg**ĭbŭs**.	herō**ĭbŭs**.	ĭbŭs.

	Pericles, M., *Pericles.*	Paris, M., *Paris.*	Dido, F., *Dido.*	Orpheus, M., *Orpheus.*
	SINGULAR.[1]			
N.	Pĕrĭcl**ēs**	Părĭ**s**	Dīdō	Orpheu**s**[2]
G.	Periclĭ**s**, **ī**	Parĭdĭ**s**, **ŏs**	Didū**s**, ōnĭ**s**	Orph-e**os**, **eī**, **ī**

[1] The Plural is of course wanting.

[2] *Eu* a diphthong in the Nom. and Voc.: *ei* sometimes a diphthong in the Gen. and Dat.

D.	Periclī	Parĭdī	Didō, ōnī	Orph-eī, ī, eō
A.	Periclĕm, eă, ēn	Parĭdĕm, ă / Parĭm, ĭn	Didō, ōnĕm	Orpheă, eŭm
V.	Periclēs, ĕs, ē	Parĭ	Didō	Orpheu
A.	Periclĕ.	Parĭdĕ.	Didō, ōnĕ.	Orpheō.

1. Paradigms.—Observe that these paradigms fluctuate in certain cases,—(1) between the Latin and the Greek forms: *lampădĭs, ŏs; lampădĕm, ă; hērōĕs, ăs*,—(2) between different declensions: Pericles, between Dec. I., *Periclēn, Periclē*, Dec. II., *Periclī* (Gen.), and Dec. III., *Periclĭs*, etc.: Orpheus, between Dec. II., *Orpheī, Orpheō*, etc., and Dec. III., *Orpheŏs*, etc.

2. Nouns in **ўs** have Gen. **yŏs, ÿs**, Acc. **ўm, ўn**: *Othrys, Othryŏs, Othrym, Othryn.*

3. The Vocative Sing. drops **s**,—(1) in nouns in **eus**, **ўs** and in proper names in **ās**, Gen. *antis; Atlas, Atlā*,—(2) generally in nouns in **is** and sometimes in other words; *Părĭ.*

4. Genitive Plur.—The ending **ōn** occurs in a few titles of Books: *Mĕtămorphōses* (title of a poem), *Metamorphoseōn.*

5. Dative and Ablative Plur.—The ending **sĭ**, before vowels **sĭn**, occurs in poetry: *Troădes, Troasin.*

6. A few neuters used only in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. have **ŏs** in the Sing. and **ē** in the Plur.: *mĕlŏs, melē*, song.

SYNOPSIS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

I. Nouns ending in a Vowel.

69. Nouns in **ă**:[1] Genitive in **ătis**: Stem in **ăt**:
poēmă, *poem*, poemătis, poēmăt.

70. Nouns in **ĕ**: Genitive in **is**: Stem in **ĭ**:
mărĕ, *sea*, măris, mărĭ.

71. Nouns in **ī**:[1] Genitive in **is**: Stem in **ĭ**:
sĭnāpī, *mustard*, sinăpis, sinăpĭ.

Exceptions.—Genitive in

1. **ĭtis**,—compounds of **mĕlī**: *oxўmĕli, oxymelĭtis*, oxymel.
2. Many nouns in **i** are indeclinable.

72. Nouns in **ō**: Genitive in **ōnis**: Stem in **ōn**:
leo, *lion*, leōnis, leōn.

---

[1] These are of Greek origin.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. **ŏnis**:—most national names: *Măcĕdo, Macedŏnis*, Macedonian.
2. **ĭnis**:[1]—*Apollo; hŏmo*, man; *nēmo*, nobody; *turbo*, whirlwind; and nouns in **do** and **go**: *grando, grandĭnis*, hail; *virgo, virgĭnis*, maiden; except—*harpăgo*, ōnis; *līgo*, ōnis; *praedo*, ōnis, also *cŏmĕdo, cūdo, mango, spădo, ūnĕdo, ūdo.*
3. **nis**:—*căro, carnis* (for *carĭnis*[1]), flesh. See 65, 3, 2).
4. **ēnis**:—*Anio, Aniēnis*, river Anio; *Nerio, Neriēnis.*
5. **ūs**:—few Greek feminines: *Dīdo, Didus.* See 68.

73. Nouns in **y**[2]: Gen. in **yis** (yos, ȳs): Stem in **ȳ**:
mĭsy, *copperas*, misyis (yos, ys), misȳ.

II. NOUNS ENDING IN A MUTE OR LIQUID.

74. Nouns in **c**: only *ālĕc, alēcis*, pickle; *lāc, lactis*, milk.

75. Nouns in **l**: Genitive in **lis**: Stem in **l**:
sōl, *sun*, sōlis, sōl.

1. *Fĕl, fellis*, gall; *mĕl, mellis*, honey.
2. Neuters in **ăl**: Genitive in **ālis**: Stem in **ālĭ**:
ănĭmăl, *animal*, animālis, animālĭ.

76. Nouns in **n**: Genitive in **nis**: Stem in **n**:
paeān, *paean*, paeānis, paeān.
flūmĕn, *stream*, flumĭnis, flumĕn, ĭn.

1. Nouns in **ĕn** have the variable radical vowel—**ĕ, ĭ.** See 60, 1, 2).
2. There are a few Greek words in **ōn**, Gen. in **ŏnis, ontis**, St. in **ŏn, ont**: *aēdōn, aedŏnis*, nightingale; *Xĕnŏphōn, Xenophontis*, Xenophon.

77. Nouns in **r**: Genitive in **ris**: Stem in **r**:
carcĕr, *prison*, carcĕris, carcĕr.

I. Nouns in **ar**: (1) **ăr**, G. **āris**, St. **āri**; *calcăr, calcāris*, spur; but a few have G. **ăris**, St. **ăr**; *nectăr, nectăris*, nectar: (2) **ār**, G. **ăris**, St. **ări**: *lār, lăris*, house; *pār, păris*, pair: (3) *Fār, farris*, corn; *hĕpăr, hepătis*, liver.

II. Nouns in **er.** Some drop **e** in the Genitive.

1. Those in **tĕr**: *pătĕr, patris*, father; except *lătĕr, latĕris*, tile; *ĭtĕr, itinĕris*, way; *Jŭpĭtĕr, Jŏvis*, and Greek nouns; *crātēr, cratēris*, bowl.
2. *Imbĕr* and names of months in **bĕr**: *imbĕr, imbris*, shower; *Septembĕr, Septembris*, September.

---

[1] Stem in *ŏn, ĭn.* See 60, 1, 2).
[2] Nouns in *y* are of Greek origin, and are often indeclinable.

III. Nouns in **ŏr**: G. **ōris**, St. **ōr**: *pastor*, *pastōris*, shepherd; but a few have G. **ŏris**, St. **ŏr**: *arbor*, *arbŏris*, tree; *aequor*, sea; *marmor*, marble. But *cŏr*, *cordis*, heart.

IV. Four in **ŭr**: G. **ŏris**, St. **ŏr**; *ĕbur*, ivory; *fĕmur*, thigh; *jĕcur*, liver; *rōbur*, strength; but *fĕmur* has also *femĭnis*, and *jĕcur*, *jecĭnŏris*, *jecĭnĕris*, and *jŏcĭnĕris*.

78. Nouns in **ŭt**: Genitive in **ĭtis**: Stem in **ŭt, ĭt**:
căpŭt, *head*, capĭtis, capŭt, ĭt.

III. Nouns ending in s preceded by a Vowel.

79. Nouns in **as**: Genitive in **ātis**: Stem in **āt**:
aetās, *age*, aetātis, aetāt.

Exceptions.—Genitive in

1. **ătis**:—*ănăs*, *anătis*, duck, and neuter Greek nouns.
2. **ădis**:—*văs*, *vădis*, surety; *Arcăs*, Arcadian, and fem. Greek nouns;[1] *lampăs*, *lampădis*, torch.
3. **ăris**:—*mās*, *măris*, a male;—stem, *măs*, *mări*. See 85.
4. **āsis**:—*vās*, *vāsis*, vessel.[2]
5. **assis**:—*ās*, *assis*, an as (a coin).
6. **antis**:—only masc. Greek nouns; *ădămās*, *antis*, adamant.

80. Nouns in **ēs**: Genitive in **is**: Stem in **i**:[3]
nūbēs, *cloud*, nubis, nubi.

Exceptions.—Genitive in

1. **edis**:—(1) **ēdis**: *hēres*, *herēdis*, heir; *merces*, reward.—(2) **ĕdis**: *pes*, *pĕdis*, foot.
2. **aedis**:—*praes*, *praedis*, surety.
3. **ĕris**:—*Cĕres*, *Cerĕris*.[4]
4. **aeris**:—*aes*, *aeris*, copper.[4]
5. **etis**:—(1) **ētis**: *quies*, rest, with compounds, *inquies*, *rĕquies*, and a few Greek words: *lĕbes*, *tăpes*.—(2) **ĕtis**: *ăbies*, fir-tree; *ăries*, ram; *păries*, wall.
6. **essis**:— *bes*, *bessis*, two-thirds.

81. Nouns in **ĕs**: Genitive in **ĭtis**: Stem in **ĕt, ĭt**:
mīlĕs, *soldier*, milĭtis, milĕt, ĭt.

---

[1] Greek nouns sometimes have *ădos* for *ădis*.

[2] *Vās* is the only stem in *s* which does not change *s* to *r* between two vowels. See 61, 1, 3).

[3] But see 64, 1.

[4] See 61, 1, 3).

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. ĕtis :—*interpres*, interpreter; *sĕges*, crop; *tĕges*, covering.
2. ĭdis :—*obses*, hostage; *praeses*, president. See 57, 2.

82. Nouns in **is** : Genitive in **is** : Stem in **ĭ** :
ăvĭs, *bird*, avis, avĭ.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. ĕris :—*cĭnĭs*, *cinĕris*,[1] ashes; *cŭcŭmis*, cucumber; *pulvis*, dust; *vōmĭs*, ploughshare.
2. ĭdis :—*căpĭs*, cup; *cassis*, helmet; *cuspis*, spear; *lăpis*, stone; *prōmulsis*, antepast, and a few Greek[2] words: as *tўrannis*, *ĭdis*, tyranny. Sometimes *ibis*, and *tigris*.
3. ĭnis :—*pollĭs* or *pollĕn*, flour; *sanguis*, blood.
4. ĭris :—*glīs*, *glīris*,[3] dormouse.
5. issis :—*sēmĭs*, *semissis*, half an as: stem, *semissĭ*, *semiss*.
6. ītis :—*līs*,[4] strife; *Dis*, *Quĭris*, *Samnis*.

83. Nouns in **ōs** : Genitive in **ōris** : Stem in **ōs** :
mōs, *custom*, mōris, mōs.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. ōtis :—*cos*, *cōtis*, whetstone; *dos*, dowry; *nĕpos*, grandson; *săcerdos*, priest; and a few Greek words.
2. ōdis :—*custos*, *custōdis*, guardian. See 36.
3. ōis :—a few masc. Greek nouns: *hēros*, hero; *Mīnos*, *Tros*.
4. ŏris :—*arbos* or *arbŏr*, tree.
5. ossis :—*ŏs*, *ossis*, bone: stem, *ossi*, *oss*.
6. ŏvis :—*bos*, *bŏvis*, ox. See 66.

84. Nouns in **us** : Genitive in **ĕris** or **ŏris** : Stem in **ĕs** or **ŏs**.

I. ĕris :—*lătŭs*, *latĕris*, side: stem, *lătĕs*. So also: *ăcŭs*, *foedus*, *fūnus*, *gĕnus*, *glŏmus*, *mūnus*, *ŏlus*, *ŏnus*, *ŏpus*, *pondus*, *rūdus*, *scĕlus*, *sīdus*, *ulcus*, *vellus*, *Vĕnus*, *viscus*, *vulnus*.

II. ŏris :—*corpŭs*, *corpŏris*, body: stem, *corpŏs*. So also *dĕcŭs*, *dēdĕcus*, *făcĭnus*, *fēnus*, *frīgus*, *lĕpus*, *lītus*, *nĕmus*, *pectus*, *pĕcus*, *pĕnus*, *pignus*, *stercus*, *tempus*, *tergus*.

---

[1] Stem *cĭnĭs*, *cĭnĕr* for *cĭnĕs* with variable vowel ĭ, ĕ. See 28, 35, and 57, 2.

[2] Greek nouns sometimes have *idos* or even *ios* for *idis*; *Sălămīs* has *Salamīnis*; *Sīmoïs*, *Simoentis*.

[3] Stem *glīs*, *glīri* for *glīsi*, 35.

[4] Stem *līti*, *līt*.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. **uris**:—(1) **ūris**: *crūs*, leg; *jus*, right; *jus*, soup; *mus*, mouse; *pus*, pus; *rus*, country; *tus* (thus), incense; *tellus*, earth. —(2) **ŭris**: *Lĭgŭs*, *Ligŭris*, Ligurian. See 61.
2. **ūtis**:—*jŭventūs*, youth; *sălus*, safety; *sĕnectus*, old age; *servĭtus*, servitude; *virtus*, virtue. See 36.
3. **udis**:—(1) **ūdis**: *incūs*, anvil; *pălūs*, marsh; *subscus*, dovetail.—(2) **ŭdis**: *pĕcūs*, *pecŭdis*, a head of cattle.
4. **audis**:—*fraus*, *fraudis*, fraud; *laus*, praise. See 65, 2, foot-note.
5. **uis**:—*grūs*, *gruis*, crane; *sus*, swine.
6. **untis**:—a few Greek names of places: *Trăpezūs*, *untis*.
7. **ŏdis**:—Greek compounds in *pūs*: *trĭpūs*, *tripŏdis*, tripod.
8. **eos**:—Greek nouns in *eus*, when of this declension. See 68.

85. Nouns in **ȳs**:[1] Gen. in **yis, yos, ȳs**: Stem in **y̆**:
Othrys, Othryos, Othry̆.

IV. NOUNS ENDING IN S PRECEDED BY A CONSONANT.

86. Nouns in **bs**: Genitive in **bis**: Stem in **bi**:[2]
urbs, *city*, urbis, urbi.

87. Nouns in **ms**: Genitive in **mis**: Stem in **m**:
hiems, *winter*, hiĕmis, hiĕm.

88. Nouns in **eps**: Genitive in **ĭpis**: Stem in **ĕp, ĭp.**
princeps, *prince*, princĭpis. princĕp, ĭp.

1. But *auceps*, *aucŭpis*, fowler.
2. Other nouns in **ps** retain the stem-vowel unchanged: *mĕrops*, *merŏpis*, bee-eater.
3. *Gryps*, *grȳphis*, griffin.

89. Nouns in **ls**: Genitive in **ltis**: Stem **ltĭ**:
puls, *broth*, pultis, pultĭ.

90. Nouns in **ns**: Genitive in **ntis**: Stem in **ntĭ**:[3]
mens, *mind*, mentis, mentĭ.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

dis:—*frons*, *frondis*, leaf; *glans*, acorn; *jūglans*, walnut. See 65, 2.

---

[1] These are of Greek origin; a few of them have *y̆dis*: *chlămys*, *chlamy̆dis*, cloak.
[2] Dissyllables have the stem in *b*.
[3] Dissyllables have the stem in *t*.

91. Nouns in **rs**: Genitive in **rtis**: Stem in **rtĭ**:
ars, *art.* artis, artĭ.

V. Nouns ending in x.

92. Nouns in **ax**: Genitive in **ācis**: Stem in **āc**:
pax, *peace,* pācis, pāc.

Exceptions.—Genitive in
1. **ăcis**:—*fax, făcis,* torch; and a few Greek nouns.
2. **actis**:—a few Greek names of men: *Astyănax.*

93. Nouns in **ex**: Genitive in **ĭcis**: Stem in **ĭc, ĕc**:
jūdex, *judge,* judĭcis, judĭc, ĕc.

Exceptions.—Genitive in
1. **ecis**:—(1) **ēcis**: *ālex,* pickle; *vervex,* wether.—(2) **ĕcis**: *nex,* murder; *fēnĭsex,* mower.
2. **aecis**:—*faex, faecis,* lees.
3. **egis**:—(1) **ēgis**: *lex,* law; *rex,* king, and their compounds.—(2) **ĕgis**: *grex,* flock; *ăquĭlex,* water-inspector.
4. **ectĭlis**:—*sŭpellex, supellectĭlis,* furniture.[1]
5. **ĭgis**:—*rēmex, remĭgis,* rower. See 28, 2, 1).
6. **is**:—*sĕnex, sĕnis,* old man. See 66, 1.

94. Nouns in **ix**: Genitive in **īcis**: stem in **īc**:
rādix, *root,* radīcis, radīc.

Exceptions.—Genitive in
1. **ĭcis**:—*appendix,* appendix; *călix,* cup; *fornix,* arch; *pix,* pitch; *sălix,* willow, and a few others.
2. **ĭgis**:—*strix,* screech-owl; and a few Gallic names: *Dumnŏrix, Orgētŏrix.*
3. **ĭvis**:—*nix, nĭvis,* snow. See 66.

95. Nouns in **ox**: only *vox, vōcis,* voice; *nox, noctis,* night.

There are also a few national names in **ox**, Gen. in **ŏcis** or **ŏgis**: *Cappădox, Cappadŏcis; Allŏbrox, Allobrŏgis.*

96. Nouns in **ux**: Genitive in **ŭcis**: Stem in **ŭc**:
dux, *leader,* dŭcis, dŭc.

Exceptions.—Genitive in
1. **ūcis**:—*lux, lūcis,* light; *Pollux.*

---

[1] Stem, *sŭpellec, sŭpellectĭl.*

2. **aucis** :—*faux* (def.) *faucis*, throat.
3. **ugis** :—(1) **ūgis** : *frux*, *frūgis*, fruit.—(2) **ŭgis** : *conjux*, *conjŭgis*, spouse.

97. Nouns in **yx** : from the Greek, variously declined : *Eryx*, *Erўcis*, Eryx ; *bombyx*, *bombȳcis*, silkworm ; *Styx*, *Stўgis*, Styx ; *coccyx*, *coccȳgis*, cuckoo ; *ŏnyx*, *onўchis*, onyx.

98. Nouns in **x** preceded by a consonant :

	Genitive in **cis** :	Stem in **cĭ** :
arx, *citadel*,	arcis,	arcĭ.

Exceptions.—Genitive in
gis :—A few Greek nouns : *phălanx*, *phalangis*, phalanx.

GENDER IN THIRD DECLENSION.

99. Nouns of the Third Declension in

o, or, os, er, and **es** *increasing in the genitive*,[1]

are masculine : *sermo*, discourse ; *dŏlŏr*, pain ; *mōs*, custom ; *aggĕr*, mound ; *pēs*, genitive *pĕdis*, foot.

100. Exceptions in **O**.—*Feminine*, viz. :
1. Nouns in **o**, Gen. *ĭnis*, except *cardo*, *ordo*, *turbo*, masc., *cŭpīdo* and *margo*, masc. or fem.
2. *Căro*, flesh, and the Greek *Argo*, *ēcho*, an echo.
3. Most abstract and collective nouns in **io** : *rătio*, reason ; *concio*, an assembly.

101. Exceptions in **OR** :
1. *Feminine* :—*arbŏr*, tree.
2. *Neuter* :—*ădŏr*, spelt ; *aequor*, sea ; *cor*, heart ; *marmor*, marble.

102. Exceptions in **OS** :
1. *Feminine* :—*arbŏs*, tree ; *cos*, whetstone ; *dos*, dowry ; *ēos*, dawn.
2. *Neuter* :—*ōs*, mouth ; *ŏs*, bone ; and a few Greek words : *chaos*.

103. Exceptions in **ER** :
1. *Feminine* :—*lintĕr*, boat (sometimes masc.).
2. *Neuter* :—(1) *cădāvĕr*, corpse ; *ĭter*, way ; *tūber*, tumor ; *ūber*, udder ; *vĕr*, spring ; *verber*, scourge,—(2) botanical names in **er**, Gen. *ĕris* : *ăcĕr*, maple-tree ; *păpāver*, poppy.

---

[1] That is, having more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative.

104. EXCEPTIONS IN **ES**:

1. *Feminine*:—*compēs*, fetter; *mercēs*, reward; *mergĕs*, sheaf; *quiēs*, rest (with its compounds); *sĕgĕs*, crop; *tĕgĕs*, mat; sometimes *ālĕs*, bird, and *quădrŭpēs*, quadruped.
2. *Neuter*:—*aes*, copper.

105. Nouns of the Third Declension in

as, is, ys, x, es *not increasing in the genitive, and* **s** *preceded by a consonant,*

are feminine: *aetās*, age; *nāvĭs*, ship; *chlămўs*, cloak; *pax*, peace; *nūbēs*, cloud; *urbs*, city.

106. EXCEPTIONS IN **AS**:

1. *Masculine*:—*ās*, an as (a coin), *văs*, surety, and Greek nouns in **as**, G. *antis*.
2. *Neuter*:—*vās*, vessel, and Greek nouns in **as**, G. *ătis*.

107. EXCEPTIONS IN **IS** and **YS**.—*Masculine*:

1. Nouns in **ālis, ollis, cis, mis, nis, guis, quis**: *nātālĭs*, birthday; *ignis*, fire; *sanguis*, blood. But a few of these are occasionally feminine: *cănĭs*, *amnis*, *cĭnis*, *fīnis*, *anguis*, *torquis*.
2. *Axĭs*, axle; *būris*, plough-tail; *callis* (f.), path;[1] *ensis*, sword; *lăpis*, stone; *mensis*, month; *orbis*, circle; *postis*, post; *pulvis*, dust; *sentis*, brier; *torris*, brand; *vectis*, lever,[2] and a few others.
3. Names of mountains in **ys**: *Othrўs*.

108. EXCEPTIONS IN **X**.—*Masculine*:

1. Greek masculines: *cŏrax*, raven; *thōrax*, cuirass.
2. Nouns in **ex** and **unx**; except the feminines: *faex*, *forfex*, *lex*, *nex*, (*prex*,) *sŭpellex*.
3. *Călix*, cup; *fornix*, arch; *phoenix*, phoenix; *trādux*, vine-layer, and a few nouns in **yx**.
4. Sometimes: *calx*, heel; *calx*, lime; *lynx*, a lynx.

109. EXCEPTIONS IN **ES**:

1. *Masculine*:—*ăcīnăcēs*, cimeter; sometimes *pălumbēs*, dove; and *vĕprēs*, thorn-bush.
2. *Neuter*:—a few Greek nouns: *căcoēthĕs*, desire; *hippŏmănēs*, hippomane.

110. EXCEPTIONS IN **S** PRECEDED BY A CONSONANT.—*Masculine*:

1. *Dens*, tooth; *fons*, fountain; *mons*, mountain; *pons*, bridge; generally *ădeps*, fat, and *rŭdens*, cable.

---

[1] Sometimes feminine.

[2] For nouns in *is* masculine by signification, see 42, I.

2. Some nouns in **ns**, originally adjectives or participles with a masc. noun understood: *ŏriens* (sol), east; *confluens* (amnis), confluence; *trĭdens* (raster), trident; *quadrans* (ās), quarter.
3. *Chălybs*, steel; *hydrops*, dropsy, and a few other Greek words.
4. Sometimes: *forceps*, forceps; *serpens*, serpent; *stirps*, stock. *Anĭmans*, animal, is masc., fem., or neuter.

111. Nouns of the Third Declension in

a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, and **us,**

are neuter: *poēmă*, poem; *mărĕ*, sea; *lāc*, milk; *ănĭmăl*, animal; *carmĕn*, song; *căpŭt*, head; *corpŭs*, body.

112. EXCEPTIONS IN **L** AND **AR**:—*Masculine:*
Mūgĭl, mullet; *săl*,[1] salt; *sōl*, sun; *lăr*, hearth; *sălăr*, trout.

113. EXCEPTIONS IN **N**:
1. *Masculine*:—*pectĕn*, comb; *rēn*, kidney; *liēn*, spleen; and Greek masculines in **an, en, in, on**: *paeān*, paean; *cănōn*, rule.
2. *Feminine*:—*aēdōn*, nightingale; *alcyōn* (halcyon), kingfisher; *īcōn*, image; *sindōn*, muslin.

114. EXCEPTIONS IN **UR**.—*Masculine:*
Furfŭr, bran; *turtŭr*, turtle-dove; *vultŭr*, vulture.

115. EXCEPTIONS IN **US**:
1. *Masculine*:—*lĕpŭs*, hare; *mūs*, mouse; and Greek nouns in **pus**.
2. *Feminine*:—*tellūs*, earth; *fraus*, fraud; *laus*, praise; and nouns in **us**, Gen. **utis** or **udis**: *virtūs*, virtue; *pălūs*, marsh.

FOURTH DECLENSION: U NOUNS.

116. Nouns of the fourth declension end in

ŭs,—*masculine*; **ū**,—*neuter*.

They are declined as follows:

Fructus, *fruit*.	Cornu, *horn*.	Case-Endings.	
	SINGULAR.		
N. fruct**ŭs**	corn**ū**	ŭs	ū
G. fruct**ūs**	corn**ūs**	ūs	ūs
D. fruct**uī**	corn**ū**	uī	ū
A. fruct**ŭm**	corn**ū**	ŭm	ū
V. fruct**ŭs**	corn**ū**	ŭs	ū
A. fruct**ū**	corn**ū**	ū	ū

[1] Sometimes *neuter* in the singular.

PLURAL.

N. fruct**ūs**	corn**uă**	ūs	uă
G. fruct**uŭm**	corn**uŭm**	uŭm	uŭm
D. fruct**ĭbŭs**	corn**ĭbŭs**	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs)	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs)
A. fruct**ūs**	corn**uă**	ūs	uă
V. fruct**ūs**	corn**uă**	ūs	uă
A. fruct**ĭbŭs.**	corn**ĭbŭs.**	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs).	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs).

1. Stem.—In nouns of the Fourth Declension the stem ends in **ŭ**: *fructŭ*, *cornŭ*.

2. Case-Endings.—The case-endings here given contain the stem-ending **ŭ**, weakened to **ĭ** in *ĭbŭs*, but retained in *ŭbŭs*. See 30.

117. Irregular Case-Endings.—The following occur:

1. **Ubŭs** for *ĭbŭs*, used regularly in the Dat. and Abl. Plur. of *Acus*, needle; *arcus*, bow; *artus*, joint; *lăcus*, lake; *partus*, birth; *pĕcu*, cattle; *quercus*, oak; *spĕcus*, den; *trĭbus*, tribe; *vĕru*, spit: occasionally in a few other words, as *portus*, *sĭnus*, and *tŏnĭtrus*.

2. **Uĭs**, the uncontracted form for *us*, in the Gen.: *fructuis* for *fructus*.

3. **U** for *ui*, in the Dat. by contraction: *ĕquĭtātū* for *equitatui*, cavalry.

118. Exceptions in Gender.

1. *Feminine*:—(1) *ăcus*, needle; *cŏlus*, distaff; *dŏmus*, house; *mănus*, hand; *portĭcus*, portico; *trĭbus*, tribe,—(2) *īdus*, ides; *Quinquātrus*, feast of Minerva; generally *pĕnus*, store, when of this decl.; rarely *spĕcus*, den,—(3) see 42, II.

2. *Neuter*:—*sĕcus* (*sexus*), sex; rarely, *spĕcus*, den.

119. Second and Fourth Declensions.—Some nouns are partly of the fourth declension and partly of the second.

1. *Dŏmus*, f., house, has a Locative form *domī*, at home, and is otherwise declined as follows:

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. dŏmŭs	dŏmūs
G. domūs	domuŭm, domōrŭm
D. domuī (domō)	domĭbŭs
A. domŭm	domōs, domūs
V. domŭs	domūs
A. domō (domū)	domĭbŭs.

2. Certain names of trees in *us*, as *cupressus*, *fīcus*, *laurus*, *pīnus*, though generally of Decl. II., sometimes take those cases of the fourth which end in *us* and *u*: N. *laurus*, G. *laurus*, D. *lauro*, A. *laurum*, V. *laurus*, A. *lauru*, &c. So also *cŏlus*, distaff.

3. A few nouns, especially *sĕnātus* and *tŭmultus*, though regularly of Decl. IV., sometimes take the genitive ending *i* of the second: *senāti*, *tumulti*.

FIFTH DECLENSION: E NOUNS.

120. Nouns of the fifth declension end in **ēs**,—*feminine*, and are declined as follows:

Dies, *day*.	Res, *thing*.	Case-Endings.
	SINGULAR.	
N. di**ēs**	r**ēs**	ēs
G. di**ēī**	r**ĕī**	eī
D. di**ēī**	r**ĕī**	eī
A. di**ĕm**	r**ĕm**	ĕm
V. di**ēs**	r**ēs**	ēs
A. di**ē**	r**ē**	ē
	PLURAL.	
N. di**ēs**	r**ēs**	ēs
G. di**ērŭm**	r**ērŭm**	ērŭm
D. di**ēbŭs**	r**ēbŭs**	ēbŭs
A. di**ēs**	r**ēs**	ēs
V. di**ēs**	r**ēs**	ēs
A. di**ēbŭs.**	r**ēbŭs.**	ēbŭs.

1. STEM.—The stem of nouns of the Fifth Declension ends in **ē**: *die*, *re*.

2. CASE-ENDINGS.—The case-endings here given contain the stem-ending ē, which appears in all the cases. It is shortened (1) in the ending *ei*, when preceded by a consonant, and (2) in the ending *ĕm*.

3. IRREGULAR ENDINGS:—*ē* or *ī* for *ei* in the Gen. and Dat.: *ăcie* for *aciēi*; *pernĭcii* for *perniciēi*.

4. DEFECTIVE.—Nouns of this declension, except *dies* and *res*, want the Gen., Dat., and Abl. Plur., and many admit no plural whatever.

121. EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.—MASCULINE: *Dies*, day, and *mĕrīdies*, mid-day, though *dies* is sometimes feminine in the singular.

122. The Five Declensions, which are only varieties of one general system of inflection, have been produced by the union of the different final letters of the stem with the following:

Case-Endings for all Nouns.

SINGULAR.

	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*
Nom.	s —	m —
Gen.	ĭs, ī[1]	ĭs, ī
Dat.	ī	ī
Acc.	m, ĕm[2]	m —
Voc.	s —	m —
Abl.	d, ĕd[3]	d, ĕd

PLURAL.

Nom.	ēs, ī[4]	ă
Gen.	ŭm, rŭm[1]	ŭm, rŭm
Dat.	bŭs, ĭbŭs, īs[4]	bŭs, ĭbŭs, īs
Acc.	ms, ems[2]	ă
Voc.	ēs, ī	ă
Abl.	bŭs, ĭbŭs, īs[4].	bŭs, ĭbŭs, īs.

123. The manner in which these endings unite with the different stems so as to produce the five declensions may be seen in the following

Comparative View of Declensions.

	I. Mensa.	II. Servo.	III. Reg.	IV. Fructu.	V. Re.
			SINGULAR.		
N.	*mensa-*	*servo-s*	*reg-s*	*fructu-s*	*re-s*
	mensă	servŭs	rex	fructŭs	rēs
G.	*mensa-i*	*servo-i*	*reg-is*	*fructu-is*	*re-i*
	mensae	servī	rēgĭs	fructūs	rĕī
D.	*mensa-i*	*servo-i*	*reg-i*	*fructu-i*	*re-i*
	mensae	servō	regī	fructuī	rĕī
A.	*mensa-m*	*servo-m*	*reg-em*	*fructu-m*	*re-m*
	mensăm	servŭm	reg-ĕm	fructŭm	rĕm
V.	*mensa-*	*servo-*	*reg-s*	*fructu-s*	*re-s*
	mensă	servĕ[5]	rex	fructŭs	rēs
A.	*mensa-d*	*servo-d*	*reg-ed*	*fructu-d*	*re-d*
	mensā	servō	regĕ	fructū	rē

[1] The endings *ī* and *rŭm* are used with stems in *a*, *o*, and *e*; *ĭs* and *ŭm* with other stems.

[2] The endings *m* and *ms* are used with vowel stems, *ĕm* and *ems* (with connecting vowel *ĕ*) with consonant stems. The plural endings *ms* and *ems* are formed by adding *s* to the singular. *M* is then dropped, and the preceding vowel is lengthened in compensation; hence *ās*, *ōs*, *ēs*, etc. See 27.

[3] The ending *d* was originally used with vowel stems, and *ĕd* (with connecting vowel *ĕ*) with consonant stems. *D* was afterwards dropped, and the preceding vowel, if short, was lengthened, except *ĕ* in Dec. III., which was only a connecting vowel.

[4] The endings *ī* and *īs* are used with stems in *a* and *o*; *ēs* with other stems; *bŭs* with stems in *u* and *e*; *ĭbŭs* (with connecting vowel *ĭ*) with consonant stems.

[5] Nouns in *us* of Dec. II. change the stem-vowel *o* into *e*.

PLURAL.

N.	*mensa-i* mensae	*servo-i* servī	*reg-es* regēs	*fructu-es* fructūs	*re-es* rēs
G.	*mensa-rum* mensārŭm	*servo-rum* servōrŭm	*reg-um* regŭm	*fructu-um* fructuŭm	*re-rum* rērŭm
D.	*mensa-is* mensīs	*servo-is* servīs	*reg-ibus* regĭbŭs	*fructu-bus* fructĭbŭs	*re-bus* rēbŭs
A.	*mensa-ms* mensās	*servo-ms* servōs	*reg-ems* regēs	*fructu-ms* fructūs	*re-ms* rēs
V.	*mensa-i* mensae	*servo-i* servī	*reg-es* regēs	*fructu-es* fructūs	*re-es* rēs
A.	*mensa-is* mensīs.	*servo-is* servīs.	*reg-ibus* regĭbŭs.	*fructu-bus* fructĭbŭs.	*re-bus* rēbŭs.

124. General Table of Gender.

I. Gender independent of ending.[1] Common to all declensions.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Names of MALES, of RIVERS, WINDS, and MONTHS.	Names of FEMALES, of COUNTRIES, TOWNS, ISLANDS, and TREES.	INDECLINABLE NOUNS, and WORDS and CLAUSES *used as Indeclinable Nouns.*

II. Gender determined by Nominative Ending.[2]

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
	DECLENSION I.	
as, es.	**a, e.**	
	DECLENSION II.	
er, ir, us, os.		**um, on.**
	DECLENSION III.	
o, or, os, er, es *increasing in the genitive.*	**as, is, ys, x, es** *not increasing in the genitive,* **s** *preceded by a consonant.*	**a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us.**
	DECLENSION IV.	
us.		**u.**
	DECLENSION V.	
	es.	

[1] For exceptions, see 43.
[2] For exceptions, see under the several declensions.

COMPOUND NOUNS.

125. Compounds present in general no peculiarities of declension. But

1. If two nominatives unite, they are both declined: *respūblĭca* = *res publĭca*, republic, the public thing; *jusjūrandum* = *jūs jūrandum*, oath.

2. If a nominative unites with an oblique case, only the nominative is declined: *păterfămĭliās* = *pătĕr familias* (49, 1), or *păter familiae*, the father of a family.

126. Paradigms.

SINGULAR.

N.	rēspūblĭcă	jūsjūrandŭm	păterfămĭliās
G.	rĕīpublĭcae	jūrisjurandī	patrisfamilias
D.	rĕīpublĭcae	jurijurandō	patrīfamilias
A.	rempublĭcăm	jusjurandŭm	patremfamilias
V.	respublĭcă	jusjurandŭm	paterfamilias
A.	rēpublĭcā	jurejurandō	patrĕfamilias

PLURAL.

N.	respublĭcae	jurajurandă	patresfamilias
G.	rērumpublicārŭm		patrumfamilias
D.	rēbuspublĭcīs		patrĭbusfamilias
A.	respublĭcās	jurajurandă	patresfamilias
V.	respublĭcae	jurajurandă	patresfamilias
A.	rēbuspublĭcīs.		patrĭbusfamilias.

1. The parts which compose these and similar words are often and perhaps more correctly written separately: *res publĭca; păter familias* or *familiae.*

2. *Paterfamilias* sometimes has *familiārum* in the plural: *patresfamiliārum.*

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

127. Irregular nouns may be divided into four classes:

I. Indeclinable Nouns have but one form for all cases.

II. Defective Nouns want certain parts.

III. Heteroclites (*hĕtĕrŏclĭta*[1]) are partly of one declension and partly of another.

IV. Heterogeneous Nouns (*hĕtĕrŏgĕnea*[2]) are partly of one gender and partly of another.

---

[1] From ἕτερος, *another*, and κλίσις, *inflection*, i. e., of different declensions.

[2] From ἕτερος, *another*, and γένος, *gender*, i. e., of different genders.

I. Indeclinable Nouns.

128. The Latin has but few indeclinable nouns:

1. *Fās*, right; *nĕfās*, wrong; *instăr*, equality; *mānĕ*, morning; *nihĭl*, nothing; *pondō*, pound; *sĕcŭs*, sex.
2. The letters of the alphabet, *a*, *b*, *c*, *alphă*, *bētă*, etc.
3. Foreign words: *Jăcōb*, *Ilibĕrī;* though these are often declined.

II. Defective Nouns.

129. Nouns may be defective in *Number*, in *Case*, or in both *Number* and *Case*.

130. Plural wanting.—Many nouns from the nature of their signification want the plural: *Rōma*, Rome; *justĭtia*, justice; *aurum*, gold.

1. The principal nouns of this class are:

1) Most names of persons and places: *Cĭcĕro*, *Rōma*.

2) Abstract Nouns: *fĭdēs*, faith; *justĭtia*, justice.

3) Names of materials: *aurum*, gold; *ferrum*, iron.

4) A few others: *mĕrīdiēs*, midday; *spĕcĭmĕn*, example; *sŭpellex*, furniture; *vēr*, spring; *vespĕra*, evening, etc.

2. Proper names admit the plural to designate *families*, *classes;* names of materials, to designate *pieces* of the material or *articles* made of it; and abstract nouns, to designate *instances*, or *kinds*, of the quality; *Scīpiōnes*, the Scipios; *aera*, vessels of copper; *ăvārĭtiae*, instances of avarice; *ŏdia*, hatreds.

In the poets, the *plural* of abstracts occurs in the sense of the singular.

131. Singular wanting.—Many nouns want the singular.

1. The most important of these are:

1) Certain personal appellatives applicable to classes: *majōres*, forefathers; *postĕri*, descendants; *gĕmĭni*, twins; *lībĕri*, children.

2) Many names of cities: *Athēnae*, Athens; *Thēbae*, Thebes; *Delphi*, Delphi.

3) Many names of festivals: *Bacchānālia*, *Olympia*, *Sāturnālia*.

4) *Arma*, arms; *dīvĭtiae*, riches; *exsĕquiae*, funeral rites; *exŭviae*, spoils; *īdus*, ides; *indūtiae*, truce; *insĭdiae*, ambuscade; *mānes*, shades of the dead; *mīnae*, threats; *moenia*, walls; *mūnia*, duties; *nuptiae*, nuptials; *rĕlĭquiae*, remains.

2. An individual member of a class designated by these plurals may be denoted by *ūnus ex* with the plural: *unus ex lībĕris*, one of the children, or a child.

3. The plural in names of cities may have reference to the several parts of the city, especially as ancient cities were often made up of separate

villages. So in the names of festivals, the plural may refer to the various games and exercises which together constituted the festival.

132. Plural with Change of Meaning.—Some nouns have one signification in the singular and another in the plural. Thus:

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Aedēs, *temple;*	aedes, (1) *temples*, (2) *a house.*[1]
Auxĭlium, *help;*	auxilia, *auxiliaries.*
Carcĕr, *prison*, *barrier;*	carcĕres, *barriers of a race-course.*
Castrum, *castle*, *hut;*	castra, *camp.*
Comĭtium, *name of a part of the Roman forum;*	comitia, *the assembly held in the comitium.*
Cōpia, *plenty*, *force;*	copiae, (1) *stores*, (2) *troops.*
Făcultās, *ability;*	facultātes, *wealth*, *means.*
Fīnĭs, *end;*	fines, *borders*, *territory.*
Fortūna, *fortune;*	fortūnae, *possessions*, *wealth.*
Grātia, *gratitude*, *favor;*	gratiae, *thanks.*
Hortus, *garden;*	horti, (1) *gardens*, (2) *pleasure-grounds.*
Impĕdīmentum, *hindrance;*	impedimenta, (1) *hindrances*, (2) *baggage.*
Littĕra, *letter of alphabet;*	littĕrae, (1) *letters of alphabet*, (2) *epistle*, *writing*, *letters*, *literature.*
Lūdus, *play*, *sport;*	ludi, (1) *plays*, (2), *public spectacle.*
Mōs, *custom;*	mōres, *manners*, *character.*
Nātālĭs (diēs), *birth-day;*	natāles, *pedigree*, *parentage.*
Opĕra, *work*, *service;*	opĕrae, *workmen.*
Pars, *part;*	partes, (1) *parts*, (2) *a party.*
Rostrum, *beak of ship;*	rostra, (1) *beaks*, (2) *the rostra or tribune in Rome* (adorned with beaks).
Sāl, *salt;*	sāles, *witty sayings.*

133. Defective in Case.—Some nouns are defective in case. Thus:

1. In the Nom., Dat., and Voc. Sing.: (Ops), ŏpis, *help;* (vix or vīcĭs), vīcis, *change.*

2. In the Nom. and Voc. Sing.: (Daps), dăpis, *food;* (dĭtio), dĭtiōnis, *sway;* (frux), frūgis, *fruit;* (internĕcio), internĕciōnis, *destruction;* (pollĭs), pollĭnis, *flour.*

3. In the Gen., Dat. and Abl. Plur.: most nouns of the fifth declension. See 120, 4.

So also many neuters: *fār*, *fĕl*, *mĕl*, *pūs*, *rūs*, *tūs;* especially Greek neuters in *ŏs*, which want these cases in the singular also: *ĕpos*, *mĕlos.*

---

[1] *Aedes* and some other words in this list, it will be observed, have in the plural two significations, one corresponding to that of the singular, and the other distinct from it.

4. In the Gen. Plur.: many nouns otherwise entire, especially monosyllables: *nex*, *pax*, *pix*; *cŏr*, *cōs*, *rōs*; *sāl*, *sōl*, *lux*.

134. Number and Case.—Some nouns want one entire number and certain cases of the other: *fors*, chance, has only *fors* and *forte*; *lues*, pestilence, has *luēs*, *luem*, *lue*. Many verbal nouns in *u* have only the ablative singular: *jussu*, by order; *mandātu*, by command; *rŏgātu*, by request.

III. Heteroclites.

135. Of Declensions II. and IV. are a few nouns in *us*. See 119.

136. Of Declensions II. and III. are

1. *Jūgĕrum*, an acre; generally of the second Decl. in the Sing., and of the third in the Plur.: *jūgĕrum*, *jugĕri*; plural, *jugĕra*, *jugĕrum*, *jugeribus*.

2. *Vās*, a vessel; of the third Decl., in the Sing. and of the second in the Plur.: *vas*, *vāsis*; plural, *vāsa*, *vasōrum*.

3. Plural names of festivals in *alia*: *Bacchānālia*, *Sāturnālia*; which are regularly of the third Decl., but sometimes form the Gen. Plur. in *ōrum* of the second. *Ancīle*, a shield, and a few other words have the same peculiarity.

137. Of Declensions III. and V. are

1. *Rĕquiēs*, rest; which is regularly of the third Decl., but also takes the forms *requiem* and *requiē* of the fifth.

2. *Fămēs*, hunger; regularly of the third Decl., except in the ablative, *famē*, of the fifth (not *famĕ*, of the third).

138. Forms in **ia** and **ies**.—Many words of four syllables have one form in *ia* of Decl. I., and one in *ies* of Decl. V.: *luxŭria*, *luxŭries*, luxury; *māteria*, *mātĕries*, material.

139. Forms in **us** and **um**.—Many nouns derived from verbs have one form in *us* of Decl. IV., and one in *um* of Decl. II.: *cōnātus*, *cōnātum*, an attempt; *ēventus*, *ēventum*, event.

140. Many words which have but one approved form in prose, admit another in poetry: *jŭventūs* (ūtis), youth; poetic, *jŭventa* (ae): *sĕnectūs* (ūtis), old age; poetic, *sĕnecta* (ae): *paupertās* (ātis), poverty; poetic, *paupĕries* (ēi).

IV. Heterogeneous Nouns.

141. Masculine and Neuter.—Some *masculines* take in the plural an additional form of the neuter gender:

Jŏcus, m., jest;	plural *joci*, m., *joca*, n.
Lŏcus, m., place;	" *loci*, m., topics, *loca*, n., places.

142. Feminine and Neuter.—Some *feminines* take in the plural an additional form of the neuter gender:

Carbăsus, f., linen;	plural *carbăsi*, f., *carbăsa*, n.
Margărīta, f., pearl;	" *margarītae*, f., *margarīta*, n.
Ostrea, f., oyster;	" *ostreae*, f., *ostrea*, n.

143. Neuter and Masculine or Feminine.—Some *neuters* take in the plural a different gender. Thus:

1. Some *neuters* become *masculine* in the plural:

Caelum, n., heaven; plural *caeli*, m.

2. Some *neuters* generally become *masculine* in the plural, bnt sometimes remain *neuter:*

Frēnum, n., bridle;	plural *freni*, m., *frena*, n.
Rastrum, n., rake;	" *rastri*, m., *rastra*, n.

3. Some *neuters* become *feminine* in the plural:

Epŭlum, n., feast; plural *epŭlae*, f.

144. Forms in us and um.—Some nouns of the second declension have one form in *us* masculine, and one in *um* neuter: *clĭpeus*, *clĭpeum*, shield; *commentārius*, *commentārium*, commentary.

145. Heterogeneous Heteroclites.—Some heteroclites are also heterogeneous: *cōnātus* (us), *cōnātum* (i), effort; *menda* (ae), *mendum* (i), fault.

CHAPTER II.

ADJECTIVES.

146. The adjective is that part of speech which is used to qualify nouns: *bŏnus*, good: *magnus*, great.

The form of the adjective in Latin depends in part upon the gender of the noun which it qualifies: *bŏnus puer*, a good boy; *bona puella*, a good girl; *bonum tectum*, a good house. Thus *bonus* is the form of the adjective when used with masculine nouns, *bona* with feminine, and *bonum* with neuter.

147. Some adjectives are partly of the first declension and partly of the second, while all the rest are entirely of the third declension.

First and Second Declensions : A and O Stems.

148. Bŏnus, *good.*

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	bŏn**ŭs**	bŏn**ă**	bŏn**ŭm**
Gen.	bon**ī**	bon**ae**	bon**ī**
Dat.	bon**ō**	bon**ae**	bon**ō**
Acc.	bon**ŭm**	bon**ăm**	bon**ŭm**
Voc.	bon**ĕ**	bon**ă**	bon**ŭm**
Abl.	bon**ō**	bon**ā**	bon**ō**;

PLURAL.

Nom.	bon**ī**	bon**ae**	bon**ă**
Gen.	bon**ōrŭm**	bon**ārŭm**	bon**ōrŭm**
Dat.	bon**īs**	bon**īs**	bon**īs**
Acc.	bon**ōs**	bon**ās**	bon**ă**
Voc.	bon**ī**	bon**ae**	bon**ă**
Abl.	bon**īs**	bon**īs**	bon**īs**.

1. Bonus is declined in the Masc. like *servus* of Decl. II. (51), in the Fem. like *mensa* of Decl. I. (48), and in the Neut. like *templum* of Decl. II. (51). The stems are *bŏno* in the Masc. and Neut., and *bŏna* in the Fem.

149. Līber, *free.*

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	līběr	līběr**ă**	līběr**ŭm**
Gen.	liběr**ī**	liběr**ae**	liběr**ī**
Dat.	liběr**ō**	liběr**ae**	liběr**ō**
Acc.	liběr**ŭm**	liběr**ăm**	liběr**ŭm**
Voc.	liběr	liběr**ă**	liběr**ŭm**
Abl.	liběr**ō**	liběr**ā**	liběr**ō**;

PLURAL.

Nom.	liběr**ī**	liběr**ae**	liběr**ă**
Gen.	liber**ōrŭm**	liber**ārŭm**	liber**ōrŭm**
Dat.	liběr**īs**	liběr**īs**	liběr**īs**
Acc.	liběr**ōs**	liběr**ās**	liběr**ă**
Voc.	liběr**ī**	liběr**ae**	liběr**ă**
Abl.	liběr**īs**	liběr**īs**	liběr**īs**.

1. Liber is declined in the Masc. like *puer* (51), and in the Fem. and Neut. like *bŏnus*.

150. Aeger, *sick*.

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	aegĕr	aegră	aegrŭm
Gen.	aegrī	aegrae	aegrī
Dat.	aegrō	aegrae	aegrō
Acc.	aegrŭm	aegrăm	aegrŭm
Voc.	aeger	aegră	aegrŭm
Abl.	aegrō	aegrā	aegrō;

PLURAL.

Nom.	aegrī	aegrae	aegră
Gen.	aegrōrŭm	aegrārŭm	aegrōrŭm
Dat.	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs
Acc.	aegrōs	aegrās	aegră
Voc.	aegrī	aegrae	aegră
Abl.	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs.

1. Aeger is declined in the Masc. like *ăger* (51) and in the Fem. and Neut. like *bŏnus*.

2. Most adjectives in *ĕr* are declined like *aeger*, but the following in *ĕr* and *ŭr* are declined like *līber:*

1) *Asper*, rough; *lăcer*, torn; *mĭser*, wretched; *prosper*, prosperous; *tĕner*, tender; but *asper* sometimes drops the *e*, and *dexter*, right, sometimes retains it: *dexter*, *dextĕra* or *dextra*.

2) *Sătur*, sated; *satur*, *satŭra*, *satŭrum*.

3) Compounds in *fĕr* and *gĕr: mortĭfer*, deadly; *ālĭger*, winged.

151. Irregularities.—These nine adjectives have in the singular **ĭŭs** in the genitive and **ī** in the dative:

Aliŭs, *ă*, *ŭd*, another; *nullus*, *a*, *um*, no one; *sōlus*, alone; *tōtus*, whole; *ullus*, any; *ūnus*, one; *altĕr*, *-tĕră*, *-tĕrŭm*, the other; *ŭter*, *-tra*, *-trum*, which (of two); *neuter*, *-tra*, *-trum*, neither.[1]

1. The Regular Forms occasionally occur in some of these adjectives.

2. *I* in *ius* is sometimes short; generally so in *altĕrius*.

3. *Alius* contracts the genitive *ăliius* into *ălīus*.

4. Like *ŭter* are declined its compounds: *uterquĕ*, *utĕrvĭs*, *uterlĭbĕt*, *utercunquĕ*. In *altĕrŭter* sometimes both parts are declined, as *altĕrius utrīus;* and sometimes only the latter, as *altĕrutrīus*.

---

[1] For the Declension in full see *ūnus*, 175.

THIRD DECLENSION: CONSONANT AND I STEMS.

152. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes:

I. Those which have in the nominative singular three different forms—one for each gender.

II. Those which have two forms—the masculine and feminine being the same.

III. Those which have but one form—the same for all genders.

153. ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS in this declension have the stem in **i**, and are declined as follows:

Acer, *sharp*.

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	ācĕr	ācr**ĭs**	ācr**ĕ**
G.	acr**ĭs**	acr**ĭs**	acr**ĭs**
D.	acr**ī**	acr**ī**	acr**ī**
A.	acr**ĕm**	acr**ĕm**	acr**ĕ**
V.	acĕr	acr**ĭs**	acr**ĕ**
A.	acr**ī**	acr**ī**	acr**ī**;

PLURAL.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	acr**ēs**	acr**ēs**	acr**ĭă**
G.	acr**ĭŭm**	acr**ĭŭm**	acr**ĭŭm**
D.	acr**ĭbŭs**	acr**ĭbŭs**	acr**ĭbŭs**
A.	acr**ēs, īs**	acr**ēs, īs**	acr**ĭă**
V.	acr**ēs**	acr**ēs**	acr**ĭă**
A.	acr**ĭbŭs**	acr**ĭbŭs**	acr**ĭbŭs**.

1. Like ACER are declined:

1) *Ălăcer*, lively; *campester*, level; *cĕlĕber*, famous; *cĕler*,[1] swift; *ĕquester*, equestrian; *păluster*, marshy; *pĕdester*, pedestrian; *pŭter*, putrid; *sălūber*, healthful; *silvester*, woody; *terrester*, terrestrial; *vŏlŭcer*, winged.

2) Adjectives in *er* designating the months: *Octōber*, *bris*.[2]

2. The Masculine in *is*, like the Fem., also occurs: *sălūbris*, *silvestris*, for salūber, silvester.

---

[1] This retains *e* in declension: *celer*, *celĕris*, *celĕre;* and has *um* in the Gen. Plur.

[2] See also 77, II. 2.

3. These forms in *er* are analogous to those in *er* of Dec. II. in dropping the ending in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. and in inserting *e* before *r*: *ācer* for *acris*, stem, *ācri*.

4. ACER is declined like *ignis* in the Masc. and Fem., and like *măre* (68) in the Neut., except in the Nom. and Voc. Sing., Masc. where it ends in *er*, and in the Abl. Sing. where it ends in *ī*.

154. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS are declined as follows:

Tristis, *sad.*		Tristior, *more sad.*	
SINGULAR.			
M. *and* F.	NEUT.	M. *and* F.	NEUT.
N. trist**ĭs**	trist**ĕ**	*N.* tristiŏr	tristiŭs
G. trist**ĭs**	trist**ĭs**	*G.* tristiōr**ĭs**	tristiōr**ĭs**
D. trist**ī**	trist**ī**	*D.* tristiōr**ī**	tristiōr**ī**
A. trist**ĕm**	trist**ĕ**	*A.* tristiōr**ĕm**	tristiŭs
V. trist**ĭs**	trist**ĕ**	*V.* tristiŏr	tristiŭs
A. trist**ī**	trist**ī**;	*A.* tristiōr**ĕ** (**ī**)	tristiōr**ĕ** (**ī**);
PLURAL.			
N. trist**ēs**	trist**iă**	*N.* tristiōr**ēs**	tristiōr**ă**
G. trist**iŭm**	trist**iŭm**	*G.* tristiōr**ŭm**	tristiōr**ŭm**
D. trist**ĭbŭs**	trist**ĭbŭs**	*D.* tristior**ĭbŭs**	tristior**ĭbŭs**
A. trist**ēs, īs**	trist**iă**	*A.* tristiōr**ēs**	tristiōr**ă**
V. trist**ēs**	trist**iă**	*V.* tristiōr**ēs**	tristiōr**ă**
A. trist**ĭbŭs**	trist**ĭbŭs**.	*A.* tristior**ĭbŭs**	tristior**ĭbŭs**.

1. TRISTIS and TRISTE are declined like *ācris* and *ācre*.

2. TRISTIOR is the comparative (160) of *tristis*.

3. STEMS.—The stem of *tristis* is *tristi*; that of *tristior* was originally *tristiōs*, but it has been modified to *tristiŭs* (61, 1) in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Sing. Neut., and to *tristiŏr* in the other cases (35).

4. Like TRISTIOR, comparatives, as consonant stems, generally have the Abl. Sing. in *e*, sometimes in *i*, the Nom. Plur. Neut. in *a*, and the Gen. Plur. in *um*. But

5. COMPLURES, several, has Gen. Plur. *complūrium*; Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur. Neut. *complūra* or *complūria*. See *Plūs*, 165, 1.

6. ABLATIVE IN *e*.—In poetry, adjectives in *is*, *e*, sometimes have the Abl. Sing. in *e*: *cognōmine* from *cognominis*, of the same name.

155. ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING generally end in *s* or *x*, sometimes in *l* or *r*, and are declined in the main like nouns of the same endings.

156. Audax, *audacious.* Fēlix, *happy.*

SINGULAR.

M. *and* F.	NEUT.	M. *and* F.	NEUT.
N. audax	audax	*N.* fēlix	fēlix
G. audācĭ**s**	audācĭ**s**	*G.* felīcĭ**s**	felīcĭ**s**
D. audācī	audācī	*D.* felīcī	felīcī
A. audācĕ**m**	audax	*A.* felīcĕ**m**	felix
V. audax	audax	*V.* felix	felix
A. audācī (ĕ)	audācī (ĕ);	*A.* felīcī (ĕ)	felīcī (ĕ);

PLURAL.

N. audācē**s**	audacĭ**ă**	*N.* felīcē**s**	felicĭ**ă**
G. audacĭ**ŭm**	audacĭ**ŭm**	*G.* felicĭ**ŭm**	felicĭ**ŭm**
D. audacĭ**bŭs**	audacĭ**bŭs**	*D.* felicĭ**bŭs**	felicĭ**bŭs**
A. audācē**s** (ī**s**)	andacĭ**ă**	*A.* felīcē**s** (ī**s**)	felicĭ**ă**
V. audācē**s**	audacĭ**ă**	*V.* felīcē**s**	felicĭ**ă**
A. audacĭ**bŭs**	audacĭ**bŭs**.	*A.* felicĭ**bŭs**	felicĭ**bŭs**.

1. STEMS.—Most Adjectives of One Ending are combinations of **i**-stems and consonant stems—the former appearing in the Abl. Sing. and in the Plural. The stems of *audax* and *felix* are *audāci*, *audāc*, and *felīci*, *felīc*.

157. Amans, *loving.* Prūdens, *prudent.*

SINGULAR.

M. *and* F.	NEUT.	M. *and* F.	NEUT.
N. ămans	ămans	*N.* prūdens	prūdens
G. amantĭ**s**	amantĭ**s**	*G.* prudentĭ**s**	prudentĭ**s**
D. amantī	amantī	*D.* prudentī	prudentī
A. amantĕ**m**	amans	*A.* prudentĕ**m**	prudens
V. amans	amans	*V.* prudens	prudens
A. amantĕ (ī)	amantĕ (ī);	*A.* prudentī (ĕ)	prudentī (ĕ);

PLURAL.

N. amantē**s**	amantĭ**ă**	*N.* prudentē**s**	prudentĭ**ă**
G. amantĭ**ŭm**	amantĭ**ŭm**	*G.* prudentĭ**ŭm**	prudentĭ**ŭm**
D. amantĭ**bŭs**	amantĭ**bŭs**	*D.* prudentĭ**bŭs**	prudentĭ**bŭs**
A. amantē**s** (ī**s**)	amantĭ**ă**	*A.* prudentē**s** (ī**s**)	prudentĭ**ă**
V. amantē**s**	amantĭ**ă**	*V.* prudentē**s**	prudentĭ**ă**
A. amantĭ**bŭs**	amantĭ**bŭs**.	*A.* prudentĭ**bŭs**	prudentĭ**bŭs**.

1. The stems are *ămanti*, *ămant*; *prūdenti*, *prūdent*.

2. The participle *ămans* differs in declension from the adjective *prūdens* only in the Abl. Sing., where the participle usually has the ending **ĕ**, and the adjective, **ī**. Participles used adjectively may of course take **ī**. A few adjectives have only **e** in general use:—(1) *pauper*, *paupĕre*, poor;

pūbes, *pubĕre*, mature;—(2) those in **ĕs**, G. **ĭtis** or **ĭdis**: *āles*, *dēses*, *dīves*, *sospes*, *superstes*;—(3) *caelebs*, *compŏs*, *impŏs*, *princeps*.

158. Vĕtus, *old.* Mĕmor, *mindful.*

SINGULAR.

	M. *and* F.	NEUT.	M. *and* F.	NEUT.
N.	vĕtŭs	vĕtŭs	mĕmŏr	mĕmŏr
G.	vetĕr**ĭs**	vetĕr**ĭs**	memŏr**ĭs**	memŏr**ĭs**
D.	vetĕr**ī**	vetĕr**ī**	memŏr**ī**	memŏr**ī**
A.	vetĕr**ĕm**	vetŭs	memŏr**ĕm**	memŏr
V.	vetŭs	vetŭs	memŏr	memŏr
A.	vetĕr**ĕ** (**ī**)	vetĕr**ĕ** (**ī**);	memŏr**ī**	memŏr**ī**;

PLURAL.

N.	vetĕr**ēs**	vetĕr**ă**	memŏr**ēs**
G.	vetĕr**ŭm**	vetĕr**ŭm**	memŏr**ŭm**
D.	veter**ĭbŭs**	veter**ĭbŭs**	memor**ĭbŭs**
A.	vetĕr**ēs**	vetĕr**ă**	memŏr**ēs**
V.	vetĕr**ēs**	vetĕr**ă**	memŏr**ēs**
A.	veter**ĭbŭs**	veter**ĭbŭs**.	memor**ĭbŭs**.

1. Neuter Plural.—Many adjectives like *mĕmŏr*, from the nature of their signification, want the Neut. Plur.: *ūbĕr*, fertile, has *ubĕra*, like *vĕtŭs*, *vetĕra*; all others have the ending *ia*, as *fēlīcia*, *prūdentia*.

2. Genitive Plural.—Most adjectives have **ium**, but the following have **um**.

1) Adjectives of one ending with only **e** in the ablative singular (157, 2): *pauper*, *paupĕrum*.

2) Those with the genitive in **ĕris**, **ŏris**, **ŭris**: *vĕtus*, *vetĕrum*, old; *mĕmor*, *memŏrum*, mindful; *cĭcŭr*, *cicŭrum*, tame.

3) Those in **ceps**: *anceps*, *ancĭpĭtum*, doubtful.

4) Those compounded with substantives which have **um**: *ĭnops* (ops, ŏpum), *inŏpum*, helpless.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

159. Irregular adjectives may be

I. Indeclinable: *frūgī*, frugal, good; *nēquăm*, worthless; *millĕ*, thousand. See 176.

II. Defective: (cētĕrus) *cētĕra*, *cetĕrum*, the other, the rest; (lūdĭcer) *lūdĭcra*, *ludicrum*, sportive; (sons) *sontis*, guilty; (sēmĭnex) *sēmĭnĕcis*, half dead; *pauci*, *ae*, *a*, used only in the Plur. See also 158, 1.

III. Heteroclites.—Many adjectives have two distinct forms, one in *us*, *a*, *um*, of the first and second declensions, and one in *is* and *e* of the third: *hĭlărus* and *hĭlăris*, joyful; *exănĭmus* and *exănĭmis*, lifeless.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

160. Adjectives have three forms, called the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative degree: *altus*, *altiŏr*, *altissĭmŭs*, high, higher, highest. These forms denote different degrees of the quality expressed by the adjective.

161. The Latin, like the English, has two modes of comparison:

I. Terminational Comparison—by endings.

II. Adverbial Comparison—by adverbs.

I. Terminational Comparison.

162. Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the stem of the positive the endings:

Comparative.			Superlative.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
iŏr,	**iŏr,**	**iŭs.**	**issĭmŭs,**	**issĭmă,**	**issĭmŭm:**[1]

Altus, altior, altissĭmus: *high*, *higher*, *highest.*
lĕvis, levior, levissĭmus: *light*, *lighter*, *lightest.*

1. Vowel Stems lose their final vowel: *alto*, *altior*, *altissimus*.

163. Irregular Superlatives.—Many adjectives with regular comparatives have irregular superlatives. Thus:

1. Adjectives in **er** add **rĭmus** to the positive:[1] *ācer*, *acrior*, *acerrĭmus*, sharp.

Vĕtus has *veterrĭmus*; *mātūrus*, both *maturrĭmus* and *maturissĭmus*; *dexter*, *dextĭmus*.

2. Six in **ĭlis** add **lĭmus** to the stem:[1]

Făcĭlis, diffĭcĭlis; *easy*, *difficult*.
sĭmĭlis, dissĭmĭlis; *like*, *unlike*.
grăcĭlis, hŭmĭlis; *slender*, *low*:

facĭlis, *facilior*, *facillĭmus*. *Imbēcillis* has *imbecillĭmus*.

[1] The superlative ending *is-simus* is probably compounded of *is* for *ios*, the original comparative ending (154, 8), and *simus* for *tĭmus*; *ios-tĭmus=ios-simus=is-simus*. After *l* and *r*, the first element is omitted, and *s* assimilated: *făcĭlis*, *facil-simus*, *facillĭmus*; *ācer*, *acer-simus*, *acer-rimus*.

3. Four in **rus** have two irregular superlatives :

Extĕrus,	exterior,	extrēmus	*and* extĭmus,	*outward.*
infĕrus,	inferior,	infĭmus	*and* īmus,	*lower.*
sŭpĕrus,	superior,	suprēmus	*and* summus,	*upper.*
postĕrus,	posterior,	postrēmus	*and* postŭmus,	*next.*

164. Compounds in **dĭcus, fĭcus,** and **vŏlus** are compared with the endings **entior** and **entissĭmus,** as if from forms in *ens:*

Mălĕdĭcus,	maledicentior,	maledicentissĭmus,	*slanderous.*
mūnĭfĭcus,	munificentior,	munificentissĭmus,	*liberal.*
bĕnĕvŏlus,	benevolentior,	benevolentissĭmus,	*benevolent.*

1. *Egēnus* and *prōvĭdus* (needy and prudent), form the comparative and superlative from *ĕgens* and *providens:* hence *egentior*, *egentissimus*, etc.
2. *Mīrĭfĭcissĭmus* occurs as the superlative of *mirĭfĭcus*, wonderful.

165. Special Irregularities of Comparison.

Bŏnus,	mĕlior,	optĭmus,	*good.*
mălus,	pejor,	pessĭmus,	*bad.*
magnus,	major,	maxĭmus,	*great.*
parvus,	mĭnor,	mĭnĭmus,	*small.*
multus,	plūs,	plūrĭmus,	*much.*

1. *Plūs* is neuter, and has in the singular only N. and A. *plus*, and G. *plūris*. In the plural it has N. and A. *plūrēs* (m. and f.), *plūră* (n.), G. *plurium*, D. and A. *pluribus*.

2. Dīvĕs,	dīvĭtior, ditior,	dīvitissĭmus, ditissĭmus,	*rich.*
frūgī,	frugālior,	frugalissĭmus,	*frugal.*
nēquăm,	nequior,	nequissĭmus,	*worthless.*

166. Positive wanting.

Cĭtĕrior,	cĭtĭmus,	*nearer.*	prior,	prĭmus,	*former.*
dētĕrior,	dēterrĭmus,	*worse.*	prŏpior,	proxĭmus,	*nearer.*
intĕrior,	intĭmus,	*inner.*	ultĕrior,	ultĭmus,	*farther.*[1]
ōcior,	ōcissĭmus,	*swifter.*			

167. Comparative wanting.

1. In a few participles used adjectively: *mĕrĭtus*, *meritissĭmus*, deserving.
2. In these adjectives :

[1] These adjectives are formed from *citrā*, *dē*, *intrā*, *Greek* ὠκύς, *prae* or *pro*, *prŏpĕ*, *ultrā*.

Dīversus,	diversissĭmus,	*different.*	nŏvus,	novissĭmus,	*new.*
falsus,	falsissĭmus.	*false.*	săcer,	sacerrĭmus,	*sacred.*
inclŭtus,	inclutissĭmus,	*renowned.*	vĕtus,	veterrĭmus,	*old.*
invītus,	invitissĭmus,	*unwilling.*			

168. Superlative wanting.

1. In most verbals in **ĭlis** and **bĭlis**: *dŏcĭlis, docilior*, docile.
2. In many adjectives in **ālis** and **īlis**: *căpĭtālis, capitalior*, capital.
3. In *ălăcer, alacrior*, active; *caecus*, blind; *diŭturnus*, lasting; *longinquus*, distant; *ŏpīmus*, rich; *prōclīvis*, steep; *prŏpinquus*, near; *sălūtāris*, salutary, and a few others.
4. Three adjectives supply the superlative thus:

Adŏlescens,	ădolescentior,	mĭnĭmus nătu,[1]	*young.*
jŭvĕnis,	junior,	mĭnĭmus nătu,	*young.*
sĕnex,	senior,	maxĭmus natu,	*old.*

169. Without Terminational Comparison.

1. Many adjectives, from the nature of their signification, especially such as denote *material, possession*, or the relations of *place* and *time: aureus*, golden; *păternus*, paternal; *Rōmānus*, Roman; *aestīvus*, of summer.
2. Most adjectives in *us preceded by a vowel*, except those in *quus: ĭdōneus*, suitable; *noxius*, hurtful.
3. Many derivatives in *ālis, āris, ĭlis, ŭlus, ĭcus, īnus, ōrus: mortālis* (mors), mortal.
4. *Albus*, white; *claudus*, lame; *fĕrus*, wild; *lassus*, weary; *mīrus*, wonderful, and a few others.

II. Adverbial Comparison.

170. Adjectives which want the terminational comparison, form the comparative and superlative, when their signification requires it, by prefixing the adverbs *măgis*, more, and *maxĭme*, most, to the positive: arduus, măgis arduus, maxĭme arduus, *arduous.*

1. Other adverbs are sometimes used with the positive to denote different degrees of the quality: *admŏdum, valdē, oppĭdō*, very; *imprīmīs, apprīmē*, in the highest degree: *valde magna*, very great. *Pĕr* and *prae* in composition with adjectives have the force of *very; perdiffĭcĭlis*, very difficult; *praeclārus*, very illustrious.

2. Strengthening Particles are also sometimes used,—(1) With the comparative: *ĕtiam*, even, *multō, longē*, much, far: *ĕtiam dīlĭgentior*, even more diligent; *multo diligentior*, much more diligent,—(2) With the superlative: *multō, longē*, much, by far; *quăm*, as possible: *multo* or *longe diligentissĭmus*, by far the most diligent; *quam diligentissĭmus*, as diligent as possible.

[1] Smallest or youngest in age. *Natu* is sometimes omitted.

NUMERALS.

171. Numerals comprise numeral adjectives and numeral adverbs.

172. Numeral adjectives comprise three principal classes:

1. CARDINAL NUMBERS: *ūnus*, one; *duŏ*, two.
2. ORDINAL NUMBERS: *prīmus*, first; *sĕcundus*, second.
3. DISTRIBUTIVES: *singŭlī*, one by one; *bīnī*, two by two, two each, two apiece.

173. To these may be added:

1. MULTIPLICATIVES.—These are adjectives in *plex*, G. *plĭcis*, denoting so many fold: *simplex*, single; *dŭplex*, double; *trĭplex*, threefold.

2. PROPORTIONALS.—These are declined like *bŏnus*, and denote so many times as great: *dŭplus*, twice as great; *trĭplus*, three times as great.

174. TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
1. ūnus, una, unum,	prīmŭs,[2] *first*,	singŭlī, *one by one.*
2. duŏ, duae, duo,	sĕcundus,[2] *second*,	bīni, *two by two.*
3. trēs, triă,	tertius, *third*,	terni (trīni).
4. quattuŏr,	quartus, *fourth*,	quăterni.
5. quinquĕ,	quintus, *fifth*,	quīni.
6. sex,	sextus,	sēni.
7. septĕm,	septĭmus,	septēni.
8. octō,	octāvus,	octōni.
9. nŏvĕm,	nōnus,	nŏvēni.
10. dĕcĕm,	dĕcĭmus,	dēni.
11. undĕcĭm,	undĕcĭmus,	undēni.
12. duŏdĕcĭm,	duŏdecĭmus,	duŏdēni.
13. trĕdĕcim,[1]	tertius decĭmus,[3]	terni dēni.
14. quattuordĕcĭm,	quartus decĭmus,	quăterni dēni.
15. quindĕcĭm,	quintus decĭmus,	quīni dēni.
16. sēdĕcĭm *or* sexdĕcĭm,[1]	sextus decĭmus,	sēni dēni.
17. septendĕcĭm,[1]	septĭmus decĭmus,	septēni dēni.

[1] Sometimes with the parts separated: *decem et tres; decem et sex, etc.*

[2] *Prior* is used instead of *primus* in speaking of two, and *alter* is often used for *secundus.*

[3] Sometimes *decĭmus* precedes with or without *et*: *decĭmus et tertius* or *decĭmus tertius.*

	Cardinals.	Ordinals.	Distributives.
18.	duŏdēvīgintī,[1]	duŏdēvīcēsĭmus,[5]	duŏdēvīcēni.
19.	undēvīgintī,[1]	undēvīcēsĭmus,[5]	undevicēni.
20.	vīgintī,	vīcēsĭmus,[6]	vīcēni.
21.	viginti ūnus,	vicesimus prīmus,	vicēni singŭli.
	ūnus ĕt viginti,[2]	ūnus et vicesĭmus[2],	singŭli et vicēni.
22.	viginti duo,	vicesimus secundus,	vicēni bīni.
	duo ĕt viginti,	alter et vicesĭmus,	bīni et vicēni.
30.	trīgintā,	trīcēsĭmus,[6]	trīcēni.
40.	quădrāgintā,	quădrāgēsĭmus,	quădrāgēni.
50.	quinquāgintā,	quinquāgēsĭmus,	quinquāgēni.
60.	sexāgintā,	sexāgēsĭmus,	sexāgēni.
70.	septuāgintā,	septuāgēsĭmus,	septuāgēni.
80.	octōgintā,	octōgēsĭmus,	octōgēni.
90.	nōnāgintā,	nōnāgēsĭmus,	nōnāgēni.
100.	centŭm,	centēsĭmus,	centēni.
101.	centum ūnus,	centesĭmus prīmus,	centēni singŭli.
	centum et ūnus,[3]	centesĭmus et prīmus	centēni et singŭli.
200.	dŭcentī, ae, ă,	dŭcentesĭmus,	dŭcēni.
300.	trĕcenti,	trĕcentesĭmus,	trĕcēni.
400.	quădringenti,	quădringentēsĭmus,	quădringēni.
500.	quingenti,	quingentēsĭmus,	quingēni.
600.	sexcenti,	sexcentesĭmus,	sexcēni.
700.	septingenti,	septingentesĭmus,	septingēni.
800.	octingenti,	octingentesĭmus,	octingēni.
900.	nongenti,	nongentesĭmus,	nongēni.
1,000.	millĕ,	millēsĭmus,	singŭla millia.
2,000.	duo millia,[4]	bĭs millesĭmus,	bīna millia.
10,000.	dĕcem millia,	dĕciēs millesĭmus,	dēna millia.

[1] Literally two from twenty, one from twenty, by subtraction; but these numbers may be expressed by addition: *decem et octo; decem et novem;* so 28, 29; 38, 39, etc., either by subtraction from *trīgintā*, etc., or by addition to *viginti; duodetriginta* or *octo et viginti.*

[2] If the tens precede the units, *et* is omitted, otherwise it is generally used. So in English cardinals, twenty-one, one and twenty.

[3] In compounding numbers above 100, units generally follow tens, tens hundreds, etc., as in English; but the connective *et* is either omitted, or used only between the two highest denominations: *mille centum viginti* or *mille et centum viginti,* 1120.

[4] Sometimes *bina millia* or *bis mille.*

[5] Sometimes expressed by addition, like the corresponding cardinals: *octāvus decĭmus* and *nonus decĭmus.*

[6] Sometimes written with *g: vigesĭmus; trigesĭmus.*

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
100,000. centum millia,	centiēs millesĭmus,	centēna millia.
1,000,000. dĕciēs centēna millia,[1]	decies centies millesĭmus,	dĕciēs centēna millia.

1. ORDINALS with *Pars*, part, expressed or understood, may be used to express fractions: *tertia pars*, a third part, a third; *quarta pars*, a fourth; *duae tertiae*, two thirds.

2. DISTRIBUTIVES are used

1) To show the *number* of objects taken at a time, often best rendered by adding to the cardinal *each* or *apiece; ternos dēnārios accēpērunt*, they received *each* three denarii, or three apiece. Hence:

2) To express *Multiplication: decies centēna millia*, ten times a hundred thousand, a million.

3) Instead of *Cardinals*, with nouns plural in form, but singular in sense: *bīna castra*, two camps. Here for *singŭli* and *terni*, *ūni* and *trīni* are used: *unae littĕrae*, one letter; *trīnae littĕrae*, three letters.

4) Sometimes in reference to objects spoken of in pairs: *bīni scȳphi*, a pair of goblets; and in the poets with the force of cardinals: *bīna hastīlia*, two spears.

3. Poets use numeral adverbs (181) very freely in compounding numbers: *bĭs sex*, for duodĕcim; *bis septem*, for quattuordĕcim.

4. *Sexcenti* and *mille* are sometimes used indefinitely for any large number, as *one thousand* is in English.

DECLENSION OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

175. The first three cardinals are declined as follows:

Unus, *one.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	ūnŭs	ūnă	ūnŭm	ūnī	ūnae	ūnă
G.	unīŭs	unīŭs	unīŭs	unōrŭm	unārŭm	unōrŭm
D.	unī	unī	unī	unīs	unīs	unīs
A.	unŭm	unăm	unŭm	unōs	unās	ună
V.	unĕ	ună	unŭm	unī	unae	ună
A.	unō	unā	unō;	unīs	unīs	unīs.

	Duo, *two.*			Tres, *three.*	
N.	duŏ	duae	duŏ	trēs, *m. and f.*	triă, *n.*
G.	duōrŭm	duārŭm	duōrŭm[2]	triŭm	triŭm

[1] Literally ten times a hundred thousand; the table might be carried up to any desired number by using the proper numeral adverb with *centēna millia: centiēs centēna millia*, 10,000,000; sometimes in such combinations *centēna millia* is understood and only the adverb is expressed, and sometimes *centum millia* is used.

[2] *Duōrum* and *duārum* are sometimes shortened to *duŭm.*

D.	duōbŭs	duābŭs	duōbŭs	trĭbŭs	trĭbŭs
A.	duōs, duŏ	duās	duŏ	trēs, trīs	triă
V.	duŏ	duae	duŏ	trēs	triă
A.	duōbŭs	duābŭs	duōbŭs.	trĭbŭs	trĭbŭs.

1. The plural of *unus* in the sense of *alone* may be used with any noun; *uni Ubii*, the Ubii alone; but in the strict numeral sense of *one*, it is used only with such nouns as, though plural in form, are singular in sense: *una castra*, one camp; *unae littĕrae*, one letter.

2. Like *duo* is declined *ambo*, both.

3. *Multi*, many, and *plūrĭmi*, very many, are indefinite numerals, and as such generally want the sing. But in the poets the sing. occurs in the sense of *many a: multa hostia*, many a victim.

176. The Cardinals from *quattuor* to *centum* are indeclinable.

177. Hundreds, *dŭcenti*, *trĕcenti*, etc., are declined like the plural of *bŏnus: ducenti, ae, a.*

178. *Mille* as an adjective is indeclinable: as a substantive it is used in the singular only in the nominative and accusative, but in the plural it is declined like the plural of *măre* (63); *millia*,[1] *millium*, *millĭbus*.

With the *substantive Mille*, the name of the objects enumerated is generally in the genitive: *mille hŏminum*, a thousand men (of men); but it is in the same case as *mille*, if a declined numeral intervenes: *tria millia trĕcenti mīlĭtes*, three thousand three hundred soldiers.

179. Ordinals are declined like *bŏnus* and distributives like the *plural* of *bonus*, but the latter often have *ŭm* for *ōrum* in the genitive; *bīnūm* for *binōrum*.

180. Numeral Symbols.

ARABIC.	ROMAN.	ARABIC.	ROMAN.	ARABIC.	ROMAN.
1.	I.	9.	IX.	17.	XVII.
2.	II.	10.	X.	18.	XVIII.
3.	III.	11.	XI.	19.	XIX.
4.	IV.	12.	XII.	20.	XX.
5.	V.	13.	XIII.	21.	XXI.
6.	VI.	14.	XIV.	22.	XXII.
7.	VII.	15.	XV.	30.	XXX.
8.	VIII.	16.	XVI.	40.	XL.

[1] This according to Corssen is the proper form, though the word is often written with one *l: milia.*

ARABIC.	ROMAN.	ARABIC.	ROMAN.	ARABIC.	ROMAN.
50.	L.	200.	CC.	900.	DCCCC.
60.	LX.	300.	CCC.	1,000.	CIↃ, *or* M.
70.	LXX.	400.	CCCC.	2,000.	CIↃCIↃ, *or* MM.
80.	LXXX.	500.	IↃ, *or* D.	10,000.	CCIↃↃ.
90.	XC.	600.	DC.	100,000.	CCCIↃↃↃ.
100.	C.	700.	DCC.	1,000,000.	CCCCIↃↃↃↃ.
101.	CI.	800.	DCCC.		

1. Latin Numeral Symbols are combinations of: I = 1; V = 5; X = 10; L = 50; C = 100; IↃ *or* D = 500; CIↃ *or* M = 1,000.[1]

2. In the Combination of these symbols, except IↃ, observe

1) That the repetition of a symbol doubles the value: II = 2; XX = 20; CC = 200.

2) That any symbol standing before one of greater value, subtracts its own value, but that after one of greater value, it adds its own value: V = 5; IV = 4 (5 − 1); VI = 6 (5 + 1).

3. In the Combination of IↃ observe

1) That each Ↄ (inverted C) after IↃ increases the value tenfold: IↃ = 500; IↃↃ = 500 × 10 = 5,000; IↃↃↃ = 5,000 × 10 = 50,000.

2) That these numbers are doubled by placing C the same number of times before I as Ↄ stands after it: IↃ = 500; CIↃ = 500 × 2 = 1,000; IↃↃ = 5,000; CCIↃↃ = 5,000 × 2 = 10,000.

3) That smaller symbols standing after these add their value: IↃ = 500; IↃC = 600; IↃCC = 700.

Numeral Adverbs.

181. To numerals belong also numeral abverbs. For convenience of reference we add the following table:

1. sĕmĕl, *once*	11. undĕcies	17. septiesdĕcies
2. bĭs, *twice*	12. duŏdĕcies	18. { duŏdēvīcies / octiesdĕcies
3. tĕr, *three times*	13. { terdĕcies / trĕdecies	19. { undēvīcies / nŏviesdĕcies
4. quătĕr	14. { quăterdĕcies / quattuordecies	20. vīcies
5. quinquiēs	15. { quinquiesdĕcies / quindecies	21. sĕmel et vicies
6. sexiēs	16. { sexiesdĕcies / sēdecies	22. bis et vicies
7. septies		30. trīcies
8. octies		40. quădrāgies
9. nŏvies		
10. dĕcies		

[1] Thousands are sometimes denoted by a line over the symbol: $\overline{II}$ = 2,000; $\overline{V}$ = 5,000.

50. quinquāgies	200. dŭcenties	900. nōningenties[1]
60. sexāgiēs	300. trĕcenties	1,000. millies[2]
70. septuāgies	400. quădringenties	2,000. bis millies
80. octōgies	500. quingenties	10,000. decies millies
90. nōnāgies	600. sexcenties	100,000. centies millies
100. centies	700. septingenties	1,000,000. millies millies.
101. centies semel	800. octingenties	

1. In Compounds of units and tens, the unit with *et* generally precedes, as in the table: *bis et vicies;* the tens, however, with or without *et* sometimes precede: *vicies et bis* or *vicies bis*, but not *bis vicies.*

2. Another Class of numeral adverbs in *ŭm* or *ō* is formed from the ordinals: *prīmum*, *prīmo*, for the first time, in the first place; *tertium*, *tertio*, for the third time.

CHAPTER III.

PRONOUNS.

182. The Pronoun is the part of speech which supplies the place of nouns: *ĕgŏ*, I; *tū*, thou.

183. Pronouns are divided into six classes:

1. Personal Pronouns: *tū*, thou.
2. Possessive Pronouns: *meus*, my.
3. Demonstrative Pronouns: *hĭc*, this.
4. Relative Pronouns: *quī*, who.
5. Interrogative Pronouns: *quĭs*, who?
6. Indefinite Pronouns: *ălĭquĭs*, some one.

I. Personal Pronouns.

184. Personal Pronouns, so called because they designate the person of the noun which they represent, are:

---

[1] Also written *nongenties.*
[2] *Millies* is often used indefinitely like the English *a thousand times.*

	Ego, *I.*	Tu, *thou.*	Sui, *of himself*, etc.[1]
		SINGULAR.	
N.	ĕgŏ	tū	
G.	meī	tuī	suī
D.	mihĭ	tĭbĭ	sĭbĭ
A.	mē	tē	sē
V.		tū	
A.	mē;	tē;	sē;
		PLURAL.	
N.	nōs	vōs	
G.	nostrŭm / nostrī	vestrŭm / vestrī	suī
D.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sĭbĭ
A.	nōs	vōs	sē
V.		vōs	
A.	nōbīs.	vōbīs.	sē.

1. Stems.—The stems in the Sing.[2] are *me*, *te*, *se*; in the Plur. *no*, *vo*, *se*.

2. The Case-Endings of Pronouns differ considerably from those of Nouns.

3. Genitive.—*Mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostri*, and *vestri*, are in form strictly Possessive Pronouns and are in the Gen. Sing., but by use they have become Personal. *Nostri* and *vestri* have also become Plural. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* for *nostrōrum* and *vestrōrum* are also Possessives. See *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, etc., 185.

4. Substantive Pronouns.—Personal Pronouns are also called *Substantive* pronouns, because they are always used as substantives.

5. Reflexive Pronoun.—*Sui*, from its reflexive signification, *of himself*, etc., is often called the *Reflexive* pronoun.

6. Emphatic Forms in *met* occur, except in the Gen. Plur.: *egŏmĕt*, I myself; *tēmet*, etc. But the Nom. *tu* has *tūtĕ* and *tutēmet*, for tūmet.

7. Reduplicated Forms:—*Sēsē*, *tētē*, *mēmē*, for se, te, me.

8. Ancient and Rare Forms:—*Mis* for mei; *tis* for tui; *mī* for mihi; *mēd*, and *meptĕ* for me; *tēd* for te; *sēd* for se.

9. Cum, when used with the *ablative* of a Personal Pronoun, is appended to it: *mēcŭm*, *tēcŭm*.

II. Possessive Pronouns.

185. From *Personal* pronouns are formed the *Possessives:*

---

[1] *Of himself, herself, itself.* The Nom. is not used.

[2] Except in the Nom. *Tu* is related to *te*, but *ego* is an entirely independent form.

meŭs, ă, ŭm, *my;* nostĕr, tră, trŭm, *our;*
tuus, a, um, *thy, your;* vester, tra, trum, *your;*
suus, a, um, *his, her, its;* suus, a, ŭm, *their.*

1. Possessives are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions; but *meus* has in the Voc. Sing. Masc. generally *mi*, sometimes *meus.*

2. Emphatic forms in *ptĕ* and *mĕt* occur: *suapte*, *suāmet.*

3. Other possessives are: (1) *cujus, a, um,*[1] whose, and *cujus, a, um,*[2] whose? declined like *bonus*, and (2) the Patrials, *nostrās*, G. *ātis*, of our country, *vestrās*, G. *ātis*, of your country, and *cujās*,[1] G. *ātis*, of whose country, declined as adjectives of Decl. III.

III. Demonstrative Pronouns.

186. Demonstrative Pronouns, so called because they specify the objects to which they refer, are

Hĭc, istĕ, illĕ, ĭs, ipsĕ, īdem.

They are declined as follows:

I. Hic, *this.*

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	hĭc	haec	hŏc	hī	hae	haec
G.	hujŭs	hujŭs	hujŭs	hōrŭm	hārŭm	hōrŭm
D.	huīc	huīc	huīc	hīs	hīs	hīs
A.	hunc	hanc	hŏc[3]	hōs	hās	haec
A.	hōc	hāc	hōc;	hīs	hīs	hīs.

II. Istĕ, *that, that of yours.* See 450.

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	istĕ	istă	istŭd	istī	istae	istă
G.	istīŭs	istīŭs	istīŭs	istōrŭm	istārŭm	istōrŭm
D.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
A.	istŭm	istăm	istŭd[3]	istōs	istās	istă
A.	istō	istā	istō;	istīs	istīs	istīs.

III. Illĕ, *he* or *that*, is declined like *istĕ.*

[1] From the relative *qui, cujus.* See 187.

[2] From the interrogative *quis, cujus.* See 188.

[3] The Vocative is wanting in Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns.

IV. Is, *he, this, that.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	ĭs	eă	ĭd	eī, iī	eae	eă
G.	ejŭs	ejŭs	ejŭs	eōrŭm	eārŭm	eōrŭm
D.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
A.	eŭm	eăm	ĭd[1]	eōs	eās	eă
A.	eō	eā	eō;	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs.

V. Ipsĕ, *self, he.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	ipsĕ	ipsă	ipsŭm	ipsī	ipsae	ipsă
G.	ipsīŭs	ipsīŭs	ipsīŭs	ipsōrŭm	ipsārŭm	ipsōrŭm
D.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
A.	ipsŭm	ipsăm	ipsŭm	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsă
A.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō;	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs.

VI. Idem, *the same.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	īdĕm	eădĕm	ĭdĕm	eīdĕm[2] iīdĕm	eaedĕm	eădĕm
G.	ejusdĕm	ejusdĕm	ejusdĕm	eōrundĕm	eārundĕm	eōrundĕm
D.	eīdĕm	eīdĕm	eīdĕm	eisdĕm iisdĕm	eisdĕm iisdĕm	eisdĕm[2] iisdĕm
A.	eundĕm	eandĕm	ĭdĕm	eosdĕm	easdĕm	eădĕm
A.	eōdĕm	eādĕm	eōdĕm;	eisdĕm iisdĕm	eisdĕm iisdĕm	eisdĕm[2] iisdĕm.

1. The STEMS are as follows:

1) Of HIC—*ho, ha.*[3]

2) Of ISTE and ILLE, for *istus* and *illus*—*isto, ista,* and *illo, illa.*

3) Of IS—*i, eo, ea.*

4) Of IPSE, for *ipsus*—*ipso, ipsa.*

5) IDEM, compounded of *is* and *dem,* is declined like *is,* but shortens *isdem* to *īdem* and *iddem* to *ĭdem,* and changes *m* to *n* before the ending *dem.*

---

[1] The Vocative is wanting in Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns.

[2] *Eīdem* and *eisdem* are the approved forms, but *iīdem* and *iisdem* are retained in many editions. *Iīdem* and *iisdem* are in poetry dissyllables, and are often written *īdem* and *isdem.*

[3] By the addition of *i* in certain cases, *ho* and *ha* become *hi* and *hae,* as in *hi-c* and *hae-c.*

2. Hic, for *hi-ce*, is compounded with the demonstrative particle **cĕ**, meaning *here*. The forms in **c** have dropped **e**, while the other forms have dropped the particle entirely. But **ce** is often retained for emphasis; *hīce*, *hujusce*, *hosce*, *hōrunce* (*m* changed to *n*), *hōrunc* (*e* dropped). **Ce**, changed to **ci**, is generally retained before the interrogative **ne**: *hīcĭne*, *hoscĭne*.

3. Illic and Istic.—The particle **ce**, generally shortened to **c**, except after **s**, is sometimes appended to *ille* and *iste*: *illīc* for *ille*, *illaec* for *illa*, *illōc* or *illūc* for *illud*, *illīusce*, etc.

4. Ancient and Rare Forms:

1) Of Hic: *hisce* for hice, hi; *haec* for hae.

2) Of Iste and ille: forms in *ī*, *ae*, *ī* for *īŭs* and *ī* in the Gen. and Dat.: *illi* for illius, *istae* for istius or isti; also forms from *ollŭs* for *ille*: *ollī*, *olla*, *ollōs*, etc.

3) Of Is: *ĕī*,[1] *eae*, *ĕī*,[1] Dat. for *ĕī*; *ībŭs*, *eābŭs*, *ībŭs*, for *ĕīs*.

4) Of Ipse, compounded of *is* and *psĕ* (is-pse = ipse); the uncontracted forms: Acc. *eumpse*, *eampse*, Abl. *eopse*, *eapse*; with re: *re eapse*, *reapse* for re ipsa, in reality; also *ipsus*, *a*, *um*, etc., for ipse, a, um.

5) Syncopated forms, compounded of *eccĕ* or *ĕn*, lo, see, and some cases of demonstratives, especially the Acc. of *ille* and *is*; *eccŭm* for ecce eum; *eccōs* for ecce eos; *ellum* for ĕn illum; *ellam* for en illam.

5. Demonstrative Adjectives: *tālis*, *e*, such; *tantus*, *a*, *um*, so great; *tŏt*, so many; *tōtus*, *a*, *um*, so great. *Tot* is indeclinable; the rest regular.

For *tālis*, the Gen. of a demonstrative with *mŏdi* (Gen. of *modus*, measure, kind), is often used: *hujusmŏdi*, *ejusmŏdi*, of this kind, such.

IV. Relative Pronouns.

187. The Relative *qui*, who, so called because it relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent, is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	quī	quae	quŏd	quī	quae	quae
G.	cujŭs	cujŭs	cujŭs	quōrŭm	quārŭm	quōrŭm
D.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quībŭs	quībŭs	quībŭs
A.	quĕm	quăm	quŏd[2]	quōs	quās	quae
A.	quō	quā	quō;	quībŭs	quībŭs	quībŭs.

1. Stems.—The stem is *quo*, *qua*.[3]

[1] Sometimes *ei* as a diphthong.

[2] The Vocative is wanting. See 186, I. Foot-note.

[3] *Quo* becomes *co*, *cu* in *cujus* and *cui*. *Qui* and *quae* are formed from *quo* and *qua* like *hi* and *hae* in *hi-c* and *hae-c* from *ho* and *ha*.

2. Ancient and Rare Forms: *quojus* and *quoi* for cujus and cui; *qui* for quo, qua; *quīs* (queis) for quibus.

3. Cum, when used with the *ablative* of the relative, is generally appended to it: *quibuscum*.

4. Quicumque and Quisquis, *whoever*, are called from their signification *general relatives*. *Quīcumque* (quicunque) is declined like *quī*. *Quisquis* is rare except in the forms: *quisquis*, *quidquid* (quicquid), *quōquō*.

5. The parts of *Quīcumque* are sometimes separated by one or more words: *qua re cumque*.

6. Relative Adjectives: *quālis*, *e*, such as; *quantus*, *a*, *um*, so great; *quŏt*, as many as; *quŏtus*, *a*, *um*, of which number; and the double and compound forms: *quālisquālis*, *qualiscumquĕ*, etc.

For *Quālis* the genitive of the relative with *mŏdi* is often used: *cujusmŏdi*, of what kind, such as; *cujuscumquĕmŏdi*, *cuīcuīmŏdi* (for *cujuscujusmŏdi*), of whatever kind.

V. Interrogative Pronouns.

188. Interrogative Pronouns are used in asking questions. The most important are

Quĭs and *quī* with their compounds.

I. Quis, *who, which, what?*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	quĭs	quae	quĭd	quī	quae	quae
G.	cujŭs	cujŭs	cujŭs	quōrŭm	quārŭm	quōrŭm
D.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quĭbŭs	quĭbŭs	quĭbŭs
A.	quĕm	quăm	quĭd	quōs	quās	quae
A.	quō	quā	quō;	quĭbŭs	quĭbŭs	quĭbŭs.

II. Quī, *which, what?* is declined like the *relative quī.*

1. Quis is generally used substantively, and Qui, adjectively.

2. Stem.—From the stem, *quo*, *qua*, are formed,—(1) The relative *quī*, —(2) The interrogatives *quĭs* and *quī*,—(3) The indefinites *quĭs* and *quī*.

3. Quis and Quem are sometimes feminine. Qui, for *quo*, *qua*, occurs in the sense of *how?* The other ancient forms are the same as in the relative. See 187, 2.

4. Compounds of *quis* and *qui* are declined like the simple pronouns: *quisnam*, *quīnam*, *ecquis*, etc. But *ecquis* has sometimes *ecqua* for *ecquae*.

5. Interrogative Adjectives: *quālis*, *e*, what? *quantus*, *a*, *um*, how great? *quŏt*, how many? *quŏtus*, *a*, *um*, of what number? *ŭter*, *utra*, *utrum*, which (of two)? See 151.

VI. Indefinite Pronouns.

189. Indefinite Pronouns do not refer to any definite person or things. The most important are

Quĭs and *quī*, with their compounds.

190. *Quis*, any one, and *qui*, any one, any, are the same in form and declension as the interrogatives *quis* and *qui*. But

1. After *sī*, *nisī*, *nē*, and *nŭm*, the Fem. Sing. and Neut. Plur. have *quae* or *quă*: si quae, si quă.

191. From *quis* and *qui* are formed

I. *The Indefinites:*

ălĭquĭs,	alĭquă,	alĭquĭd	*or* alĭquŏd,	*some, some one.*
quispiăm,	quaepiam,	quidpiam[1]	*or* quodpiam,	*some, some one.*
quĭdăm,	quaedam,	quiddam	*or* quoddam,	*certain, certain one.*
quisquăm,	quaequam,	quidquam[1]		*any one.*

II. *The General Indefinites:*

quisquĕ,	quaeque,	quidque[1]	*or* quodque,	*every, every one.*
quīvīs,	quaevis,	quidvis	*or* quodvis,	*any one you please.*
quīlĭbĕt	quaelĭbet,	quidlĭbet	*or* quodlĭbet,	*any one you please.*

1. These compounds are generally declined like the simple *quis* and *qui*, but have in the Neut. Sing. both *quod* and *quid*, the former used *adjectively*, the latter *substantively*.

2. *Alĭquis* has *alĭqua* instead of *aliquae* in the Fem. Sing. and Neut. Plur. *Alĭquī* for *alĭquis* occurs.

3. *Quĭdam* may change *m* to *n* before *d*: *quendam* for *quemdam*.

4. *Quisquam* generally wants the Fem. and the Plur.

5. *Unus* prefixed to *quisque* does not affect its declension: *ūnusquisque*, *unaquaeque*, etc.

CHAPTER IV.

VERBS.

192. Verbs in Latin, as in English, express existence, condition, or action: *est*, he is; *dormĭt*, he is sleeping; *lĕgĭt*, he reads.

[1] Sometimes written respectively, *quippiam*, *quicquam*, *quicque*.

193. Verbs comprise two principal classes:

I. TRANSITIVE VERBS,—which admit a direct object of their action: *servŭm verbĕrăt*, he beats the slave.[1]

II. INTRANSITIVE VERBS,—which do not admit such an object: *puĕr currĭt*, the boy runs.

194. Verbs have *Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, and Person.*

I. VOICES.

195. There are two Voices:

I. THE ACTIVE VOICE,[2]—which represents the subject as acting or existing: *pătĕr fīliŭm ămăt*, the father loves his son; *est*, he is.

II. THE PASSIVE VOICE,—which represents the subject as acted upon by some other person or thing: *filiŭs ā pătrĕ ămātŭr*, the son is loved by his father.

1. INTRANSITIVE VERBS generally have only the active voice, but are sometimes used impersonally in the passive. See 301, 1.

2. DEPONENT VERBS[3] are Passive in form, but not in sense: *lŏquŏr*, to speak. But see 225.

II. MOODS.

196. Moods[4] are either Definite or Indefinite:

I. The DEFINITE or FINITE MOODS make up the Finite Verb; they are:

1. THE INDICATIVE MOOD,—which either asserts something as a *fact* or inquires after the fact; *lĕgĭt*, he is reading; *lĕgitnĕ*, is he reading?

2. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD,—which expresses not an actual fact, but a *possibility* or *conception*, often rendered by *may, can*, etc.: *lĕgăt*, he may read, let him read.

---

[1] Here *servum*, the slave, is the direct object of the action denoted by the verb *verbĕrat*, beats: *beats* (what?) *the slave.*

[2] *Voice* shows whether the subject *acts* (Active Voice), or is *acted upon* (Passive Voice).

[3] So called from *dēpōno*, to lay aside, as they dispense, in general, with the active form and the passive meaning.

[4] *Mood*, or *Mode*, means *manner*, and relates to the manner in which the meaning of the verb is expressed, as will be seen by observing the force of the several Moods.

But the Subjunctive may be variously translated, as we shall see in the Syntax.

3. The IMPERATIVE MOOD,—which expresses a *command* or an *entreaty*: *lĕgĕ*, read thou.

II. The INDEFINITE MOODS express the meaning of the verb in the form of nouns or adjectives; they are:

1. THE INFINITIVE,—which, like the English Infinitive, gives the simple meaning of the verb without any necessary reference to person or number: *lĕgĕrĕ*, to read.

2. The GERUND,—which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the second declension, used only in the *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *ablative singular*. It corresponds to the English participial noun in ING: *ămandī*, of loving; *amandi causā*, for the sake of loving.

3. The SUPINE,—which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the fourth declension, used only in the *accusative* and *ablative singular*: *ămātŭm*, to love, for loving; *ămātū*, to be loved, in loving.

4. The PARTICIPLE,—which, like the English participle, gives the meaning of the verb in the form of an adjective.

A Latin verb may have four participles: two in the Active, the Present and the Future—*ămans*, loving; *ămātūrŭs*, about to love;—and two in the Passive, the Perfect—*ămātŭs*, loved, and the Gerundive[1]—*ămandŭs*, deserving to be loved.

III. TENSES.

197. There are six tenses:

I. THREE TENSES FOR INCOMPLETE ACTION:

1. Present: *ămŏ*, I love.
2. Imperfect: *ămābăm*, I was loving.
3. Future: *ămābŏ*, I shall love.

III. THREE TENSES FOR COMPLETED ACTION:

1. Perfect: *ămāvī*, I have loved, I loved.
2. Pluperfect: *ămāvĕrăm*, I had loved.
3. Future Perfect: *ămāvĕrŏ*, I shall have loved.

---

[1] Also called the *Future Passive Participle*.

198. REMARKS ON TENSES.

1. PRESENT PERFECT and HISTORICAL PERFECT.—The Latin Perfect sometimes corresponds to our Perfect with *have* (*have loved*), and is called the *Present Perfect* or *Perfect Definite;* and sometimes to our Imperfect or Past (*loved*), and is called the *Historical Perfect* or *Perfect Indefinite.*

2. PRINCIPAL and HISTORICAL.—Tenses are also distinguished as

1) *Principal:*—Present, Present Perfect, Future, and Future Perfect.

2) *Historical:*—Imperfect, Historical Perfect, and Pluperfect.

3. TENSES WANTING.—The Subjunctive wants the Future and Future Perfect; the Imperative has only the Present and Future; the Infinitive, only the Present, Perfect, and Future.

199. NUMBERS AND PERSONS.—There are two numbers, SINGULAR and PLURAL,[1] and three persons, FIRST, SECOND, and THIRD.[1]

CONJUGATION.

200. Regular verbs are inflected, or conjugated, in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations, distinguished from each other by the

INFINITIVE ENDINGS.

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
āre,	**ēre,**	**ĕre,**	**īre.**

201. STEM AND PRINCIPAL PARTS.—The Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Supine are called from their importance the *Principal Parts* of the verb. They are all formed, by means of certain endings, from one common base, called the *Stem.*[2]

202. The ENTIRE CONJUGATION of any regular verb may be readily formed from the Principal Parts by means of the proper endings.[3]

203. SUM, *I am*, is used as an auxiliary in the passive voice of regular verbs. Accordingly its conjugation, though quite irregular, must be given at the outset.

---

[1] As in Nouns. See 44.

[2] For treatment of stems, see 249–257.

[3] In the Paradigms of regular verbs, the endings, both those which distinguish the Principal Parts and those which distinguish the forms derived from those parts, are separately indicated, and should be carefully noticed.

204. Sŭm, *I am.*—Stems, *ĕs*, *fu.*[1]

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
sŭm,	essĕ,	fuī,	—

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

I am.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
sŭm,[2]	*I am,*	sŭmŭs,	*we are,*
ĕs,	*thou art,*[3]	estĭs,	*you are,*
est,	*he is;*	sunt,	*they are.*

Imperfect.

I was.

ĕrăm,	*I was,*	ĕrāmŭs,	*we were,*
erās,	*thou wast,*	erātĭs,	*you were,*
erăt,	*he was;*	erant,	*they were.*

Future.

I shall or *will be.*

ĕrŏ,	*I shall be,*	ĕrĭmŭs,	*we shall be,*
erĭs,	*thou wilt be,*	erĭtĭs,	*you will be,*
erĭt,	*he will be;*	erunt,	*they will be.*

Perfect.

I have been, was.

fuī,	*I have been,*	fuĭmŭs,	*we have been,*
fuistī,	*thou hast been,*	fuistĭs,	*you have been,*
fuĭt,	*he has been;*	fuērunt, fuērĕ,	*they have been.*

Pluperfect.

I had been.

fuĕrăm,	*I had been,*	fuĕrāmŭs,	*we had been,*
fuĕrās,	*thou hadst been,*	fuĕrātĭs,	*you had been,*
fuĕrăt,	*he had been;*	fuĕrant,	*they had been.*

Future Perfect.

I shall or *will have been.*

fuĕrŏ,	*I shall have been,*	fuĕrĭmŭs,	*we shall have been,*
fuĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have been,*	fuĕrĭtĭs,	*you will have been,*
fuĕrĭt,	*he will have been;*	fuĕrint,	*they will have been.*

---

[1] *Sum* has two Verb-Stems, while regular verbs have only one.

[2] *Sum* is for *ĕsum*, *ĕram* for *ĕsam*. Whenever *s* of the stem *ĕs* comes between two vowels, *e* is dropped, as in *sum*, *sunt*, or *s* is changed to *r*, as in *ĕram*, *ĕro*. See 85.

[3] Or *you are; thou* is confined mostly to solemn discourse.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or *can be.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
sĭm,	*I may be,*[1]	sĭmŭs,	*we may be,*
sĭs,	*thou mayst be,*	sĭtĭs,	*you may be,*
sĭt,	*he may be ;*	sint,	*they may be.*

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should be.*

essĕm,	*I might be,*	essēmŭs,	*we might be,*
essēs,	*thou mightst be,*	essētĭs,	*you might be,*
essĕt,	*he might be ;*	essent,	*they might be.*

PERFECT.

I may or *can have been.*

fuĕrĭm,	*I may have been,*	fuĕrĭmŭs,	*we may have been,*
fuĕrĭs,	*thou mayst have been,*	fuĕrĭtĭs,	*you may have been,*
fuĕrĭt,	*he may have been ;*	fuĕrint,	*they may have been.*

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should have been.*

fuissĕm,	*I might have been,*	fuissēmŭs,	*we might have been,*
fuissēs,	*thou mightst have been,*	fuissētĭs,	*you might have been,*
fuissĕt,	*he might have been ;*	fuissent,	*they might have been.*

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. ĕs,	*be thou,*	estĕ,	*be ye.*
FUT. estŏ,	*thou shalt be,*[2]	estōtĕ,	*ye shall be,*
estŏ,	*he shall be ;*[2]	suntŏ,	*they shall be.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. essĕ, *to be.*
PERF. fuissĕ, *to have been.*
FUT. fŭtūrŭs essĕ,[3] *to be about to be.*

PARTICIPLE.

FUT. fŭtūrŭs,[3] *about to be.*

1. In the Paradigm all the forms beginning with *e* or *s* are from the stem *es ;* all others from the stem *fu.*

2. RARE FORMS:—*fŏrĕm, fŏrēs, fŏrĕt, fŏrent, fŏrĕ,* for *essem, esses, esset, essent, futūrus esse ; siĕm siēs, siĕt, sient,* or *fuăm, fuās, fuăt, fuant,* for *sim, sis, sit, sint.*

---

[1] On the translation of the Subjunctive, see 196, I. 2.

[2] The Fut. may also be rendered like the Pres., or with *let : be thou ; let him be.*

[3] *Futūrus* is declined like *bonus.* So in the Infinitive : *futūrus, a, um esse.*

FIRST CONJUGATION: A VERBS.

205. ACTIVE VOICE.

Amŏ, *I love*—Stem, *ăma*.[1]

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
ăm**ō**,	ăm**ārĕ**,	ăm**āvī**,	ăm**ātŭm**.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

I love, am loving, do love.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
ăm**ō**,	*I love,*	ăm**āmŭs**,	*we love,*
ăm**ās**,	*thou lovest,*	ăm**ātĭs**,	*you love,*
ăm**ăt**,	*he loves;*	ăm**ant**,	*they love.*

Imperfect.

I loved, was loving, did love.

ăm**ābăm**,	*I was loving,*	ăm**ābāmŭs**,	*we were loving,*
ăm**ābās**,	*thou wast loving,*	ăm**ābātĭs**,	*you were loving,*
ăm**ābăt**,	*he was loving;*	ăm**ābant**,	*they were loving.*

Future.

I shall or *will love.*

ăm**ābō**,	*I shall love,*	ăm**ābĭmŭs**,	*we shall love,*
ăm**ābĭs**,	*thou wilt love,*	ăm**ābĭtĭs**,	*you will love,*
ăm**ābĭt**,	*he will love;*	ăm**ābunt**,	*they will love.*

Perfect.

I loved, have loved.

ămāv**ī**,	*I have loved,*	ămāv**ĭmŭs**,	*we have loved,*
ămāv**istī**,	*thou hast loved,*	ămāv**istĭs**,	*you have loved,*
ămāv**ĭt**,	*he has loved;*	ămāv**ērunt**, **ērĕ**,	*they have loved.*

Pluperfect.

I had loved.

ămāv**ĕrăm**,	*I had loved,*	ămāv**ĕrāmŭs**,	*we had loved,*
ămāv**ĕrās**,	*thou hadst loved,*	ămāv**ĕrātĭs**,	*you had loved,*
ămāv**ĕrăt**,	*he had loved;*	ămāv**ĕrant**,	*they had loved.*

Future Perfect.

I shall, or *will have loved.*

ămāv**ĕrō**,	*I shall have loved,*	ămāv**ĕrĭmŭs**,	*we shall have loved,*
ămāv**ĕrĭs**,	*thou wilt have loved,*	ămāv**ĕrĭtĭs**,	*you will have loved,*
ămāv**ĕrĭt**,	*he will have loved;*	ămāv**ĕrint**,	*they will have loved.*

---

[1] The final *a* of the stem disappears in *amo* for *ama-o*, *amem*, *ames*, etc., for *ama-im*, *ama-is*, etc. Also in the Pass. in *amor* for *ama-or*, *amer*, etc., for *ama-ir*, etc. See 82, II. 1, 3); 82, II. 2.

Subjunctive.

Present.

I may or *can love.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
ăm**ĕm**,	*I may love,*	ăm**ēmŭs**,	*we may love,*
ăm**ēs**,	*thou mayst love,*	ăm**ētĭs**,	*you may love,*
ăm**ĕt**,	*he may love ;*	ăm**ent**,	*they may love.*

Imperfect.

I might, could, would, or *should love.*

ăm**ārĕm**,	*I might love,*	ăm**ārēmŭs**,	*we might love,*
ăm**ārēs**,	*thou mightst love,*	ăm**ārētĭs**,	*you might love,*
ăm**ārĕt**,	*he might love ;*	ăm**ārent**,	*they might love.*

Perfect.

I may or *can have loved.*

ămāv**ĕrĭm**,	*I may have loved,*	ămāv**ĕrĭmŭs**,	*we may have loved,*
ămāv**ĕrĭs**,	*thou mayst have loved,*	ămāv**ĕrĭtĭs**,	*you may have loved,*
ămāv**ĕrĭt**,	*he may have loved ;*	ămāv**ĕrint**,	*they may have loved.*

Pluperfect.

I might, could, would, or *should have loved.*

ămāv**issĕm**,	*I might have loved,*	ămāv**issēmŭs**,	*we might have loved,*
ămāv**issēs**,	*thou mightst have loved,*	ămāv**issētĭs**,	*you might have loved,*
ămāv**issĕt**,	*he might have loved ;*	ămāv**issent**,	*they might have loved.*

Imperative.

Pres.	ăm**ā**,	*love thou ;*	ăm**ātĕ**,	*love ye.*
Fut.	ăm**ātō**,	*thou shalt love,*	ăm**ātōtĕ**,	*ye shall love,*
	ăm**ātō**,	*he shall love ;*	ăm**antō**,	*they shall love.*

Infinitive.

Pres. ăm**ārĕ**, *to love.*

Perf. ămāv**issĕ**, *to have loved.*

Fut. ămāt**ūrŭs**[2] **essĕ**, *to be about to love.*

Participle.

Pres. ăm**ans**,[1] *loving.*

Fut. ămāt**ūrŭs**,[2] *about to love.*

Gerund.

Gen.	ăm**andī**,	*of loving,*
Dat.	ăm**andō**,	*for loving,*
Acc.	ăm**andŭm**,	*loving,*
Abl.	ăm**andō**,	*by loving.*

Supine.

Acc.	ămāt**ŭm**,	*to love,*
Abl.	ămāt**ū**,	*to love, be loved.*

[1] For declension, see 157.

[2] Decline like *bonus*, 148.

FIRST CONJUGATION: A VERBS.

206. PASSIVE VOICE.

Amŏr, *I am loved.*—Stem, *ăma.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
ămŏr,	ămārī,	ămātŭs sŭm.

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT TENSE.
I am loved.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
ămŏr	ămāmŭr
ămārĭs, *or* rĕ	ămāmĭnī
ămātŭr;	ămantŭr.

IMPERFECT.
I was loved.

ămābăr	ămābāmŭr
ămābārĭs, *or* rĕ	ămābāmĭnī
ămābātŭr;	ămābantŭr.

FUTURE.
I shall or *will be loved.*

ămābŏr	ămābĭmŭr
ămābĕrĭs, *or* rĕ	ămābĭmĭnī
ămābĭtŭr;	ămābuntŭr.

PERFECT.
I have been or *was loved.*

ămātŭs sŭm[1]	ămātī sŭmŭs
ămātŭs ĕs	ămātī estĭs
ămātŭs est;	ămātī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.
I had been loved.

ămātŭs ĕrăm[1]	ămātī ĕrāmŭs
ămātŭs ĕrās	ămātī ĕrātĭs
ămātŭs ĕrăt;	ămātī ĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT.
I shall or *will have been loved.*

ămātŭs ĕrŏ[1]	ămātī ĕrĭmŭs
ămātŭs ĕrĭs	ămātī ĕrĭtĭs
ămātŭs ĕrĭt;	ămātī ĕrunt.

---

[1] *Fui*, *fuisti*, etc., are sometimes used for *sum*, *es*, etc.: *amātus fui* for *amātus sum*. So *fuĕram*, *fuĕras*, etc., for *ĕram*, etc.: also *fuĕro*, etc., for *ĕro*, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or *can be loved.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
ămĕr	ămēmŭr
ămēris, *or* rĕ	ămēminī
ămētŭr;	ămentŭr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should be loved.*

ămārĕr	ămārēmŭr
ămārēris *or* rĕ	ămārēminī
ămārētŭr;	ămārentŭr.

PERFECT.

I may have been loved.

ămātŭs sim [1]	ămātī sīmŭs
ămātŭs sīs	ămātī sītis
ămātŭs sit;	ămātī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should have been loved.*

ămātŭs essĕm [1]	ămātī essēmŭs
ămātŭs essēs	ămātī essētis
ămātŭs essĕt;	ămātī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	ămārĕ, *be thou loved;*	ămāminī, *be ye loved.*
FUT.	ămātŏr, *thou shalt be loved,*	
	ămātŏr, *he shall be loved;*	ămantŏr, *they shall be loved.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. ămārī, *to be loved.*

PERF. ămātŭs essĕ,[1] *to have been loved.*

FUT. ămātŭm īrī, *to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLE.

PERF. ămātŭs, *having been loved.*

GER.[2] ămandŭs, *to be loved, deserving to be loved.*

---

[1] *Fuĕrim, fuĕris,* etc., are sometimes used for *sim, sis,* etc.—So also *fuissem, fuisses,* etc., for *essem, esses,* etc.: rarely *fuisse* for *esse.*

[2] GER.=Gerundive. See 196, 4.

SECOND CONJUGATION: E VERBS.

207. ACTIVE VOICE.

Mŏneō, *I advise.*—Stem, *mŏne.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
mŏn**eō**,	mŏn**ērĕ**,	mŏn**uī**,	mŏn**ĭtŭm**.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

I advise.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mŏn**eō**	mŏn**ēmŭs**
mŏn**ēs**	mŏn**ētĭs**
mŏn**ĕt**;	mŏn**ent**.

Imperfect.

I was advising.

mŏn**ēbăm**	mŏn**ēbāmŭs**
mŏn**ēbās**	mŏn**ēbātĭs**
mŏn**ēbăt**;	mŏn**ēbant**.

Future.

I shall or *will advise.*

mŏn**ēbō**	mŏn**ēbĭmŭs**
mŏn**ēbĭs**	mŏn**ēbĭtĭs**
mŏn**ēbĭt**;	mŏn**ēbunt**.

Perfect.

I advised or *have advised.*

mŏnu**ī**	mŏnu**ĭmŭs**
mŏnu**istī**	mŏnu**istĭs**
mŏnu**ĭt**;	mŏnu**ērunt**, *or* **ērĕ**.

Pluperfect.

I had advised.

mŏnu**ĕrăm**	mŏnu**ĕrāmŭs**
mŏnu**ĕrās**	mŏnu**ĕrātĭs**
mŏnu**ĕrăt**;	mŏnu**ĕrant**.

Future Perfect.

I shall or *will have advised.*

mŏnu**ĕrō**	mŏnu**ĕrĭmŭs**
mŏnu**ĕrĭs**	mŏnu**ĕrĭtĭs**
mŏnu**ĕrĭt**;	mŏnu**ĕrint**.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or *can advise.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mŏne**ăm**	mŏne**āmŭs**
mŏne**ās**	mŏne**ātĭs**
mŏne**ăt**;	mŏne**ant**.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should advise.*

mŏn**ērĕm**	mŏn**ērēmŭs**
mŏn**ērēs**	mŏn**ērētĭs**
mŏn**ērĕt**;	mŏn**ērent**.

PERFECT.

I may have advised.

mŏnu**ĕrĭm**	mŏnu**ĕrĭmŭs**
mŏnu**ĕrĭs**	mŏnu**ĕrĭtĭs**
mŏnu**ĕrĭt**;	mŏnu**ĕrint**.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should have advised.*

mŏnu**issĕm**	mŏnu**issēmŭs**
mŏnu**issēs**	mŏnu**issētĭs**
mŏnu**issĕt**;	mŏnu**issent**.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	mŏn**ē**,	*advise thou;*	mŏn**ētĕ**,	*advise ye.*
FUT.	mŏn**ētŏ**,	*thou shalt advise,*	mŏn**ētōtĕ**,	*ye shall advise,*
	mŏn**ētŏ**,	*he shall advise;*	mŏn**entŏ**,	*they shall advise.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	mŏn**ērĕ**,	*to advise.*
PERF.	mŏnu**issĕ**,	*to have advised.*
FUT.	mŏnĭt**ūrŭs essĕ**,	*to be about to advise.*

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	mŏn**ens**,	*advising.*
FUT.	mŏnĭt**ūrŭs**,	*about to advise.*

GERUND.

Gen.	mŏn**endī**,	*of advising,*
Dat.	mŏn**endŏ**,	*for advising,*
Acc.	mŏn**endŭm**,	*advising,*
Abl.	mŏn**endŏ**,	*by advising.*

SUPINE.

Acc.	mŏnĭt**ŭm**,	*to advise,*
Abl.	mŏnĭt**ū**,	*to advise, be advised.*

SECOND CONJUGATION: E VERBS.

208. PASSIVE VOICE.

Mŏneŏr, *I am advised.*—Stem, *mŏne.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
mŏne**ŏr**,	mŏn**ērī**,	mŏn**ĭtŭs sŭm.**

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

I am advised.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mŏne**ŏr**	mŏn**ēmŭr**
mŏn**ērĭs**, *or* **rĕ**	mŏn**ēmĭnī**
mŏn**ētŭr**;	mŏne**ntŭr**.

Imperfect.

I was advised.

mŏn**ēbăr**	mŏn**ēbāmŭr**
mŏn**ēbārĭs**, *or* **rĕ**	mŏn**ēbāmĭnī**
mŏn**ēbātŭr**;	mŏn**ēbantŭr**.

Future.

I shall or *will be advised.*

mŏn**ēbŏr**	mŏn**ēbĭmŭr**
mŏn**ēbĕrĭs**, *or* **rĕ**	mŏn**ēbĭmĭnī**
mŏn**ēbĭtŭr**;	mŏn**ēbuntŭr**.

Perfect.

I have been or *was advised.*

mŏnĭt**ŭs sŭm** [1]	mŏnĭt**ī sŭmŭs**
mŏnĭt**ŭs ĕs**	mŏnĭt**ī estĭs**
mŏnĭt**ŭs est**;	mŏnĭt**ī sunt**.

Pluperfect.

I had been advised.

mŏnĭt**ŭs ĕrăm** [1]	mŏnĭt**ī ĕrāmŭs**
mŏnĭt**ŭs ĕrās**	mŏnĭt**ī ĕrātĭs**
mŏnĭt**ŭs ĕrăt**;	mŏnĭt**ī ĕrant**.

Future Perfect.

I shall or *will have been advised.*

mŏnĭt**ŭs ĕrŏ** [1]	mŏnĭt**ī ĕrĭmŭs**
mŏnĭt**ŭs ĕrĭs**	mŏnĭt**ī ĕrĭtĭs**
mŏnĭt**ŭs ĕrĭt**;	mŏnĭt**ī ĕrunt**.

---

[1] See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or *can be advised.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mŏne**ăr**	mŏne**āmŭr**
mŏne**āris**, *or* **rĕ**	mŏne**āmĭnī**
mŏne**ātŭr**;	mŏne**antŭr**.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should be advised.*

mŏn**ērĕr**	mŏn**ērēmŭr**
mŏn**ērēris**, *or* **rĕ**	mŏn**ērēmĭnī**
mŏn**ērētŭr**;	mŏn**ērentŭr**.

PERFECT.

I may have been advised.

mŏnĭt**ŭs sim**[1]	mŏnĭt**ī sīmŭs**
mŏnĭt**ŭs sīs**	mŏnĭt**ī sītĭs**
mŏnĭt**ŭs sĭt**;	mŏnĭt**ī sint**.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should have been advised.*

mŏnĭt**ŭs essĕm**[1]	mŏnĭt**ī essēmŭs**
mŏnĭt**ŭs essēs**	mŏnĭt**ī essētĭs**
mŏnĭt**ŭs essĕt**;	mŏnĭt**ī essent**.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	mŏn**ērĕ**, *be thou advised;*	mŏn**ēmĭnī**, *be ye advised.*
FUT.	mŏn**ētŏr**, *thou shalt be advised,*	
	mŏn**ētŏr**, *he shall be advised;*	mŏn**entŏr**, *they shall be advised.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. mŏn**ērī**, *to be advised.*

PERF. mŏnĭt**ŭs essĕ**,[1] *to have been advised.*

FUT. mŏnĭt**ŭm īrī**, *to be about to be advised.*

PARTICIPLE.

PERF. mŏnĭt**ŭs**, *advised.*

GER. mŏn**endŭs**, *to be advised, deserving to be advised.*

---

[1] See 206, foot-notes.

THIRD CONJUGATION: CONSONANT VERBS.

209. ACTIVE VOICE.

Rĕgō, *I rule.*—Stem, *rĕg.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
rĕg**ō**,	rĕg**ĕrĕ**,	rex**ī**,[1]	rec**tŭm**.[1]

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

I rule.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rĕg**ō**	rĕg**ĭmŭs**
rĕg**ĭs**	rĕg**ĭtĭs**
rĕg**ĭt**;	rĕg**unt**.

Imperfect.

I was ruling.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rĕg**ēbăm**	rĕg**ēbāmŭs**
rĕg**ēbās**	rĕg**ēbātĭs**
rĕg**ēbăt**;	rĕg**ēbant**.

Future.

I shall or *will rule.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rĕg**ăm**	rĕg**ēmŭs**
rĕg**ēs**	rĕg**ētĭs**
rĕg**ĕt**;	rĕg**ent**.

Perfect.

I ruled or *have ruled.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rex**ī**	rex**ĭmŭs**
rex**istī**	rex**istĭs**
rex**ĭt**;	rex**ērunt**, *or* **ērĕ**.

Pluperfect.

I had ruled.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rex**ĕrăm**	rex**ĕrāmŭs**
rex**ĕrās**	rex**ĕrātĭs**
rex**ĕrăt**;	rex**ĕrant**.

Future Perfect.

I shall or *will have ruled.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rex**ĕrō**	rex**ĕrĭmŭs**
rex**ĕrĭs**	rex**ĕrĭtĭs**
rex**ĕrĭt**;	rex**ĕrint**.

---

[1] See 218, III. 1; 258, I. 1; 258, II. 1.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or *can rule.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rĕgăm	rĕgāmŭs
rĕgās	rĕgātĭs
rĕgăt;	rĕgant.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should rule.*

rĕgĕrĕm	rĕgĕrēmŭs
rĕgĕrēs	rĕgĕrētĭs
rĕgĕrĕt;	rĕgĕrent.

PERFECT.

I may have ruled.

rexĕrĭm	rexĕrĭmŭs
rexĕrĭs	rexĕrĭtĭs
rexĕrĭt;	rexĕrint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should have ruled.*

rexissĕm	rexissēmŭs
rexissēs	rexissētĭs
rexissĕt;	rexissent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	rĕgĕ,	*rule thou;*	rĕgĭtĕ,	*rule ye.*
FUT.	rĕgĭtō,	*thou shalt rule,*	rĕgĭtōtĕ,	*ye shall rule,*
	rĕgĭtō,	*he shall rule;*	rĕguntō,	*they shall rule.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. rĕgĕrĕ, *to rule.*
PERF. rexissĕ, *to have ruled.*
FUT. rectūrŭs essĕ, *to be about to rule.*

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. rĕgens, *ruling.*
FUT. rectūrŭs, *about to rule.*

GERUND.

Gen. rĕgendī, *of ruling,*
Dat. rĕgendō, *for ruling,*
Acc. rĕgendŭm, *ruling,*
Abl. rĕgendō, *by ruling.*

SUPINE.

Acc. rectŭm, *to rule,*
Abl. rectū, *to rule, be ruled.*

THIRD CONJUGATION: CONSONANT VERBS.

210. PASSIVE VOICE.

Rĕgŏr, *I am ruled.*—STEM, *rĕg.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
rĕg**ŏr**,	rĕg**ī**,	rec**tŭs**[1] **sŭm.**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am ruled.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rĕg**ŏr**	rĕg**ĭmŭr**
rĕg**ĕrĭs**, *or* **rĕ**	rĕg**ĭmĭnī**
rĕg**ĭtŭr**;	rĕg**untŭr**.

IMPERFECT.

I was ruled.

rĕg**ēbăr**	rĕg**ēbāmŭr**
rĕg**ēbārĭs**, *or* **rĕ**	rĕg**ēbāmĭnī**
rĕg**ēbātŭr**;	rĕg**ēbantŭr**.

FUTURE.

I shall or *will be ruled.*

rĕg**ăr**	rĕg**ēmŭr**
rĕg**ērĭs**, *or* **rĕ**	rĕg**ēmĭnī**
rĕg**ētŭr**;	rĕg**entŭr**.

PERFECT.

I have been or *was ruled.*

rec**tŭs sŭm**[2]	rec**tī sŭmŭs**
rec**tŭs ĕs**	rec**tī estĭs**
rec**tŭs est**;	rec**tī sunt**.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been ruled.

rec**tŭs ĕrăm**[2]	rec**tī ĕrāmŭs**
rec**tŭs ĕrās**	rec**tī ĕrātĭs**
rec**tŭs ĕrăt**;	rec**tī ĕrant**.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or *will have been ruled.*

rec**tŭs ĕrŏ**[2]	rec**tī ĕrĭmŭs**
rec**tŭs ĕrĭs**	rec**tī ĕrĭtĭs**
rec**tŭs ĕrĭt**;	rec**tī ĕrunt**.

---

[1] See 209, foot-notes.

[2] See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or *can be ruled.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rĕgăr	rĕgāmŭr
rĕgāris, *or* rĕ	rĕgāmĭnī
rĕgātŭr;	rĕgantŭr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should be ruled.*

rĕgĕrĕr	rĕgĕrēmŭr
rĕgĕrēris, *or* rĕ	rĕgĕrēmĭnī
rĕgĕrētŭr;	rĕgĕrentŭr.

PERFECT.

I may have been ruled.

rectŭs sim[1]	rectī sīmŭs
rectŭs sīs	rectī sītis
rectŭs sit;	rectī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should have been ruled.*

rectŭs essĕm[1]	rectī essēmŭs
rectŭs essēs	rectī essētis
rectŭs essĕt;	rectī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	rĕgĕrĕ, *be thou ruled;*	rĕgĭmĭnī, *be ye ruled.*
FUT.	rĕgĭtŏr, *thou shalt be ruled,* rĕgĭtŏr, *he shall be ruled;*	rĕguntŏr, *they shall be ruled.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. rĕgī, *to be ruled.*

PERF. rectŭs essĕ,[1] *to have been ruled.*

FUT. rectŭm īrī, *to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLE.

PERF. rectŭs, *ruled.*

GER. rĕgendŭs, *to be ruled, deserving to be ruled.*

---

[1] See 206, foot-notes.

FOURTH CONJUGATION: I VERBS.

211. ACTIVE VOICE.

Audiō, *I hear.*—Stem, *audi.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
audi**ō**,	aud**īrĕ**,	aud**īvī**,	aud**ītŭm**.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I hear.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audi**ō**	aud**īmŭs**
aud**īs**	aud**ītĭs**
aud**ĭt**;	audi**unt**.

IMPERFECT.

I was hearing.

audi**ēbăm**	audi**ēbāmŭs**
audi**ēbās**	audi**ēbātĭs**
audi**ēbăt**;	audi**ēbant**.

FUTURE.

I shall or *will hear.*

audi**ăm**	audi**ēmŭs**
audi**ēs**	audi**ētĭs**
audi**ĕt**;	audi**ent**.

PERFECT.

I heard or *have heard.*

audīv**ī**	audīv**ĭmŭs**
audīv**istī**	audīv**istĭs**
audīv**ĭt**;	audīv**ērunt**, *or* **ērĕ**.

PLUPERFECT.

I had heard.

audīv**ĕrăm**	audīv**ĕrāmŭs**
audīv**ĕrās**	audīv**ĕrātĭs**
audīv**ĕrăt**;	audīv**ĕrant**.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or *will have heard.*

audīv**ĕrō**	audīv**ĕrĭmŭs**
audīv**ĕrĭs**	audīv**ĕrĭtĭs**
audīv**ĕrĭt**;	audīv**ĕrint**.

Subjunctive.

Present.

I may or *can hear.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audi**ăm**	audi**āmŭs**
audi**ās**	audi**ātĭs**
audi**ăt**;	audi**ant**.

Imperfect.

I might, could, would, or *should hear.*

aud**īrĕm**	aud**īrēmŭs**
aud**īrēs**	aud**īrētĭs**
aud**īrĕt**;	aud**īrent**.

Perfect.

I may have heard.

audīv**ĕrĭm**	audīv**ĕrīmŭs**
audīv**ĕrīs**	audīv**ĕrītĭs**
audīv**ĕrĭt**;	audīv**ĕrint**.

Pluperfect.

I might, could, would, or *should have heard.*

audīv**issĕm**	audīv**issēmŭs**
audīv**issēs**	audīv**issētĭs**
audīv**issĕt**;	audīv**issent**.

Imperative.

Pres.	aud**ī**,	*hear thou;*	aud**ītĕ**,	*hear ye.*
Fut.	aud**ītō**,	*thou shalt hear,*	aud**ītōtĕ**,	*ye shall hear,*
	aud**ītō**,	*he shall hear;*	audi**untō**,	*they shall hear.*

Infinitive.

Pres. aud**īrĕ**, *to hear.*
Perf. audīv**issĕ**, *to have heard.*
Fut. audīt**ūrŭs** **essĕ**, *to be about to hear.*

Participle.

Pres. audi**ens**, *hearing.*
Fut. audīt**ūrŭs**, *about to hear.*

Gerund.

Gen. audi**endī**, *of hearing.*
Dat. audi**endō**, *for hearing.*
Acc. audi**endŭm**, *hearing.*
Abl. audi**endō**, *by hearing.*

Supine.

Acc. audīt**ŭm**, *to hear.*
Abl. audīt**ū**, *to hear, be heard.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION: I VERBS.

212. PASSIVE VOICE.

Audiŏr, *I am heard.*—Stem, *audi.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
audi**ŏr**,	aud**īrī**,	aud**ītŭs sŭm**.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

I am heard.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audi**ŏr**	aud**īmŭr**
aud**īrĭs**, *or* **rĕ**	aud**īmĭnī**
aud**ītŭr**;	audi**untŭr**.

Imperfect.

I was heard.

audi**ēbăr**	audi**ēbāmŭr**
audi**ēbārĭs**, *or* **rĕ**	audi**ēbāmĭnī**
audi**ēbātŭr**;	audi**ēbantŭr**.

Future.

I shall or *will be heard.*

audi**ăr**	audi**ēmŭr**
audi**ērĭs**, *or* **rĕ**	audi**ēmĭnī**
audi**ētŭr**;	audi**entŭr**.

Perfect.

I have been heard.

audīt**ŭs sŭm**[1]	audīt**ī sŭmŭs**
audīt**ŭs ĕs**	audīt**ī estĭs**
audīt**ŭs est**;	audīt**ī sunt**.

Pluperfect.

I had been heard.

audīt**ŭs ĕrăm**[1]	audīt**ī ĕrāmŭs**
audīt**ŭs ĕrās**	audīt**ī ĕrātĭs**
audīt**ŭs ĕrăt**;	audīt**ī ĕrant**.

Future Perfect.

I shall or *will have been heard.*

audīt**ŭs ĕrŏ**[1]	audīt**ī ĕrĭmŭs**
audīt**ŭs ĕrĭs**	audīt**ī ĕrĭtĭs**
audīt**ŭs ĕrĭt**;	audīt**ī ĕrunt**.

[1] See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or *can be heard.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiăr	audiāmŭr
audiāris, *or* rĕ	audiāminī
audiātŭr;	audiantŭr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should be heard.*

audīrĕr	audīrēmŭr
audīrēris, *or* rĕ	audīrēminī
audīrētŭr;	audīrentŭr.

PERFECT.

I may have been heard.

audītŭs sim[1]	audītī sīmŭs
audītŭs sīs	audītī sītĭs
audītŭs sĭt;	audītī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should have been heard.*

audītŭs essĕm[1]	audītī essēmŭs
audītŭs essēs	audītī essētĭs
audītŭs essĕt;	audītī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	audīrĕ, *be thou heard;*	audīminī, *be ye heard.*
FUT.	audītŏr, *thou shalt be heard,*	
	audītŏr, *he shall be heard;*	audiuntŏr, *they shall be heard.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. audīrī, *to be heard.*
PERF. audītŭs essĕ,[1] *to have been heard.*
FUT. audītŭm īrī, *to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLE.

PERF. audītŭs, *heard.*
GER. audiendŭs, *to be heard, deserving to be heard.*

---

[1] See 206, foot-notes.

VERBAL INFLECTIONS.

213. PRINCIPAL PARTS.—The Principal Parts are formed in the four conjugations with the following endings, including final *a*, *e* or *i*, of the stem :[1]

I.	o,	āre,	āvi,	ātum.
II.	1. *In a few verbs:*			
	eo,	ēre,	ēvi,	ētum.
	2. *In most verbs:*			
	eo,	ēre,	ui,	ĭtum.
III.	1. *In consonant stems:*			
	o,	ĕre,	si,	tum.
	2. *In vowel stems:*			
	o,	ĕre,	i,	tum.
IV.	io,	īre,	īvi,	ītum.

EXAMPLES.

I.		Amo,	ămāre,	amāvi,	amātum,	*to love.*
II.	1.	Dēleo,	delēre,	delēvi,	delētum,	*to destroy.*
	2.	Mŏneo,	monēre,	monui,	monĭtum,	*to advise.*
III.	1.	Carpo,	carpĕre,	carpsi,	carptum,	*to pluck.*
	2.	Acuo,	ăcuĕre,	acui,	acūtum,	*to sharpen.*
IV.		Audio,	audīre,	audīvi,	audītum,	*to hear.*

214. COMPOUNDS.—Compounds of verbs with dissyllabic supines generally change the stem-vowel in forming the principal parts :

I. *When the Present of the compound has* **i** *for* **e** *of the simple verb:*

1. The Perfect and Supine generally resume the **e**:[2]

Rĕgo,	regĕre,	rexi,	rectum,	*to rule.*
Dī-rĭgo,	dirigĕre,	direxi,	directum,	*to direct.*

2. But sometimes only the Supine resumes the **e**:[2]

Tĕneo,	tenēre,	tenui,	tentum,	*to hold.*
Dē-tĭneo,	detinēre,	detinui,	detentum,	*to detain.*

II. *When the Present of the compound has* **i** *for* **a** *of the simple verb:*

1. The Perfect generally resumes the vowel of the simple perfect and the supine takes **e**,[2] sometimes **a**:

[1] We class *ēvi* and *ētum* with the regular formations, because they are the full and original forms from which the more common *ui* and *ĭtum* are derived: thus the full forms in *mŏneo* would be *monēvi*, *monētum*. By dropping *e* in *monēvi*, and by changing the consonant *v* into its corresponding vowel *u*, we have *monui*. So by weakening *ē* into *ĭ* in *monētum*, we have *monĭtum*.

[2] The favorite vowel before two consonants or a double consonant. See 28, 2.

Căpio,	capĕre,	cēpi,	captum,	*to take.*
Ac-cĭpio,	accipĕre,	accēpi,	acceptum,	*to accept.*

2. But sometimes the Perfect retains **i** and the Supine takes **e**:[1]

Răpio,	rapĕre,	rapui,	raptum,	*to seize.*
Dī-rĭpio,	diripĕre,	diripui,	direptum,	*to tear asunder.*

For *Reduplication in compounds*, see 255, I. 4; other peculiarities of compounds will be noticed under the separate conjugations.

215. ENTIRE CONJUGATION.—From an inspection of the paradigms, it will be seen, that all the forms of any regular verb, through all the moods and tenses of both voices, arrange themselves in three distinct groups or systems:

I. The PRESENT SYSTEM, with the Present Infinitive as its basis, comprises

1. The *Present, Imperfect,* and *Future Indicative*—Active and Passive.
2. The *Present* and *Imperfect Subjunctive*—Active and Passive.
3. The *Imperative*—Active and Passive.
4. The *Present Infinitive*—Active and Passive.
5. The *Present Active Participle.*
6. The *Gerund* and the *Gerundive.*

These parts are all formed from the *Present Stem*, found in the Present Infinitive by dropping the ending **rĕ** of the Active or **rī** of the Passive in Conj. I. II. and IV. and **ĕrĕ** of the Active or **ī** of the Passive in Conj. III.: *ămārĕ*, present stem AMA; *mŏnērĕ*, MONE; *rĕgĕrĕ*, REG; *audīrĕ*, AUDI.

II. The PERFECT SYSTEM, with the Perfect Indicative Active as its basis, comprises in the Active voice

1. The *Perfect, Pluperfect,* and *Future Perfect Indicative.*
2. The *Perfect* and *Pluperfect Subjunctive.*
3. The *Perfect Infinitive.*

These parts are all formed from the *Perfect Stem*, found in the Perfect Indicative Active by dropping **i**: *amāvi*, perfect stem AMAV; *monui*, MONU.

III. The SUPINE SYSTEM, with the Supine as its basis, comprises

1. The *Supines* in *ŭm* and *ū*, the former of which with *īri* forms the *Future Infinitive Passive.*

2. The *Future Active* and *Perfect Passive Participles*, the for-

[1] The favorite vowel before two consonants or a double consonant. See 28, 2.

mer of which with *esse* forms the *Future Active Infinitive*, and the latter of which with the proper parts of the auxiliary *sum* forms in the Passive those tenses which in the Active belong to the *Perfect System*.

These parts are all formed from the *Supine Stem*, found in the Supine by dropping **um**: *amātum*, supine stem AMAT; *monĭtum*, MONIT.

216. These three Systems of Forms are seen in the following Synopsis of Conjugation.

SYNOPSIS OF CONJUGATION.

217. FIRST CONJUGATION.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

1. Principal Parts.

ămŏ, ămārĕ, ămāvī, ămātŭm.

2. Present System: Stem, *ăma*.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Imper.	Infinitive.	Participle.
Pres.	ămŏ	ămĕm	ămā	ămārĕ	ămans.
Imp.	ămābăm	ămārĕm			
Fut.	ămābŏ		ămātŏ		

Gerund, ămandī, dŏ, etc.

3. Perfect System: Stem, *ămāv*.

Perf.	ămāvī	ămāvĕrĭm		ămāvissĕ.	
Plup.	ămāvĕrăm	ămāvissĕm			
F.P.	ămāvĕrŏ				

4. Supine System: Stem, *ămāt*.

Fut.				ămātūrŭs essĕ	ămātūrŭs.

Supine, ămātŭm, ămātū.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

1. Principal Parts.

ămŏr, ămārī, ămātŭs sŭm.

2. Present System: Stem, *ăma*.

Pres.	ămŏr	ămĕr	ămārĕ	ămārī	
Imp.	ămābăr	ămārĕr			
Fut.	ămābŏr		ămātŏr		

Gerundive, ămandŭs.

3. Supine System: Stem, *ămāt.*

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Imper.	Infinitive.	Participle.
Perf.	ămātŭs sŭm	ămātŭs sĭm		ămātŭs essĕ	ămātŭs.
Plup.	ămātŭs ĕrăm	ămātŭs essĕm			
F. P.	ămātŭs ĕrō				
Fut.				ămātŭm īrī	

218. SECOND CONJUGATION.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

1. Principal Parts.

mŏneō, mŏnērĕ, mŏnuī, mŏnĭtŭm.

2. Present System: Stem, *mŏne.*

Pres.	mŏneō	mŏneăm	mŏnē	mŏnērĕ	mŏnens.
Imp.	mŏnēbăm	mŏnērĕm			
Fut.	mŏnēbō		mŏnētō		

Gerund, mŏnendī, dō, etc.

3. Perfect System: Stem, *mŏnu.*

Perf.	mŏnuī	mŏnuĕrĭm		mŏnuissĕ	
Plup.	mŏnuĕrăm	mŏnuissĕm			
F. P.	mŏnuĕrō				

4. Supine System: Stem, *mŏnĭt.*

Fut.				mŏnĭtūrŭs essĕ	mŏnĭtūrŭs.

Supine, mŏnĭtŭm, mŏnĭtū.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

1. Principal Parts.

mŏneŏr, mŏnērī, mŏnĭtŭs sŭm.

2. Present System: Stem, *mŏne.*

Pres.	mŏneŏr	mŏneăr	mŏnērĕ	mŏnērī	
Imp.	mŏnēbăr	mŏnērĕr			
Fut.	mŏnēbŏr		mŏnētŏr		

Gerundive, mŏnendŭs.

3. Supine System: Stem, *mŏnĭt.*

Perf.	mŏnĭtŭs sŭm	mŏnĭtŭs sĭm		mŏnĭtŭs essĕ	mŏnĭtŭs.
Plup.	mŏnĭtŭs ĕrăm	mŏnĭtŭs essĕm			
F. P.	mŏnĭtŭs ĕrō				
Fut.				mŏnĭtŭm īrī	

219. THIRD CONJUGATION.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

1. Principal Parts.

rĕgŏ, rĕgĕrĕ, rexī, rectŭm.

2. Present System: Stem, *rĕg*.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres.	rĕgŏ	rĕgăm	rĕgĕ	rĕgĕrĕ	rĕgens.
Imp.	rĕgēbăm	rĕgĕrĕm			
Fut.	rĕgăm		rĕgĭtŏ		

Gerund, rĕgendī, dŏ, etc.

3. Perfect System: Stem, *rex*.

Perf.	rexī	rexĕrĭm		rexissĕ	
Plup.	rexĕrăm	rexissĕm			
F. P.	rexĕrŏ				

4. Supine System: Stem, *rect*.

Fut.				rectūrŭs essĕ	rectūrŭs.

Supine, rectŭm, rectū.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

1. Principal Parts.

rĕgŏr, rĕgī, rectŭs sŭm.

2. Present System: Stem, *rĕg*.

Pres.	rĕgŏr	rĕgăr	rĕgĕrĕ	rĕgī	
Imp.	rĕgēbăr	rĕgĕrĕr			
Fut.	rĕgăr		rĕgĭtŏr		

Gerundive, rĕgendŭs.

3. Supine System: Stem, *rect*.

Perf.	rectŭs sŭm	rectŭs sĭm		rectŭs essĕ	rectŭs.
Plup.	rectŭs ĕrăm	rectŭs essĕm			
F. P.	rectŭs ĕrŏ				
Fut.				rectŭm īrī	

220. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

1. Principal Parts.

audiŏ, audīrĕ, audīvī, audītŭm.

2. Present System: Stem, *audi.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres.	audiŏ	audiăm	audī	audīrĕ	audiens.
Imp.	audiēbăm	audīrĕm			
Fut.	audiăm		audītŏ		

Gerund, audiendī, dŏ, etc.

3. Perfect System: Stem, *audīv.*

Perf.	audīvī	audīvĕrĭm		audīvissĕ	
Plup.	audīvĕrăm	audīvissĕm			
F. P.	audīvĕrŏ				

4. Supine System: Stem, *audīt.*

Fut.				audītūrŭs essĕ	audītūrŭs.

Supine, audītŭm, audītū.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

1. Principal Parts.

audiŏr, audīrī, audītŭs sŭm.

2. Present System: Stem, *audi.*

Pres.	audiŏr	audiăr	audīrĕ	audīrī	
Imp.	audiēbăr	audīrĕr			
Fut.	audiăr		audītŏr		

Gerundive, audiendŭs.

3. Supine System: Stem, *audīt.*

Perf.	audītŭs sŭm	audītŭs sĭm		audītŭs essĕ	audītŭs.
Plup.	audītŭs ĕrăm	audītŭs essĕm			
F. P.	audītŭs ĕrŏ				
Fut.				audītŭm īrī	

THIRD CONJUGATION: VERBS IN IO.

221. A few verbs of the Third Conjugation form the Present Indicative in **io, ior,** like verbs of the Fourth Conjugation. They are inflected with the endings of the Fourth wherever those endings have two successive vowels. These verbs are

1. The following with their compounds:

Căpio, to take; *cŭpio*, to desire; *făcio*, to make; *fŏdio*, to dig; *fŭgio*, to flee; *jăcio*, to throw; *părio*, to bear; *quătio*, to shake; *răpio*, to seize; *săpio*, to be wise.

2. The compounds of the obsolete *lăcio*, to entice, and *spĕcio*, to look; *allicio*, *ēlicio*, *illicio*, *pellicio*, etc.; *aspicio*, *conspicio*, etc.

3. The Deponent Verbs: *grădior*, to go; *mŏrior*, to die; *pătior*, to suffer. See 225.

222. ACTIVE VOICE.

Căpio, *I take.*—Stem, *căp.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
căpiŏ,	căpĕrĕ,	cēpī,	captŭm.

Indicative Mood.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Pres.	căpiŏ, căpĭs, căpĭt;	căpĭmŭs, căpĭtĭs, căpiunt.
Imp.	căpiēbăm, -iēbās, -iēbăt;	căpiēbāmŭs, -iēbātĭs, -iēbant.
Fut.	căpiăm, -iēs, -iĕt;	căpiēmŭs, -iētĭs, -ient.
Perf.	cēpī, -istī, -ĭt;	cēpĭmŭs, -istĭs, -ērunt, *or* ērĕ.
Plup.	cēpĕrăm, -ĕrās, -ĕrăt;	cēpĕrāmŭs, -ĕrātĭs, -ĕrant.
Fut. Perf.	cēpĕrŏ, -ĕrĭs, ĕrĭt;	cēpĕrĭmŭs, -ĕrĭtĭs, -ĕrint.

Subjunctive.

Pres.	căpiăm, -iās, -iăt;	căpiāmŭs, -iātĭs, -iant.
Imp.	căpĕrĕm, -ĕrēs, -ĕrĕt;	căpĕrēmŭs, -ĕrētĭs, -ĕrent.
Perf.	cēpĕrĭm, -ĕrĭs, -ĕrĭt;	cēpĕrĭmŭs, -ĕrĭtĭs, ĕrint.
Plup.	cēpissĕm, -issēs, -issĕt;	cēpissēmŭs, -issētĭs, -issent.

Imperative.

Pres.	căpĕ;	căpĭtĕ.
Fut.	căpĭtŏ,	căpĭtōtĕ,
	căpĭtŏ;	căpiuntŏ.

Infinitive.

Pres.	căpĕrĕ.
Perf.	cēpissĕ.
Fut.	captūrŭs essĕ.

Participle.

Pres.	căpiens.
Fut.	captūrŭs.

Gerund.

Gen.	căpiendī.
Dat.	căpiendŏ.
Acc.	căpiendŭm.
Abl.	căpiendŏ.

Supine.

Acc.	captŭm.
Abl.	captū.

223. PASSIVE VOICE.

Căpior, *I am taken.*—Stem, *căp.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
căpiŏr,	căpī,	captŭs sŭm.

Indicative Mood.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Pres.	căpiŏr, căpĕrĭs, căpĭtŭr;	căpĭmŭr, căpĭmĭnī, căpiuntŭr.
Imp.	căpiēbăr, -iēbārĭs, -iēbātŭr;	căpiēbāmŭr, -iēbāmĭnī, -iēbantŭr.
Fut.	căpiăr, -iērĭs, -iētŭr;	căpiēmŭr, -iēmĭnī, -ientur.
Perf.	captŭs sŭm, ĕs, est;	captī sŭmŭs, estĭs, sunt.
Plup.	captŭs ĕrăm, ĕrās, ĕrăt;	captī ĕrāmŭs, ĕrātĭs, ĕrant.
Fut. Perf.	captŭs ĕrŏ, ĕrĭs, ĕrĭt;	captī ĕrĭmŭs, ĕrĭtĭs, ĕrunt.

Subjunctive.

Pres.	căpiăr, -iārĭs, -iātŭr;	căpiāmŭr, -iāmĭnī, -iantŭr.
Imp.	căpĕrĕr, -ĕrērĭs, -ĕrētŭr;	căpĕrēmŭr, -ĕrēmĭnī, -ĕrentŭr.
Perf.	captŭs sĭm, sīs, sĭt;	captī sīmŭs, sītĭs, sint.
Plup.	captŭs essĕm, essēs, essĕt;	captī essēmŭs, essētĭs, essent.

Imperative.

Pres.	căpĕrĕ;	căpĭmĭnī.
Fut.	căpĭtŏr,	
	căpĭtŏr;	căpiuntŏr.

Infinitive.   Participle.

	Infinitive		Participle
Pres.	căpī.		
Perf.	captŭs essĕ.	Perf.	captŭs.
Fut.	captŭm īrī.	Ger.	căpiendŭs.

224. SYNOPSIS.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

1. Principal Parts.

căpiŏ, căpĕrĕ, cēpī, captŭm.

2. Present System: Stem, *căpi.*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. căpiŏ	căpiăm	căpĕ	căpĕrĕ	căpiens.
Imp. căpiēbăm	căpĕrĕm			
Fut. căpiăm		căpĭtŏ		

Gerund, căpiendī, dŏ, etc.

3. Perfect System: Stem, *cēp*.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Perf.	cēpī	cēpĕrĭm		cēpissĕ	
Plup.	cēpĕrăm	cēpissĕm			
F. P.	cēpĕrŏ				

4. Supine System: Stem, *capt*.

Fut.				captūrŭs essĕ	captūrŭs.

Supine, captŭm, captū.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

1. Principal Parts.

căpiŏr, căpī, captŭs sŭm.

2. Present System: Stem, *căpi*.

Pres.	căpiŏr	căpiăr	căpĕrĕ	căpī	
Imp.	căpiēbăr	căpĕrĕr			
Fut.	căpiăr		căpĭtŏr		

Gerundive, căpiendŭs.

3. Supine System: Stem, *capt*.

Perf.	captŭs sŭm	captŭs sīm		captŭs essĕ	captŭs.
Plup.	captŭs ĕrăm	captŭs essĕm			
F. P.	captŭs ĕrŏ				
Fut.				captŭm īrī	

DEPONENT VERBS.

225. Deponent Verbs have in general the forms of the Passive Voice with the signification of the Active. But

1. They have also in the Active, the future infinitive, the participles, gerund, and supine.

2. The gerundive generally has the passive signification; sometimes also the perfect participle: *hortandus*, to be exhorted; *expertus*, tried.

3. The Future Infinitive of the Passive form is rare, as the Active form is generally used.

SYNOPSIS OF CONJUGATION.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

226. Hortor, *I exhort.*

I. Principal Parts.

hortŏr, hortārī, hortātŭs sŭm.

II. PRESENT SYSTEM: STEM, *horta*.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres.	hortŏr[1]	hortĕr	hortārĕ	hortārī	hortans.
Imp.	hortābăr	hortārĕr			
Fut.	hortābŏr		hortātŏr		

Gerund, hortandī. *Gerundive*, hortandŭs.

III. SUPINE SYSTEM: STEM, *hortāt*.

Perf.	hortātŭs sŭm	hortātŭs sīm		hortātŭs essĕ	hortātŭs.
Plup.	hortātŭs ĕrăm	hortātŭs essĕm			
F. P.	hortātŭs ĕrŏ				
Fut.				hortātūrŭs essĕ	hortātūrŭs.

Supine, hortātŭm, hortātū.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

227. Vĕreor, *I fear*.

I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

vĕreŏr, vĕrērī, vĕrĭtŭs sŭm.

II. PRESENT SYSTEM: STEM, *vĕre*.

Pres.	vĕreŏr	vĕreăr	vĕrērĕ	vĕrērī	vĕrens.
Imp.	vĕrēbăr	vĕrērĕr			
Fut.	vĕrēbŏr		vĕrētŏr		

Gerund, vĕrendī. *Gerundive*, vĕrendŭs.

III. SUPINE SYSTEM: STEM, *vĕrĭt*.

Perf.	vĕrĭtŭs sŭm	vĕrĭtŭs sīm		vĕrĭtŭs essĕ	vĕrĭtŭs.
Plup.	vĕrĭtŭs ĕrăm	vĕrĭtŭs essĕm			
F. P.	vĕrĭtŭs ĕrŏ				
Fut.				vĕrĭtūrŭs essĕ	vĕrĭtūrŭs.

Supine, vĕrĭtŭm, vĕrĭtū.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

228. Sĕquor, *I follow*.

I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

sĕquŏr, sĕquī, sĕcūtŭs sŭm.

---

[1] The tenses are inflected regularly through the persons and numbers: *hortŏr, hortārĭs, hortātŭr, hortāmŭr, hortāmĭnī, hortantŭr.* All the forms in this synopsis have the active meaning, *I exhort, I was exhorting*, etc., except the *Gerundive*, which has the passive force, *deserving to be exhorted, to be exhorted.* From the passive force the *Gerundive* cannot be used in intransitive Dep. verbs, except in an impersonal sense. See 301, 1.

II. Present System: Stem, *sĕqu.*

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Imper.	Infinitive.	Participle.
Pres.	sĕquŏr	sĕquăr	sĕquĕrĕ	sĕquī	sĕquens.
Imp.	sĕquēbăr	sĕquĕrĕr			
Fut.	sĕquăr		sĕquĭtŏr		

Gerund, sĕquendī. *Gerundive*, sĕquendŭs.

III. Supine System: Stem, *sĕcūt.*

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Imper.	Infinitive.	Participle.
Perf.	sĕcūtŭs sŭm	sĕcūtŭs sīm		sĕcūtŭs essĕ	sĕcūtŭs.
Plup.	sĕcūtŭs ĕrăm	sĕcūtŭs essĕm			
F. P.	sĕcūtŭs ĕrŏ				
Fut.				sĕcūtūrŭs essĕ	sĕcūtūrŭs.

Supine, sĕcūtŭm, sĕcūtū.

229. Pătior, *I suffer.*

I. Principal Parts.

pătiŏr, pătī, passŭs sŭm.

II. Present System: Stem, *păti.*

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Imper.	Infinitive.	Participle.
Pres.	pătiŏr	pătiăr	pătĕrĕ	pătī	pătiens.
Imp.	pătiēbăr	pătĕrĕr			
Fut.	pătiăr		pătĭtŏr		

Gerund, pătiendī. *Gerundive*, pătiendŭs.

III. Supine System: Stem, *pass.*

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Imper.	Infinitive.	Participle.
Perf.	passŭs sŭm	passŭs sīm		passŭs essĕ	passŭs.
Plup.	passŭs ĕrăm	passŭs essĕm			
F. P.	passŭs ĕrŏ				
Fut.				passūrŭs essĕ	passūrŭs.

Supine, passŭm, passū.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

230. Blandior, *I flatter.*

I. Principal Parts.

blandiŏr, blandīrī, blandītŭs sŭm.

II. Present System: Stem, *blandi.*

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Imper.	Infinitive.	Participle.
Pres.	blandiŏr	blandiăr	blandīrĕ	blandīrī	blandiens.
Imp.	blandiēbăr	blandīrĕr			
Fut.	blandiăr		blandī-tŏr		

Gerund, blandiendī. *Gerundive*, blandiendŭs.

III. Supine System: Stem, blandīt.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Perf.	blandītŭs sŭm	blandītŭs sīm		blandītŭs essĕ	blandītŭs.
Plup.	blandītŭs ĕrăm	blandītŭs essĕm			
F. P.	blandītŭs ĕrŏ				
Fut.				blandītūrŭs essĕ	blandītūrŭs.

Supine, blandītŭm, blandītū.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

231. The Active Periphrastic Conjugation, formed by combining the Future Active Participle with *sum*, denotes an intended or future action:

Amatūrus sum, *I am about to love.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE.
Pres.	ămātūrŭs sŭm[1]	ămātūrŭs sīm	ămātūrŭs essĕ.
Imp.	ămātūrŭs ĕrăm	ămātūrŭs essĕm	
Fut.	ămātūrŭs ĕrŏ		
Perf.	ămātūrŭs fuī	ămātūrŭs fuĕrīm	ămātūrŭs fuissĕ.
Plup.	ămātūrŭs fuĕrăm	ămātūrŭs fuissĕm	
Fut. Perf.	ămātūrŭs fuĕrŏ[1]		

232. The Passive Periphrastic Conjugation, formed by combining the Gerundive with *sum*, denotes *necessity* or *duty*.

Amandus sum, *I must be loved.*[2]

Pres.	ămandŭs sŭm	ămandŭs sīm	ămandŭs essĕ.
Imp.	ămandŭs ĕrăm	ămandŭs essĕm	
Fut.	ămandŭs ĕrŏ		
Perf.	ămandŭs fuī	ămandŭs fuĕrīm	ămandŭs fuissĕ.
Plup.	ămandŭs fuĕrăm	ămandŭs fuissĕm	
Fut. Perf.	ămandŭs fuĕrŏ		

233. The Periphrastic Conjugation, in the widest sense of the term, includes all forms compounded of participles with *sum;* but as the Pres. Part. with *sum* is equivalent to the Pres. Ind. (*amans est* = *amat*), and is accordingly seldom used, and as the Perf. Part. with *sum* is, in the strictest sense, an integral part of the regular conjugation, the term *Periphrastic* is generally limited to the two conjugations above given.

---

[1] The periphrastic forms are inflected regularly through the persons and numbers: *amatūrus sum, es, est.* The Fut. Perf. is exceedingly rare.

[2] Or, *I deserve* (ought) *to be loved.*

PECULIARITIES IN CONJUGATION.

234. Perfects in **āvi, ēvi, īvi,** and the tenses derived from them, sometimes drop **v** and suffer contraction before **s** and **r**. Thus

A-i and **a-e** become **ā**: *ămavisti* (amaisti), *amasti*; *amavĕram* (amaeram), *amāram*; *amavisse* (amaisse), *amasse*.

E-i and **e-e** become **ē**: *nēvi* (to spin), *nevisti* (neisti), *nesti*; *nevērunt* (neerunt), *nērunt*.

I-i becomes **ī**: *audivisti* (audiisti), *audisti*; *audivissem* (audiissem), *audissem*.

1. Perfects in *ivi* sometimes drop *v* in any of their forms, but generally without contraction, except before *s*: *audīvi*, *audii*, *audiit*, *audiĕram*; *audivisti*, *audiisti* or *audisti*.

2. Perfects in *ōvi*.—The perfects of *nosco*, to know, and *mŏveo*, to move, sometimes drop *v* and suffer contraction before *r* and *s*: *nōvisti*, *nosti*.

3. Perfects in *si* and *xi* sometimes drop *is*, or *sis*: *scripsisti*, *scripsti*; *dixisse*, *dixe*; *accessistis*, *accestis*.

235. Ērĕ for **ērunt**, as the ending of the third Pers. Pl. of the Perf. Ind. Act., is common in the historians.

The form in *ēre* does not drop *v*. In poetry *ĕrunt* occurs.

236. Re for **ris** in the ending of the second Pers. of the Pass. is rare in the Pres. Indic.

237. Dic, duc, fac, and **fer**, for *dīce*, *dūce*, *făce*, and *fĕre*, are the Imperatives of *dīco*, *dūco*, *făcio*, and *fĕro*, to say, lead, make, and bear.

1. *Dīce*, *dūce*, and *făce*, occur in poetry.

2. Compounds follow the simple verbs, except those of *făcio* which change *a* into *i*: *confĭce*.

238. Undus and **undi** for *endus* and *endi* occur as the endings of the Gerundive and Gerund of Conj. III. and IV.: *dīcundus*, from *dīco*, to say; *pŏtiundus*, from *pŏtior*, to obtain.

239. Ancient and Rare Forms.—Various other forms, belonging in the main to the earlier Latin, occur in the poets, even of the classical period, and occasionally also in prose, to impart to the style an air of antiquity or solemnity. Thus forms in

1. **Ībam** for *iēbam*, in the Imp. Ind. of Conj. IV.: *scībam* for *sciēbam*. See Imp. of *eo*, to go, 295.

2. **Ībo, ībor,** for *iam*, *iar*, in the Fut. of Conj. IV.: *servībo* for *serviam*; *oppĕrībor* for *opperiar*. See Fut. of *eo*, 295.

3. **im** for *am* or *em*, in the Pres. Subj.: *ĕdim*, *edis*, etc., for *ĕdam*, *ās*, etc.; *duim* (from *duo*, for *do*), for *dem*.—In *sim*, *vĕlim*, *nōlim*, *mālim* (204 and 293), *im* is the common ending.

4. **asso**, **esso**, and **so**, in the Fut. Perf., and **assim**, **essim**, and **sim**, in the Perf. Subj. of Conj. I. II. III.: *faxo* (facso) for *fēcĕro*[1] (from *făcio*); *faxim* for *fēcĕrim*[1]; *ausim* for *ausus sim* (for *ausĕrim*, from *audeo*). Rare examples are: *lĕvasso* for *levavĕro*; *prohĭbesso* for *prohibuĕro*; *capso* for *cēpĕro*; *axo* for *ēgĕro*; *jusso* for *jussĕro*; *occīsit* for *occīdĕrit*; *taxis* for *tĕtĭgĕris*.

5. **to** and **mĭno** for *tor*, the former in both numbers, the latter in the singular, of the Fut. Imp. Pass. and Dep.: *arbĭtrāto*, *arbitrāmĭno* for *arbitrātor*; *ūtunto* for *ūtuntor*.

6. **ier** for *i* in the Pres. Pass. Infin.: *ămāriĕr* for *amārī*; *vĭdēriĕr* for *vidērī*.

240. COMPARATIVE VIEW OF CONJUGATIONS.

I. Present System.

ACTIVE VOICE.

	Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Stem,	*ăma.*	*mŏne.*	*rĕg.*	*audi.*
Ind. Pres.	ămŏ =amao	mŏneŏ	rĕgŏ	audiŏ
	amās[2]	monēs[2]	regĭs	audīs
Imp.	amābăm	monēbăm	regēbăm	audiēbăm
	amābās	monēbās	regēbās	audiēbās
Fut.	amābŏ	monēbŏ	regăm	audiăm
	amābĭs	monēbĭs	regēs	audiēs
Sub. Pres.	amĕm=amaim	moneăm	regăm	audiăm
	amēs	moneās	regās	audiās
Imp.	amārĕm	monērĕm	regĕrĕm	audīrĕm
	amārēs	monērēs	regĕrēs	audīrēs
Imp. Pres.	amā	monē	regĕ	audī
Fut.	amātŏ	monētŏ	regĭtŏ	audītŏ
Inf. Pres.	amārĕ	monērĕ	regĕrĕ	audīrĕ
Par. Pres.	amans	monens	regens	audiens
Gerund,	amandī.	monendī.	regendī.	audiendī.

PASSIVE VOICE.

	Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Ind. Pres.	amŏr	moneŏr	regŏr	audiŏr
	amārĭs (rĕ)	monērĭs (rĕ)	regĕrĭs (rĕ)	audīrĭs (rĕ)
Imp.	amābăr	monēbăr	regēbăr	audiēbăr
	amābārĭs (rĕ)	monēbārĭs (rĕ)	regēbārĭs (rĕ)	audiēbārĭs (rĕ)
Fut.	amābŏr	monēbŏr	regăr	audiăr
	amabĕrĭs (rĕ)	monebĕrĭs (rĕ)	regērĭs (rĕ)	audiērĭs (rĕ)
Sub. Pres.	amĕr =amair	moneăr	regăr	audiăr
	amērĭs (rĕ)	moneārĭs (rĕ)	regārĭs (rĕ)	audiārĭs (re)
Imp.	amārĕr	monērĕr	regĕrĕr	audīrĕr
	amarērĭs (rĕ)	monerērĭs (rĕ)	regerērĭs (rĕ)	audīrērĭs (rĕ)
Imp. Pres.	amārĕ	monērĕ	regĕrĕ	audīrĕ
Fut.	amātŏr	monētŏr	regĭtŏr	audītŏr
Inf. Pres.	amārī	monērī	regī	audīrī
Ger.	amandŭs.	monendŭs.	regendŭs.	audiendŭs.

[1] Remember that *r* in *ĕro* and *ĕrim* was originally *s*. See 85, and foot-note 2, p. 70.

[2] In the same manner all the persons of both numbers may be compared.

II. Perfect System.

ACTIVE VOICE.

	Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Stem,	*ămāv.*	*mŏnu.*	*rex.*	*audīv.*
Ind. Perf.	amāvī	monuī	rexī	audīvī
	amavistī	monuistī	rexistī	audivistī
Plup.	amavĕrăm	monuĕrăm	rexĕrăm	audivĕrăm
	amavĕrās	monuĕrās	rexĕrās	audivĕrās
F. Perf.	amavĕrŏ	monuĕrŏ	rexĕrŏ	audivĕrŏ
	amavĕrĭs	monuĕrĭs	rexĕrĭs	audīvĕrĭs
Sub. Perf.	amavĕrĭm	monuĕrĭm	rexĕrĭm	audivĕrĭm
	amavĕrĭs	monuĕrĭs	rexĕrĭs	audivĕrĭs
Plup.	amavissĕm	monuissĕm	rexissĕm	audivissĕm
	amavissēs	monuissēs	rexissēs	audivissēs
Inf. Perf.	amavissĕ.	monuissĕ.	rexissĕ.	audivissĕ.

III. Supine System.

ACTIVE VOICE.

	Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Stem,	*ămāt.*	*mŏnĭt.*	*rect.*	*audīt.*
Inf. Fut.	amātūrŭs essĕ	monĭtūrŭs essĕ	rēctūrŭs essĕ	audītūrŭs essĕ
Par. Fut.	amatūrŭs	monitūrŭs	rectūrŭs	auditūrŭs
Supine,	amātŭm.	monĭtŭm.	rectŭm.	audītŭm.

PASSIVE VOICE.

	Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Ind. Perf.	amātŭs sŭm	monĭtŭs sŭm	rectŭs sŭm	audītŭs sŭm
	amātŭs ĕs	monĭtŭs ĕs	rectŭs ĕs	audītŭs ĕs
Plup.	amātŭs ĕrăm	monĭtŭs ĕrăm	rectŭs ĕrăm	audītŭs ĕrăm
	amātŭs ĕrās	monĭtŭs ĕrās	rectŭs ĕrās	audītŭs ĕrās
F. Perf.	amātŭs ĕrŏ	monĭtŭs ĕrŏ	rectŭs ĕrŏ	audītŭs ĕrŏ
	amātŭs ĕrĭs	monĭtŭs ĕrĭs	rectŭs ĕrĭs	audītŭs ĕrĭs
Sub. Perf.	amātŭs sīm	monĭtŭs sīm	rectŭs sīm	audītŭs sīm
	amātŭs sīs	monĭtŭs sīs	rectŭs sīs	audītŭs sīs
Plup.	amātŭs essĕm	monĭtŭs essĕm	rectŭs essĕm	audītŭs essĕm
	amātŭs essēs	monĭtŭs essēs	rectŭs essēs	audītŭs essēs
Inf. Perf.	amātŭs essĕ	monĭtŭs essĕ	rectŭs essĕ	audītŭs essĕ
Fut.	amātŭm īrī	monĭtŭm īrī	rectŭm īrī	audītŭm īrī
Par. Perf.	amātŭs.	monĭtŭs.	rectŭs.	audītŭs.

1. From this Synopsis it will be seen:

1) That the Four Conjugations differ from each other only in the formation of the *Principal Parts* and in the endings of the *Present System.*

2) That even these differences have been produced in the main by the union of different final letters in the various stems with one general system of endings.

3) That the Four Conjugations are thus only varieties of one general system of inflection.

ANALYSIS OF VERBAL ENDINGS.

241. The endings which are appended to the stems in the formation of the various parts of the finite verb contain three distinct elements:

1. The TENSE-SIGN: *ba* in *ămā-bă-m*, *rĕg-ē-bā-s*.
2. The MOOD-VOWEL: *a* in *mŏne-ā-s*, *rĕg-ā-s*.
3. The PERSONAL ENDING: *s* in *mŏne-ā-s*, *rĕg-ā-s*.

I. TENSE-SIGNS.

242. The Present is without any tense-sign: *ămā-s*. So also the Future[1] in Conj. III. and IV.

243. The other tenses[2] have the following

TENSE-SIGNS.

IND.	IMP.	*ba:*	ămā-bā-s:	rĕg-ē-bā-s.
	FUT.	*bi:*	ămā-bĭ-s:	mŏnē-bĭ-s.
	PLUP.	*ĕra:*	ămāv-ĕrā-s:	rex-ĕrā-s.
	F. PERF.	*ĕri:*	ămāv-ĕrĭ-s:	audīv-ĕrĭ-s.
SUBJ.	IMP.	*ĕra:*	rĕg-ĕrē-s, *for* rĕg-ĕra-ī-s.[3]	
			ămā-rē-s, *for* ăma-ĕra-ī-s.[3]	
	PERF.	*ĕri:*	rex-ĕrĭ-s:	audīv-ĕrĭ-s.
	PLUP.	*issa:*	rex-issē-s, *for* rex-issa-ī-s.[3]	

II. MOOD-SIGNS.

244. The Indicative has no special sign to mark the Mood.

245. The Subjunctive has a long vowel—ā, ē,[4] or ī[5]—

[1] This Future is in form a Present Subjunctive, though it has assumed in full the force of the Future Indicative. See foot-note 5 below.

[2] These are all compounded with the tenses of *sum:* Thus in *ămā-băm* and *ămā-bŏ*, the ending *băm* = *ĕrăm* is the Imperfect from the stem *bhu*, the old form of *fu* in *fui*, and *bŏ* = *ĕrŏ* is the Future from the same stem. In *ămāv-ĕrăm* and *ămāv-ĕrŏ*, the endings *ĕrăm* and *ĕrŏ* are the Imperfect and Future of *sum* from the stem *ĕs*. In *rĕg-ĕrĕm* the ending *ĕrĕm* is for *ĕsĕm*, the ancient form of *essĕm;* in *rex-ĕrim*, *ĕrim* is for *ĕsim* = *sim*, and in *rex-issĕm*, *issĕm* is for *essĕm*.

[3] See foot-note 5 below.

[4] This *ē* comes from *a-ī*, of which the *ī* alone is the true Mood-Sign.

[5] The Latin Subjunctive contains the forms of two distinct Moods,—the Subjunctive with the sign *ā*, and the Optative with the sign *ī*, sometimes

before the Personal Endings: *mŏne-ā-mŭs*, *ăm-ē-mŭs*, *s-ī-mŭs*. But

1. This vowel is shortened before final *m* and *t*, and sometimes in the Perfect before *s*, *mŭs* and *tĭs*: *mŏneăm*, *ămĕt*, *sĭt*, *fuĕrĭs*, *ămāvĕrĭmŭs*, *ămāvĕrĭtĭs*.

246. The Imperative is distinguished by its Personal Endings. See 247, 3.

III. Personal Endings.

247. The Personal Endings are formed from ancient pronominal stems, and have, accordingly, the force of pronouns in English. They are as follows:

	PERSON.	ACT.	PASS.	MEANING.
Sing.[1]	*First Pers.*,	m,	r,	*I.*
	Second,	s,	rĭs,	*thou, you.*
	Third,	t,	tŭr,	*he, she, it.*
Plur.[2]	*First*,	mŭs,	mŭr,	*we.*
	Second,	tĭs,	mĭnī,[3]	*you.*
	Third,	nt,	ntŭr,	*they.*

contained in *ē* for *a-ī*. Thus: Subjunctive, *mŏne-ā-mŭs*, *audi-ā-tĭs*; Optative, *s-ī-mŭs*, *rexĕr-ī-tĭs*, *ăm-ē-mŭs* for *ama-ī-mŭs*, *rĕgĕr-ē-s*, for *rĕgĕra-ī-s*. The Subjunctive and Optative forms, originally distinct, have in the Latin been blended into one Mood, called the Subjunctive, and are used without any difference of meaning. Thus the Mood in *mŏne-ā-mŭs*, a Subjunctive form, has precisely the same force as in *ăm-ē-mŭs*, an Optative form.

The 1st Pers. Sing. of Futures in *ăm*—*rĕgăm*, *audiăm*, etc.—is in form a Subjunctive, while the other Persons, *rĕgēs*, *ĕt*, etc., *audiēs*, *ĕt*, etc., are in form Optatives.

[1] In the Singular these Personal Endings contain each, (1) in the Active Voice one pronominal stem, *m*, I; *s*, thou, you; *t*, he; and (2) in the Passive two such stems—one denoting the Person, and the other the Passive Voice: thus in the ending *tŭr*, *t* (tu) denotes the person, and *r*, the voice. *R* of the first person stands for *m-r*.

[2] In the Plural the Endings contain each, (1) in the Active two pronominal stems: *mŭ-s* = *m* (mu) and *s*, I and you, i. e. we; *tĭs* = *t* (the original form for *s*, thou, as seen in *tu*, thou) and *s*, = *s* and *s*, thou and thou, i. e. you; *nt* = *n* and *t*, he and he, i. e. they, and (2) in the Passive three such stems—the third denoting the Passive voice: thus in *ntŭr*, *nt* (ntu) denotes the person and number, and *r*, the voice.

[3] *Mĭnī* was not originally a Personal Ending, but the Plural of a Passive Participle, not otherwise used in Latin, but seen in the Greek (μενοι). *Amāmĭnī*, originally *ămāmĭnī estĭs*, means *you are loved*, as *amātī estis* means *you have been loved*.

EXAMPLES.

ămābă-m,	amābă-r,;	rĕgŏ,	regŏ-r.
amābā-s,	amabā-rĭs;	regĭ-s,	regĕ-rĭs.
amābă-t,	amabā-tŭr;	regĭ-t,	regĭ-tŭr.
amabā-mŭs,	amabā-mŭr;	regĭ-mŭs,	regĭ-mŭr.
amabā-tĭs,	amabā-mĭnī;	regĭ-tĭs,	regĭ-mĭnī.
amāba-nt,	amaba-ntŭr;	regu-nt,	regu-ntŭr.

1. OMITTED.—The ending *m* is omitted in the Pres.,[1] Perf., and Fut. Perf. Ind. of all the conjugations, and in the Fut. Ind. of Conj. I. and II. Accordingly in those forms the First Person ends in the connecting vowel *o: ămŏ, amābŏ, amāvĕro;* except in the Perfect, where it ends in *ī: ămāvī.*

2. The Endings of the Perfect Act. are peculiar. They are the same as in *fuī:*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
First Pers.,	fu-ī;[2]	fu-ĭ-mŭs.
Second,	fu-is-tī;	fu-is-tĭs.
Third,	fu-ĭ-t;	fu-ēru-nt, *or* ērĕ.

3. The Imperative Mood has the following Personal Endings:

	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
Pres. Second Pers.,	—[3],	tĕ;	rĕ,	mĭnī.
Fut. Second,	tŏ,	tōtĕ;	tŏr.	
Third,	tŏ,	ntŏ;	tŏr,	ntŏr.

248. Infinitives, Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, are formed with the following endings:

		ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
Infinitive	*Present,*	rĕ (ĕrĕ),	rī (ĕrī), ī,
	Perfect,	issĕ,	ŭs essĕ,
	Future,	ūrŭs essĕ,	ŭm īrī.

---

[1] Except in *sŭm*, I am, and *inquăm*, I say.

[2] *M* is omitted in the first person, and *tī*, an ancient form of *sī, s*, is used in the second. Otherwise the endings themselves are regular, but in the second person *tī* and *tĭs* are preceded by *is*, and *ērunt* in *fu-ērunt*, is for *ĕsunt*, the full form for *sŭnt*. Thus *fu-ērunt* is a compound of *fu* and *esunt* for *sunt*. *Fu-istĭs*, in like manner, may be a compound of *fu* and *istĭs* for *estĭs*, and *fu-istī*, of *fu* and *istī* for *estī* for *ĕs*.

[3] In the Present the ending is dropped in the Sing. Act., and the endings *tĕ* and *rĕ* are shortened from *tĭs* and *rĭs* of the Indicative by dropping *s* and changing final *ĭ* into *ĕ*. See 28, 1. In the Future *tŏ* of the 2d pers. corresponds to *tī* of the Perfect Ind., *tŏ* and *ntŏ* of the 3d pers. to *t* and *nt*. *Tŏr* and *ntŏr* add *r* to *tŏ* and *ntŏ*. *Tōtĕ* doubles the pronominal stem.

		ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
Participle	*Present,*	ns.	
	Future,	tūrŭs.	
	Perfect,		tŭs.
	Gerundive,		ndŭs.
Gerund,		ndī.	
Supine,		ŭm, ū.	

FORMATION OF STEMS.

249. The three Special Stems are all formed from the Verb Stem.

I. PRESENT STEM.

250. The Present Stem is generally the same as the Verb Stem. Thus *ăma, mŏne, rĕg,* and *audi,* are at once Present Stems and Verb Stems.

251. The Present Stem, when not identical with the Verb Stem, is formed from it by one of the following methods:

1. By inserting **n**—changed to **m** before **b** or **p**:

Frango; *stem,* frag; *pres. stem,* frang; *to break.*
Fundo; fud; fund; *to pour.*
Rumpo; rup; rump; *to burst.*

2. By adding **n**, especially to vowel stems:

Sīno; *stem,* sī; *pres. stem,* sin; *to permit.*
Sperno; spĕr, sprē; spern; *to spurn.*
Temno; tĕm; temn; *to despise.*

3. By adding **a, e,** or **i**:

Jŭvo; *stem,* jŭv; *pres. stem,* jŭva; *to assist.*
Vīdeo; vīd; vīde; *to see.*
Căpio; căp; căpi; *to take.*
Vincio; vinc; vinci; *to bind.*
Haurio; haur *for* haus; hauri; *to draw.*

4. By adding **sc**,—to consonant stems **isc**:

Vĕtĕrasco; *stem,* vĕtĕra; *pres. stem,* veterasc; *to grow old.*
Călesco; căle; calesc; *to become warm.*
Cresco; crē; cresc; *to increase.*
Apiscor; ăp; apisc; *to obtain.*
Nanciscor; nac; nancisc;[1] *to obtain.*

5. By adding **t**:

Plecto; *stem,* plĕc; *pres. stem,* plect; *to braid.*

---

[1] *N* is inserted and *isc* added. See 1 above.

6. By doubling the final consonant—**l**, **r**, or **t**:

Pello;	*stem*, pel;	*pres. stem*, pell;	*to drive.*
Curro;	cur;	curr;	*to run.*
Mitto;	mit;	mitt;	*to send.*

7. By reduplication:

Gigno;	*stem*, gĕn;	*pres. stem*, gĭgĕn, gign;	*to beget.*
Sisto;	sta;	sista, sist;	*to place.*
Sĕro;	sa;	sĭsa, sĭs, sĕr;	*to sow.*

II. Perfect Stems.

252. Vowel Stems form the Perfect Stem by adding **v**:

Amo (a-o),	ămāvi,	*stem*, ăma;	*perf. stem*, ămāv;	*to love.*
Dēleo,	delēvi,	dēle;	dēlēv;	*to destroy.*
Audio,	audīvi,	audi;	audīv;	*to hear.*

1. Most stems in *e* and a few in *a* drop the final vowel and change *v* to *u*.

Mŏneo, monui;	*stem*, mŏne; *perf. stem*, mŏnev, mŏnu;	*to advise.*
Crĕpo (a-o), crepui;	crĕpa; crĕpav, crĕpu;	*to creak.*

2. In verbs in *uo*, the Perfect Stem is the same as the Verb Stem:

Acuo, ăcui; *stem*, acu; *perf. stem*, acu; *to sharpen.*

253. Many Liquid Stems, and a few others, form the Perfect Stem by adding **u**:

Alo, ălui;	*stem*, ăl;	*perf. stem*, ălu;	*to nourish.*
Frĕmo, frĕmui;	frĕm;	frĕmu;	*to rage.*
Tĕneo, tĕnui;	tĕn;	tĕnu;	*to hold.*
Dŏceo, dŏcui;	dŏc;	dŏcu;	*to teach.*

254. Most Consonant Stems form the Perfect Stem by adding **s**:

Carpo, carpsi;	*stem*, carp;	*perf. stem*, carps;	*to pluck.*
Rĕgo, rexi;	rĕg;	rex=regs;	*to rule.*
Scrībo, scripsi;	scrīb;	scrips=scribs;	*to write.*

255. A few Consonant Stems form the Perfect Stem without any suffix whatever. But of these

I. Some reduplicate the stem:[1]

Căno, cĕcĭni; *stem*, căn; *perf. stem*, cĕcĭn; *to sing.*

1. The Reduplication consists of the initial consonant (or consonants) of the stem with the following vowel, or with *e*,—generally with the following vowel, if that vowel is *e*, *i*, *o*, or *u*, otherwise with *e*; see examples under 273, I.

2. The Stem-vowel *a* is generally weakened to *i*, sometimes to *e*: *cădo*, *cĕcĭdi* (for *cecădi*), to fall.

---

[1] See list, 273, I.

3. REDUPLICATION WITH *Sp* OR *St*.—In verbs beginning with *sp* or *st*, the reduplication retains both consonants, but the stem drops the *s*: *spondeo*, *spŏpondi* (for *spospondi*), to promise; *sto*, *stĕti* (for *stesti*), to stand.

4. In COMPOUNDS the reduplication is generally dropped, but it is retained in the compounds of *do*, to give; *sto*, to stand; *disco*, to learn; *posco*, to demand; and sometimes in the compounds of *curro*, to run: *re-spondeo*, *respondi* (redup. dropped), to answer; *circum-do*, *circum-dĕdi* (redup. retained); *circum-sto*, *circum-stĕti*, to encircle. The compounds of *do* which are of the third conjugation change *e* of the reduplication into *ĭ*: *ad-do*, *ad-dĭdi* (for *ad-dĕdi*), to add.

II. Some lengthen the Stem-Vowel:[1]

Emo, ēmi;	*stem*, ĕm;	*perf. stem*, ēm;	*to buy.*
Ago, ēgi;	ăg;	ēg;	*to drive.*
Ab-ĭgo, ăb-ēgi;	ăbĭg;	ăbēg;	*to drive away.*

1. The stem-vowels *ă* and (in compounds) *ĭ* generally become *ē*, as in *ăgo* and *ăb-ĭgo*.

III. Some retain the stem unchanged:[1]

Ico, īci;	*stem*, īc;	*perf. stem*, īc;	*to strike.*
Vīso, vīsi;	vīs;	vīs;	*to visit.*

1. Of the few verbs belonging to this class, nearly all have the stem-vowel long, either by nature or by position.

III. SUPINE STEM.

256. Vowel Stems and most Consonant Stems form the Supine Stem by adding **t**:

Amo = ămao,	ămātŭm;	*stem*, ăma,	*sup. st.* ămāt;	*to love.*
Dēleo,	dēlētŭm;	dēle,	dēlēt;	*to destroy.*
Mŏneo,	mŏnĭtŭm;	mŏne,[2]	mŏnĭt;[3]	*to advise.*
Audio,	audītŭm;	audi,	audīt;	*to hear.*
Dīco,	dictŭm;	dīc,	dict;	*to say.*
Carpo,	carptum;	carp,	carpt;	*to pluck.*

257. Stems in **d** and **t**, most stems in **l** and **r**, and a few others, add **s** to the Verb Stem.

Laedo,	laesum;	*stem*, laed,	*sup. st.* laes[3] (*for* laeds);	*to hurt.*
Plaudo,	plausum;	plaud,	plaus (*for* plauds);	*to applaud.*
Vĭdeo,	vīsum;	vĭd,	vīs (*for* vids);	*to see.*
Verto,	versum;	vert,	vers[3] (*for* verts);	*to turn.*
Vello,[4]	vulsum;	vŏl,	vuls[5] (*for* vols);	*to pluck.*
Verro,[4]	versum;	ver,	vers;	*to brush.*

---

[1] See lists, 278, II. and III. [2] See 218, foot-note.
[3] See 36. [4] See 251, 6. [5] See 28, and 293, 1.

258. Euphonic Changes in Stems.

I. Before S in the Perfect and Supine Stems.

1. A Guttural—**c**, **g**, **qu**[1] or **h**—generally unites with the **s** and forms **x**, but is dropped after **l** or **r**: *dūco*, *duxi* (ducsi), *dux*, to lead; *rĕgo*, *rexi* (regsi), *rex*, to rule; *cŏquo*, *coxi* (coqusi), to cook; *traho*, *traxi* (trahsi), to draw; *algeo*, *alsi* (algsi), *als*, to be cold; *mergo*, *mersi* (mergsi), to dip; *mulceo*, *mulsum* (mulcsum), *muls*, to caress; *fīgo*, *fixum* (figsum), to fasten.

2. A Dental—**d** or **t**—is generally dropped, but sometimes assimilated: *claudo*, *clausi* (claudsi), *claus*, *clausum* (claudsum), *claus*, to close; *mitto*,[2] *mīsi* (mitsi), *missum* (mitsum), to send; *cēdo*, *cessi* (cedsi), *cessum* (cedsum), to yield.

3. **B** is changed to **p**: *scrībo*, *scripsi* (scribsi), *scrips*, to write; *nūbo*, *nupsi*, to marry.

4. **M** is sometimes assimilated, and sometimes strengthened with **p**: *prĕmo*, *pressi* (premsi), *press*, *pressum* (premsum), to press; *sūmo*, *sumpsi* (sumsi), to take.

5. **S**—changed to **r** in the Present—is sometimes dropped: *haereo* (haeseo), *haesi* (haessi), *haes*, *haesum* (haessum), to stick.

II. Before T in the Supine Stem.

1. A Guttural—**g**, **qu**[1] or **h**—becomes **c**: *rĕgo*, *rectum* (regtum), *rect*, to rule; *cŏquo*, *coctum* (coqutum), to cook; *traho*, *tractum* (trahtum), to draw.

2. **B** is changed to **p**, as in the Perfect: *scrībo*, *scriptum* (scribtum), to write.

3. **M** is strengthened with **p**: *sūmo*, *sumpsi* (sumsi), *sumptum* (sumtum), to take.

4. **V** is generally changed into its corresponding vowel, **u**: *volvo*, *vŏlūtum* (volvtum), to roll. If a vowel precedes, a contraction takes place—**a-u** becoming **au**, rarely **ō**; **o-u** becoming **ō**, and **u-u** becoming **ū**: *lăvo*, *lavtum*, *lautum*, *lōtum*, to wash; *mŏveo*, *movtum*, *moutum*, *mōtum*, to move; *jŭvo*, *juvtum*, *juutum*, *jūtum*, to assist.

---

[1] Sometimes also *gu*: *exstinguo*, *exstinxi*, *exstinctum*, to extinguish. *Vīvo*, *vixi*, *victum*, to live; *fluo*, *fluxi*, *fluxum*, to flow; and *struo*, *struxi*, *structum*, to build, form the Perfect and Supine from stems in *v* for *gv*.

[2] Stem *mit* (251, 6); in *misi*, *t* is dropped, but in *missum* assimilated.

CLASSIFICATION OF VERBS.[1]

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Class I.—Stem in a: Perfect in vi or ui.

I. Stem in a: Perfect in vi.

259. Principal Parts in: **o, āre, āvi, ātum.**

These endings belong to most verbs of this conjugation. The following are examples:

Dōno,	donāre,	donāvi,	donātum,	*to bestow.*
Hŏnōro,	honorāre,	honorāvi,	honorātum,	*to honor.*
Lībĕro,	liberāre,	liberāvi,	liberātum,	*to free.*
Nōmĭno,	nomināre,	nomināvi,	nominātum,	*to name.*
Pugno,	pugnāre,	pugnāvi,	pugnātum,	*to fight.*
Spēro,	sperāre,	sperāvi,	sperātum,	*to hope.*
Vŏco,	vocāre,	vocāvi,	vocātum,	*to call.*

II. Stem in a: Perfect in ui.

260. Principal Parts in: **o, āre, ui, ĭtum.**[2]

Crĕpo,	crepāre,	crepui,	crepĭtum.	*to creak.*

Incrĕpo, āre, ui (āvi), ĭtum (ātum); discrĕpo, āre, ui (āvi) ——.

Cŭbo,	cubāre,	cubui,	cubĭtum,	*to recline.*[3]
Dŏmo,	domāre,	domui,	domĭtum,	*to tame.*
Enĕco,	ēnecāre,	enĕcui,	enectum,	*to kill.*[4]
Frĭco,	fricāre,	fricui,	frictum, / fricātum,	*to rub.*
Mĭco,	micāre	micui,	———	*to glitter.*

Dīmĭco, āre, āvi (ui), ātum; ēmĭco, āre, ui, ātum.

---

[1] The Perfect Formation is selected as the special basis of this classification, because the irregularities of the other principal parts are less important and can be readily associated with this formation. In this classification the regular or usual formation is first given with a few examples, then complete lists (1) of all the simple verbs which deviate from this formation, and (2) of such compounds as deviate in any important particular from their simple verbs.

[2] Note deviations in the Supine. The ending *ui* may have been formed from *avi* by dropping *a* and changing *v* to *u*, and the ending *ĭtum* from *atum* by weakening *a* to *i*. See 213, foot-note. But in some of these verbs the Perfect and Supine may be formed from consonant stems. Thus *sŏnui, sŏnĭtum* may be formed from the liquid stem *sŏn*, in *sŏno, sonĕre*, like *ălui, ălĭtum* from the liquid stem *ăl* in *ălo, ălĕre*, to nourish. See 258.

[3] Compounds which insert *m*, as *accumbo*, etc., are of Conj. III. See 275, I.

[4] The simple *nĕco* is regular, and even in the compound the forms in *āvi* and *ātum* occur.

Plĭco,	plicāre,	plicui, plicāvi,	plicĭtum, plicātum,	*to fold.*

Dŭplĭco, multĭplĭco, rĕplĭco, and *supplĭco,* are regular: *āre, āvi, ātum.*

Sĕco,	secāre,	secui,	sectum,	*to cut.*

Participle, *secātūrus.*

Sŏno,	sonāre,	sonui,	sonĭtum,	*to sound.*

Participle, *sonātūrus.* Most compounds want Sup. *Rĕsŏno* has Perf. *resonāvi.*

Tŏno	tonāre,	tonui,	(tonĭtum),	*to thunder.*
Vĕto,	vetāre,	vetui,	vetĭtum,	*to forbid.*

1. *Pōto, āre, āvi, ātum,* to drink, has also *pōtum* in the supine.
2. The Passive Participles *cēnātus* and *jūrātus* (*cēno,* to dine, and *jūro,* to swear) are active in signification, *having dined,* etc. *Pōtus,* from *pōto,* is also sometimes active.

Class II.—Perfect in i.

I. Perfect in i: with Reduplication.

261. Principal Parts in **o, ăre, i, tum.**

Do,	dăre,	dĕdi,	dătum,	*to give.*
Sto,	stāre,	stĕti,	stătum,	*to stand.*

1. In *do* the characteristic *a* is short by exception: *dăbam, dăbo, dărem,* etc. Four compounds of *do—circumdo, pessumdo, sătisdo,* and *vēnumdo*—are conjugated like the simple verb; the rest are dissyllabic and of the Third Conj. (273, I.) The basis of the dissyllabic compounds is *do,* to place, originally distinct from *do,* to give.
2. Compounds of *sto* are conjugated like the simple verb, if the first part is a dissyllable, otherwise they take *stĭti* for *stĕti: adsto, adstāre, adstĭti, adstātum. Disto* wants Perf. and Sup.

II. Perfect in i: with Lengthened Stem-Vowel.

262. Principal Parts in: **o, āre, i, ātum,** *or* **tum.**

Jŭvo,	juvāre,	jūvi,	jūtum,	*to assist.*

Participle *jŭvātūrus,* but in compounds *jūtūrus* is also used.

Lăvo,	lavāre,	lāvi,	lavātum, lautum, lōtum,	*to wash.*

1. In poetry *lăvo* is sometimes of Conj. III.: *lăvo, lavĕre, lāvi,* etc.
2. In *jŭvo* and *lăvo,* the stems are *juv* and *lav,* strengthened in the Present to *juva* and *lava.* See 251, 3; also 258, II. 4.

263. Deponent Verbs.

In this conjugation deponent verbs are entirely regular.

Cōnor,	conāri,	conātus sum,	*to endeavor.*
Hortor,	hortāri,	hortātus sum,	*to exhort.*
Mīror,	mirāri,	mirātus sum,	*to admire.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

CLASS I.—STEM IN e: PERFECT IN vi OR ui.

I. STEM IN e: PERFECT IN vi.

264. Principal Parts in: **eo, ēre, ēvi, ētum.**[1]

These endings belong to the following verbs:

Compleo,	complēre,	complēvi,	complētum,	*to fill.*

So other compounds of *pleo*; as *expleo, impleo.*

Dēleo,	delēre,	delēvi,	delētum,	*to destroy.*
Fleo,	flēre,	flēvi,	flētum,	*to weep.*
Neo,	nēre,	nēvi,	nētum,	*to spin.*

1. *Abŏleo, ăbolēre, abolēvi, abolĭtum,* to destroy, is compounded of *ăb* and *oleo* (not used). The other compounds of *oleo* generally end in *esco*, and are of the third conjugation. See *ăbŏlesco*, 277.

2. *Vieo, viēre, viētum,* to weave, bend, is rare, except in the participle *viētus.*

II. STEM IN e: PERFECT IN ui.

265. Principal Parts in: **eo, ēre, ui, ĭtum.**

These endings belong to most verbs of this conjugation. The following are examples:

Dēbeo,	debēre,	debui,	debĭtum,	*to owe.*
Hăbeo,	habēre,	habui,	habĭtum,	*to have.*
Mŏneo,	monēre,	monui,	monĭtum,	*to advise.*
Nŏceo,	nocēre,	nocui,	nocĭtum,	*to hurt.*
Pāreo,	parēre,	parui,	parĭtum,	*to obey.*
Plăceo,	placēre,	placui,	placĭtum,	*to please.*
Tăceo,	tacēre,	tacui,	tacĭtum,	*to be silent.*

266. SUPINE WANTING.—Many verbs with the Perfect in **ui**, want the Supine. The following are the most important:

Candeo, *to shine.*	Mădeo, *to be wet.*	Sorbeo, *to swallow.*
Egeo, *to want.*	Niteo, *to shine.*	Splendeo, *to shine.*
Emĭneo, *to stand forth.*	Oleo, *to smell.*	Stŭdeo, *to study.*
Flōreo, *to bloom.*	Palleo, *to be pale.*	Stŭpeo, *to be amazed.*
Frondeo, *to bear leaves.*	Păteo, *to be open.*	Tĭmeo, *to fear.*
Horreo, *to shudder.*	Rŭbeo, *to be red.*	Torpeo, *to be torpid.*
Lăteo, *to be hid.*	Sĭleo, *to be silent.*	Vĭreo, *to be green.*

267. PERFECT AND SUPINE WANTING.—Some verbs, derived mostly from adjectives, want both Perfect and Supine. The following are the most important:

Albeo, *to be white.*	Cāneo, *to be gray.*	Hĕbeo, *to be blunt.*
Calveo, *to be bald.*	Flāveo, *to be yellow.*	Hūmeo, *to be moist.*

[1] We class *ēvi* and *ētum*, though belonging to but few verbs, with the regular formations, because they are the full and original forms from which the more common *ui* and *ĭtum* are derived. See 218, foot-note.

Immĭneo, *to threaten.*	Maereo, *to be sad.*	Renĭdeo, *to shine.*
Lacteo, *to suck.*	Polleo, *to be powerful.*	Squāleo, *to be filthy.*

CLASS II.—STEM IN **c, n, r,** OR **s**: PERFECT IN **ui.**

Present Stem adds **e.** See 251, 3.

268. Principal Parts in: **eo, ēre, ui, tum,** *or* **sum.**

These endings belong to the following verbs:

Censeo,	censēre,	censui,	censum,	*to think.*

Perf. Part. *census* and *censĭtus.*—*Percenseo* wants Sup.: *rĕcenseo* has *recensum* and *recensĭtum.*

Dŏceo,	docēre,	docui,	doctum,	*to teach.*
Misceo,	miscēre,	miscui,	{ mistum, mixtum,	*to mix.*
Tĕneo,	tenēre,	tenui,	tentum,	*to hold.*

Dētĭneo, ēre, ui, detentum; so *obtĭneo* and *rĕtĭneo;* other compounds seldom have Sup.

Torreo,	torrēre,	torrui,	tostum,	*to roast.*

CLASS III.—STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN **si** OR **i.**[1]

269. STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN **si.**

Present Stem adds **e.** See 251, 3.

I. Principal Parts in: **eo, ēre, si, sum.**

Algeo,	algēre,	alsi,	——	*to be cold.*
Ardeo,	ardēre,	arsi,	arsum,	*to burn.*
Cōnīveo,	conīvēre,	{ conīvi, conixi,	——	*to wink at.*
Frīgeo,	frigēre,	frixi (*rare*),	——	*to be cold.*
Fulgeo,	fulgēre,	fulsi,	——	*to shine.*

Poetic *fulgo, fulgĕre,* etc.

Haereo,[2]	haerēre,	haesi,	haesum,	*to stick.*
Jŭbeo,	jubēre,	jussi,	jussum,	*to order.*
Lūceo,	lucēre,	luxi,	——	*to shine.*
Lūgeo,	lugēre,	luxi,	——	*to mourn.*
Măneo,	manēre,	mansi,	mansum,	*to remain.*
Mulceo,	mulcēre,	mulsi,	mulsum,	*to caress.*

Compounds have *mulsum* or *mulctum.*

Mulgeo,	mulgēre,	mulsi,	mulsum,	*to milk.*
Rīdeo,	rīdēre,	rīsi,	rīsum,	*to laugh.*
Suādeo,	suadēre,	suāsi,	suāsum,	*to advise.*
Tergeo,	tergēre,	tersi,	tersum,	*to wipe.*

---

[1] For convenience of reference, a *General List* of all verbs involving irregularities will be found on page 328.

[2] The stem of *haereo* is *haes.* The Present adds *e* and changes *s* to *r* between two vowels. In *haesi* and *haesum, s* stands for *ss*—*haesi* for haes-si—and is therefore not changed. See 258, I. 5.

Tergo, of Conj. III., also occurs: *tergo, ĕre, si, sum.*

Turgeo,	turgēre,	tursi (*rare*),	——	*to swell.*
Urgeo (urgueo),	urgēre,	ursi,	——	*to press.*

1. *Cieo, ciēre, cīvi, cĭtum*, to arouse, has a kindred form, *cio, cīre, cīvi, cītum*, from which it seems to have obtained its perfect. In compounds the forms of the Fourth Conj. prevail, especially in the sense of *to call, call forth.*

2. For *Euphonic Changes* before *si* and *sum*, see 258, I.

II. Principal Parts in: **eo, ēre, si, tum.**

Augeo,	augēre,	auxi,	auctum,	*to increase.*
Indulgeo,	indulgēre,	indulsi,	indultum,	*to indulge.*
Torqueo,	torquēre,	torsi,	tortum,	*to twist.*

270. Stem in a Consonant: Perfect in i.

Present Stem adds **e.** See 251, 3.

I. With Reduplication.

Principal Parts in: **eo, ēre, i, sum.**

Mordeo,	mordēre,	mŏmordi,	morsum,	*to bite.*
Pendeo,	pendēre,	pĕpendi,	pensum,	*to hang.*
Spondeo,	spondēre,	spŏpondi,	sponsum,	*to promise.*
Tondeo,	tondēre,	tŏtondi,	tonsum,	*to shear.*

For *reduplication in compounds*, see 255, I. 4.

II. With Lengthened Stem-Vowel.

1. Principal Parts in: **eo, ēre, i, tum.**

Căveo,	cavēre,	cāvi,	cautum,	*to beware.*
Făveo,	favēre,	fāvi,	fautum,	*to favor.*
Fŏveo,	fovēre,	fōvi,	fōtum,	*to cherish.*
Mŏveo,	movēre,	mōvi,	mōtum,	*to move.*
Păveo,	pavēre,	pāvi,	——	*to fear.*
Vŏveo,	vovēre,	vōvi,	vōtum,	*to vow.*

2. Principal Parts in: **eo, ēre, i, sum.**

Sĕdeo,	sedēre,	sēdi,	sessum,	*to sit.*

So *circumsĕdeo* and *supersĕdeo*. Other compounds thus: *assĭdeo, ēre, assēdi, assessum;* but *dissĭdeo, praesĭdeo*, and *rĕsĭdeo*, want Supine.

Vĭdeo,	vĭdēre,	vīdi,	vīsum,	*to see.*

III. With Unchanged Stem.

Principal Parts in: **eo, ēre, i, sum.**[1]

Cōnīveo,	conīvēre,	conīvi, conixi,	——	*to wink at.*
Ferveo,	fervēre,	fervi, ferbui,	——	*to boil.*

[1] Supine Stem is wanting in most of these verbs.

Langueo,	languēre,	langui,	——	*to be languid.*
Lĭqueo,	liquēre,	liqui (licui),	——	*to be liquid.*
Prandeo,	prandēre,	prandi,	pransum,	*to dine.*

Participle, *pransus*, in an active sense, *having dined.*

Strīdeo,	strīdēre,	strīdi,	——	*to creak.*

271. Deponent Verbs.

1. *Regular.*

Lĭceor,	licēri,	licĭtus sum,	*to bid.*
Mĕreor,	merēri,	merĭtus sum,	*to deserve.*
Pollĭceor,	pollicēri,	pollicĭtus sum,	*to promise.*
Tueor,	tuēri,	tuĭtus sum,	*to protect.*
Vĕreor,	verēri,	verĭtus sum.	*to fear.*

2. *Irregular.*

Făteor,	fatēri,	fassus sum,	*to confess.*[1]
Mĕdeor,	medēri,	———	*to cure.*
Mĭsĕreor,	miserēri,	{ miserĭtus sum, misertus sum,	*to pity.*
Reor,	rēri,	rătus sum,	*to think.*

3. *Semi-Deponent,—Deponent in the Perfect.*

Audeo,	audēre,	ausus sum,	*to dare.*
Gaudeo,	gaudēre,	gavīsus sum,	*to rejoice.*
Sŏleo,	solēre,	solĭtus sum,	*to be accustomed.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Class I.—Stem in a Consonant: Perfect in **si** or **i**.

272. Stem in a Consonant: Perfect in **si**.

I. Principal Parts in: **o, io, ĕre, si, tum.**

These are the regular endings in verbs whose stems end in a consonant. The following are examples:[2]

Carpo,	carpĕre,	carpsi,	carptum,	*to pluck.*
Cingo,	cingĕre,	cinxi (*gsi*),	cinctum,	*to gird.*
Cŏquo,	coquĕre,	coxi,	coctum,	*to cook.*
Dēmo,	demĕre,	dempsi,	demptum,	*to take away.*
Dīco,	dicĕre,	dixi,	dictum,	*to say.*
Dūco,	ducĕre,	duxi,	ductum,	*to lead.*
Exstinguo,	exstinguĕre,	exstinxi,	exstinctum,[3]	*to extinguish.*
Gĕro,	gerĕre,	gessi,	gestum,	*to carry.*
Nūbo,	nubĕre,	nupsi,	nuptum,	*to marry.*
Rĕgo,	regĕre,	rexi,	rectum,	*to rule.*
Sūmo,	sumĕre,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	*to take.*
Traho,	trahĕre,	traxi,	tractum,	*to draw.*

[1] *Confĭteor*, *ēri*, *confessus*: so *prōfiteor*.
[2] For *Euphonic Changes*, see 258.
[3] So other compounds of *stinguo* (rare): *distinguo*, etc.

Ūro,	ūrĕre,	ussi,	ustum,	*to burn.*
Veho,	vehĕre,	vexi,	vectum,	*to carry.*
Vīvo,	vivĕre,	vixi,	victum,	*to live.*

1. Stem-Vowel in Compounds. See 255, II. 1.
Carpo: dē-cerpo, decerpĕre, decerpsi, decerptum, *to pluck off.*
Rĕgo: dī-rigo, dirigĕre, direxi, directum (214, I.), *to direct.*

Here *decerpo*, though it has not the same stem-vowel as the simple *carpo*, forms its principal parts precisely like the simple verb; but *dirigo* changes the stem-vowel in forming those parts, having *i* in the Pres., and *e* in the Perf. and Sup.

2. Compounds of Obsolete Verbs present the same vowel changes: *Lăcio* (obs.): al-licio, allicĕre, allexi, allectum (214, II.), *to allure.*

So *illĭcio, pellicio.* For *ēlicio*, see 275, I.

Spĕcio (obs.): a-spĭcio, aspicĕre, aspexi, aspectum, *to look at.*

II. Principal Parts in: **o, io, ĕre, si, sum.**[1]

Cēdo,	cedĕre,	cessi,	cessum,	*to yield.*
Claudo,	claudĕre,	clausi,	clausum,	*to close.*
Compounds have *u* for *au*: *conclūdo, exclūdo.*				
Dīvĭdo,	dividĕre,	divīsi,	divīsum,	*to divide.*
Evādo,	ēvadĕre,	evāsi,	evāsum,	*to evade.*
So other compounds of *vādo.* See 281.				
Fīgo,	figĕre,	fixi,	fixum,	*to fasten.*
Flecto,	flectĕre,	flexi,	flexum,	*to bend.*
Frendo,	frendĕre,	——	frēsum, fressum,	*to gnash.*
Laedo,	laedĕre,	laesi,	laesum,	*to hurt.*
Compounds have *i* for *ae*: *illīdo*, etc.				
Lūdo,	ludĕre,	lūsi,	lūsum,	*to play.*
Mergo,	mergĕre,	mersi,	mersum,	*to dip.*
Mitto,	mittĕre,	mīsi,	missum,	*to send.*
Necto,	nectĕre,	nexi, nexui,[2]	nexum,	*to bind.*
Pecto,	pectĕre,	pexi,	pexum,	*to comb.*
Plecto,	plectĕre,	plexi,	plexum,	*to plait.*
Plaudo,	plaudĕre,	plausi,	plausum,	*to applaud.*
So *applaudo;* other compounds have *o* for *au*: *explōdo*, etc.				
Prĕmo,	premĕre,	pressi,	pressum (258, I. 4),	*to press.*
Quătio,	quatĕre,	quassi,	quassum (258, I. 2),	*to shake.*
Compounds have *cu* for *qua*: *concŭtio*, etc.				
Rādo,	radĕre,	rāsi,	rāsum,	*to shave.*
Rōdo,	rodĕre,	rōsi,	rōsum,	*to gnaw.*
Spargo,	spargĕre,	sparsi,	sparsum,	*to scatter.*
Compounds generally have *e* for *a*: *aspergo, respergo.*				
Tergo,	tergĕre,	tersi,	tersum,	*to wipe off.*
Also *tergeo, tergēre* (Conj. II.); compounds take this form.				
Trūdo,	trudĕre,	trūsi,	trūsum,	*to thrust.*

[1] For *Euphonic Changes*, see 258.
[2] Compounds take this form in the Perfect.

273. Stem in a Consonant: Perfect in I.

I. With Reduplication.

1. Principal Parts in: **o, io, ĕre, i, tum.**

Abdo, abdĕre, abdĭdi, abdĭtum, *to hide.*

So all compounds of *do*, except those of Conj. I. (261): *addo*, *condo*, *crēdo*, *dēdo*, *ēdo*, *indo*, *obdo*, *perdo*, *prōdo*, *reddo*, *trādo*, *vendo;* but *abs-condo* generally drops reduplication: *abs-condi.*

Căno, canĕre, cĕcĭni, cantum, *to sing.*

Concĭno, ĕre, concĭnui, ——; so *occĭno* and *praecĭno;* other compounds want Perf. and Sup.

Crēdo, credĕre, credĭdi, credĭtum,[1] *to believe.*

Disco, discĕre, dĭdĭci, ——, *to learn.*

Do, *Conj. I.* *See* abdo, *above.*

Pango, pangĕre, pĕpĭgi, pactum, *to bargain.*

Pango, pangĕre, { panxi, pēgi, } { panctum, pactum, } *to fix in.*

Compingo, ĕre, compēgi, compactum; so also *impingo. Dēpango* wants Perf.; *rĕpango*, Perf. and Sup.

Părio, parĕre, pĕpĕri, partum, *to bring forth.*

Participle, *parĭtūrus;* compounds are of Conj. IV.

Pungo, pungĕre, pŭpŭgi, punctum, *to prick.*

Compounds thus *compungo, ĕre, compunxi, compunctum.*

Sisto, sistĕre, stĭti, stătum, *to place.*

Sisto seems to have been derived from *sto*, and forms the Perf. and Sup. after that analogy.—Compounds thus: *consisto, ĕre, constĭti, constĭtum;* but *circumstĕti* also occurs.

Tango, tangĕre, tĕtĭgi, tactum, *to touch.*

Compounds thus: *attingo, ĕre, attĭgi, attactum.*

Tendo, tendĕre, tĕtendi, { tentum, tensum, } *to stretch.*

Compounds drop reduplication and prefer Sup., *tentum*, but *dētendo* and *ostendo* have *tensum;* and *extendo*, *prōtendo*, and *rĕtendo*, have both forms.

Tollo, tollĕre, { tĕtŭli (*obs.*), sustŭli, } sublātum, *to raise.*

Attollo and *extollo* want Perf. and Sup.

Vendo, vendĕre, vendĭdi, vendĭtum,[1] *to sell.*

2. Principal Parts in: **o, ĕre, i, sum.**

Cădo, cadĕre, cĕcĭdi, cāsum, *to fall.*

Incĭdo, ĕre, incĭdi, incāsum; so *occĭdo* and *rĕcĭdo;* other compounds want supine.

---

[1] Explained as compound of *do;* see *abdo.*

Caedo,	caedĕre,	cĕcīdi,	caesum,	*to cut.*

Compounds thus: *concīdo, ĕre, concīdi, concīsum.*

Curro,	currĕre,	cŭcurri,	cursum,	*to run.*

Excurro and *praecurro* generally retain the reduplication, *excŭcurri, praecŭcurri;* other compounds generally drop it.

Fallo,	fallĕre,	fĕfelli,	falsum,	*to deceive.*

Rĕfello, ĕre, refelli, without Supine.

Parco,	parcĕre,	pĕperci (parsi),	parsum,	*to spare.*

Comparco, ĕre, comparsi, comparsum, also with *e* for *a: comperco, ĕre,* etc. *Imparco* and *rĕparco* want Perf. and Sup.

Pello,	pellĕre,	pĕpŭli,	pulsum,[1]	*to drive.*
Pendo,	pendĕre,	pĕpendi,	pensum,[1]	*to weigh.*
Posco,	poscĕre,	pŏposci,	——[2]	*to demand.*
Tendo,	tendĕre,	tĕtendi,	{ tentum, tensum,	*to stretch.*

Compounds drop reduplication and prefer Sup., *tentum,* but *detendo* and *ostendo* have *tensum;* and *extendo, protendo,* and *rĕtendo,* have both forms.

Tundo,	tundĕre,	tŭtŭdi,	{ tunsum, tūsum,	*to beat.*

Compounds drop reduplication and generally take *tūsum* in Sup.

II. With Lengthened Stem-Vowel.

1. Principal Parts in: **o, io, ĕre, i, tum.**

Ago,	ăgĕre,	ēgi,	actum,	*to drive.*

So *circumăgo* and *pĕrăgo; sătăgo* wants Perf. and Sup. Other compounds change *a* into *i* in the Pres.: *ăbĭgo, ĕre, abēgi, abactum;* but *coĭgo* becomes *cōgo, ĕre, coēgi, coactum,* and *deĭgo, dēgo, ĕre, dēgi,* without Sup. *Prōdĭgo* wants Sup., and *ambĭgo,* Perf. and Sup.

Căpio,	capĕre,	cēpi,	captum,	*to take.*

So *antecăpio;* other compounds thus: *accĭpio, ĕre, accēpi, acceptum.*

Emo,	ĕmĕre,	ēmi,	emptum,	*to buy.*

So *coĕmo;* other compounds thus: *ădĭmo, ĕre, adēmi, ademptum.*

Făcio,	facĕre,	fēci,	factum,	*to make.*

Passive irregular: *fio, fĭĕri, factus sum.* See 294.

So *sătisfacio* and compounds of *facio* with verbs, but compounds with prepositions thus: *confĭcio, confĭcĕre, confēci, confectum,* with regular Pass., *conficior, confĭci, confectus sum.*—Compounds of *facio* with nouns and adjectives are of Conj. I.: *signĭfĭco, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Frango,	frangĕre,	frēgi,	fractum,	*to break.*

Compounds thus: *confringo, ĕre, confrēgi, confractum.*

---

[1] Compounds drop reduplication, 255, I. 4.

[2] Compounds retain reduplication, 255, I. 4.

Fŭgio,	fugĕre,	fūgi,	fugĭtum,	*to flee.*
Jăcio,	jacĕre,	jēci,	jactum,	*to throw.*

Sŭperjacio has *jactum* or *jectum* in Sup.; other compounds thus: *abjĭcio, ĕre, abjēci, abjectum.*

Lĕgo,	legĕre,	lēgi,	lectum,	*to read.*

So compounds, except (1) *collĭgo, ĕre, collēgi, collectum;* so *dēlĭgo, ēlĭgo, sēlĭgo:* —(2) *dīlĭgo, ĕre, dilexi, dilectum;* so *intellĭgo, neglĭgo.*

Linquo,	linquĕre,	līqui,	——	*to leave.*

Compounds with Sup.: *rĕlinquo, ĕre, relīqui, relictum.*

Rumpo,	rumpĕre,	rūpi,	ruptum,	*to burst.*
Scăbo,	scabĕre,	scābi,	——	*to scratch.*
Vinco,	vincĕre,	vīci,	victum,	*to conquer.*

2. Principal Parts in : **o, io, ĕre, i, sum.**

Edo,	ĕdĕre,	ēdi,	ēsum,	*to eat.*
Fŏdio,	fodĕre,	fōdi,	fossum,	*to dig.*
Fundo,	fundĕre,	fūdi,	fūsum,	*to pour.*

III. With Unchanged Stem.

Principal Parts in : **o, ĕre, i, sum.**[1]

Accendo,	accendĕre,	accendi,	accensum,	*to kindle.*

So other compounds of *cando* (obsolete): *incendo, succendo.*

Cūdo,	cudĕre,	cūdi,	cūsum,	*to forge.*
Dēfendo,	defendĕre,	defendi,	defensum,	*to defend.*

So other compounds of *fendo* (obsolete): *offendo,* etc.

Findo,	findĕre,	fĭdi (findi),	fissum,	*to part.*
Ico,	īcĕre,	īci,	ictum,	*to strike.*
Mando,	mandĕre,	mandi,	mansum,	*to chew.*
Pando,	Pandĕre,	pandi,	passum, pansum,	*to open.*
Pinso (pīso),	pinsĕre,	pinsi, pinsui,	pinsĭtum, pistum, pinsum,	*to pound.*
Prehendo,	prehendĕre,	prehendi,	prehensum,	*to grasp.*

Often written *prendo, prendĕre,* etc.

Scando,	scandĕre,	scandi,	scansum,	*to climb.*

Compounds have *e* for *a: ascendo, descendo.*

Scindo,	scindĕre,	scĭdi,	scissum,	*to rend.*
Solvo,	solvĕre,	solvi,	sŏlūtum,[2]	*to loose.*
Vello,	vellĕre,	velli (vulsi),	vulsum,	*to pluck.*

Compounds in good use generally have *velli.*

Verro,	verrĕre,	verri,	versum,	*to brush.*
Verto,	vertĕre,	verti,	versum,	*to turn.*

Compounds of *dē, prae, rē,* are generally deponent in the *Pres., Imperf.,* and *Future.*

---

[1] For euphonic changes before *s*, see 258, I.

[2] *V* is here changed to its corresponding vowel *u: solūtum* for *solvtum.*

Vīso,	visĕre,	vīsi,	vīsum,	*to visit.*
Volvo,	volvĕre,	volvi,	vŏlūtum.[1]	*to roll.*

Class II.—Stem in a Consonant: Perfect in **ui.**

274. Stem in a Liquid—l, m, n, r: Perfect in ui.

Principal Parts in: **o, ĕre, ui, tum,** or **ĭtum.**

Alo,	ălĕre,	alui,	alĭtum, altum,	*to nourish.*

Cello, *obsolete.* *See* excello, *below.*

Cŏlo,	colĕre,	colui,	cultum,	*to cultivate.*
Consŭlo,	consulĕre,	consului,	consultum,	*to consult.*
Excello,	excellĕre,	excellui (*rare*),	——	*to excel.*

Other compounds of *cello* want Perf. and Sup., except *percello, percellĕre, percŭli, perculsum.*

Frĕmo,	fremĕre,	fremui,	fremĭtum,	*to rage.*
Fŭro,	furĕre,	furui,	——	*to rage.*
Gĕmo,	gemĕre,	gemui,	gemĭtum,	*to groan.*
Gigno,	gignĕre,	gĕnui (*f. gĕno*),	genĭtum,	*to beget.*
Mŏlo,	molĕre,	molui,	molĭtum,	*to grind.*
Occŭlo,	occulĕre,	occului,	occultum,	*to hide.*
Sĕro,	serĕre,	serui,	sertum,	*to connect.*
Trĕmo,	tremĕre,	tremui,	——	*to tremble.*
Vŏmo,	vomĕre,	vomui,	vomĭtum,	*to vomit.*

275. Stems in b, p, c, s, t, x: Perfect in ui.

I. Principal Parts in: **o, io, ĕre, ui, tum,** or **ĭtum.**

Accumbo,	accumbĕre,	accŭbui,	accubĭtum,	*to recline.*

So other compounds of *cumbo, cŭbo.* See *cubo,* 260.

Compesco,	compescĕre,	compescui,	——	*to restrain.*

Cumbo *for* cŭbo, *in compounds: see* accumbo.

Depso,	depsĕre,	depsui,	depsĭtum, depstum,	*tŏ knead.*
Elĭcio,	ēlicĕre,	elicui,	elicĭtum,	*to elicit.*

Other compounds of *lăcio,* thus: *allĭcio, ĕre, allexi, allectum.*

Pinso,	pinsĕre,	pinsui, pinsi,	pinsĭtum, pistum, pinsum,	*to crush.*
Pōno,	ponĕre,	pŏsui,	pŏsĭtum,	*to place.*
Răpio,	rapĕre,	rapui,	raptum,	*to snatch.*

Compounds thus: *corrĭpio, corripĕre, corripui, correptum.*

Sterto,	stertĕre,	stertui,	——	*to snore.*
Strĕpo,	strepĕre,	strepui,	strepĭtum,	*to make a noise.*
Texo,	texĕre,	texui,	textum,	*to weave.*

[1] See foot-note, p. 119.

II. Principal Parts in: **o, ĕre, sui, sum.**

Mĕto,	metĕre,	messui,	messum,	*to reap.*
Necto,	nectĕre,	{ nexi, nexui,	nexum,	*to bind.*

1. The Perfect in *sui* is a double formation, *si* enlarged to *sui.*

III. Many Inceptives in **esco** form the Perfect in **ui** from their primitives. See 282, I. 2.

Class III.—Stem in a Vowel: Perfect in **vi** or **i.**

276. Stem in a: Perfect in **vi.**

Present stem adds **sc** *or* **n.** See 251, 2 and 4.

Invĕtĕrasco,[1]	inveterascĕre,	inveterāvi,	inveterātum,	*to grow old.*
Pasco,[1]	pascĕre,	pāvi,	pastum,	*to feed.*
Sterno,[2]	sternĕre,	strāvi,	strātum,	*to strew.*
Vĕtĕrasco,[1]	veterascĕre,	veterāvi,	——	*to grow old.*

1. *Sĕro,* stem *sa* (251, 7), thus:

Sĕro,	serĕre,	sēvi,	sătum,	*to sow.*

Compounds thus: *consĕro, ĕre, consēvi, consĭtum.*

277. Stem in e: Perfect in **vi.**

Present Stem adds **sc** *or* **n.** See 251.

Abŏlesco,[3]	ăbolescĕre,	abolēvi,	abolĭtum,	*to disappear.*

So *ĭnŏlesco;* but *ădŏlesco* has Supine *adultum; exŏlesco, exolĕtum; obsŏlesco, obsolĕtum.*

Cerno,[4]	cernĕre,	crēvi,	crētum,	*to decide.*
Cresco,	crescĕre,	crēvi,	crētum,	*to grow.*

Incresco and *succresco* want Supine.

Quiesco,[3]	quiescĕre,	quiēvi,	quiētum,	*to rest.*
Sperno,[4]	spernĕre,	sprēvi,	sprētum,	*to spurn.*
Suesco,[3]	suescĕre,	suēvi,	suētum,	*to become accustomed.*

278. Stem in i: Perfect in **vi.**

Cŭpio,	cupĕre,	cupīvi,	cupītum,	*to desire.*
Lĭno,[5]	linĕre,	līvi *or* lēvi,	lĭtum,	*to smear.*
Săpio,	sapĕre,	sapīvi, sapui,	——	*to taste.*

Compounds have *i* for *a,* as *rĕsĭpio. Dĕsĭpio* wants Perf. and Sup.

---

[1] Stem *invĕtĕra,* etc., strengthened by adding *sc.* See 251, 4. The stem of *pasco* is *pa, pas.*

[2] Stem *stra,* by metathesis *star,* lengthened to *starn* (251, 2). The vowel *a* is then lightened to *e* before the two consonants *rn.*

[3] Stems *ăbŏle, quie,* etc.

[4] Stems *cre* and *spre,* by metathesis *cer* and *sper,* lengthened to *cern* and *spern.*

[5] Present adds *n.*

Sīno,[1]	sinĕre,	sīvi,	sĭtum,	*to permit.*
Tĕro,[2]	terĕre,	trīvi,	trītum,	*to rub.*

1. A few Inchoatives in *isco* form the Perfect in *vi* from their primitives. See 282, I. 1.

2. The following verbs have **i-*stems*** in the Perfect and Supine, but consonant stems in the Present.

Arcesso,	arcessĕre,	arcessīvi,	arcessītum,	*to call for.*
Căpesso,	capessĕre,	capessīvi,	capessītum,	*to lay hold of.*
Făcesso,	facessĕre,	facessīvi, facessi,	facessītum,	*to make.*
Incesso,	incessĕre,	incessīvi *or* -cessi, ——		*to attack.*
Lăcesso,	lacessĕre,	lacessīvi,	lacessītum,	*to provoke.*
Pĕto,	petĕre,	petīvi,	petītum,	*to ask.*
Quaero,	quaerĕre,	quaesīvi,	quaesītum,	*to seek.*

Compounds thus: *acquīro, ĕre, acquisīvi, acquisītum.*

Rŭdo,	rudĕre,	rudīvi,	rudītum,	*to bray.*

3. *Nosco* and its compounds form the Perfect in **vi**.

Nosco,	noscĕre,	nōvi,	nōtum,	*to know.*

So *ignosco.*—*Agnosco* and *cognosco* have *ĭtum* in Sup., *agnĭtum; dignosco* and *internosco* want Supine.

279. Stem in u: Perfect in i.

Principal Parts in: **o, ĕre, i, tum.**

The following are examples:

Acuo,	ăcuĕre,	acui,	acūtum,	*to sharpen.*
Arguo,	arguĕre,	argui,	argūtum,	*to convict.*

Coarguo and *rĕdarguo* want the Supine.

Imbuo,	imbuĕre,	imbui,	imbūtum,	*to imbue.*
Mĭnuo,	minuĕre,	minui,	minūtum,	*to diminish.*
Ruo,	ruĕre,	rui,	rŭtum,	*to fall.*

Part. *ruĭtūrus.*—*Corruo* and *irruo* want Sup.

Stătuo,	statuĕre,	stătui,	statūtum,	*to place.*

Compounds change *a* into *i: constĭtuo.*

Trĭbuo,	tribuĕre,	tribui,	tribūtum,	*to impart.*

1. *Fluo* and *struo* have the Perfect in **xi**.

Fluo,	fluĕre,	fluxi,	fluxum,	*to flow.*
Struo,	struĕre,	struxi,	structum,	*to build.*

280. Supine wanting.—The following verbs, with the Perfect in **si** or **i**, want the Supine:

---

[1] Present adds *n*.

[2] Stem *tri*, by metathesis and change of vowel *ter*.

Ango, ĕre, anxi, *to strangle.*
Annuo, ĕre, i, *to assent.*

So other compounds of *nuo*, but *abnuo* has Part. *abnuitūrus.*

Bătuo, ĕre, i, *to beat.*
Bĭbo, ĕre, i, *to drink.*
Congruo, ĕre, i, *to agree.*
Ingruo, ĕre, i, *to assail.*
Lambo, ĕre, i, *to lick.*
Luo, ĕre, i, *to wash.*

Part. luitūrus. Compounds—*abluo, alluo*, etc.—have Sup. *lūtum.*

Mĕtuo, ĕre, i, *to fear.*
Ningo, ĕre, ninxi, *to snow.*
Pluo, ĕre, i *or* vi, *to rain.*
Psallo, ĕre, i, *to play on a stringed instrument.*
Sīdo, ĕre, i, *to sit down.*

Perf. and Sup. generally supplied from *sĕdeo*; hence *sēdi, sessum.* So in compounds.

Strīdo, ĕre, i, *to creak.*

Also *strīdeo, ēre* (Conj. II.).

Sternuo, ĕre, i, *to sneeze.*

281. Perfect and Supine wanting.—Some verbs want both Perfect and Supine:

Clango, *to clang.*
Claudo, *to be lame.*
Fătisco, *to gape.*
Glisco, *to grow.*
Hisco, *to gape.*
Stinguo, *to quench;* but *distinguo, ĕre, distinxi, distinctum;* so *exstinguo.*
Temno, *to despise;* but *contemno, ĕre, contempsi, contemptum.*
Vădo, *to go.* See ēvādo, 272, II.
Vergo, *to incline.*

1. For Inceptives, see 282, II.

282. Inceptives.

Inceptives end in **sco**, and denote the beginning of an action. When formed from verbs, they are called *Verbal Inceptives*, and when formed from nouns or adjectives, *Denominative Inceptives.*

I. Verbal Inceptives.—Most verbal inceptives want the *Supine*, but take the *Perfect* of their primitives:

Acesco	(*ăceo*),	ăcescĕre,	acui,	———	*to become sour.*
Aresco	(*āreo*),	ārescĕre,	arui,	———	*to become dry.*
Călesco	(*căleo*),	calescĕre,	calui,	———	*to become warm.*
Flōresco	(*flōreo*),	florescĕre,	florui,	———	*to begin to bloom.*
Tĕpesco	(*tĕpeo*),	tepescĕre,	tĕpui,	———	*to become warm.*
Vīresco	(*vīreo*),	virescĕre,	vīrui,	———	*to become green.*

1. The following take the Perfect and Supine of their primitives:

Abŏlesco	(*ăb, ŏleo*),	ĕre,	ăbolēvi,	abolĭtum,[1]	*to disappear.*
Coălesco	(*cŏn, ălo*),	ĕre,	coălui,	coalĭtum,	*to coalesce.*
Concŭpisco	(*con, cŭpio*),	ĕre,	concupīvi,	concupītum,	*to desire.*
Convălesco	(*con, văleo*),	ĕre,	convălui,	convalĭtum,	*to grow strong.*
Exardesco	(*ex, ardeo*),	ĕre,	exarsi,	exarsum,	*to burn.*
Invĕtĕrasco	(*invĕtĕro*),	ĕre,	inveterāvi,	inveterātum,	*to grow old.*
Obdormisco	(*ŏb, dormio*),	ĕre,	obdormīvi,	obdormītum,	*to fall asleep.*

[1] So *ĭnŏlesco;* but *ădŏlesco* has Sup. *adultum; exŏlesco, exolētum; obsŏlesco, obsolētum.*

Rĕvīvisco	(*rĕ, vīvo*),	ĕre, revixi,	revictum,	*to revive.*
Scisco	(*scio*),	ĕre, scīvi,	scītum,	*to enact.*

II. Denominative Inceptives.—Most denominative inceptives want both Perfect and Supine. Thus

Dītesco	(*dīves*),	*to grow rich.*	Mītesco	(*mītis*),	*to grow mild.*
Dulcesco	(*dulcis*),	*to become sweet.*	Mollesco	(*mollis*),	*to grow soft.*
Grandesco	(*grandis*),	*to grow large.*	Puĕrasco	(*puer*),	*to become a boy.*

1. The following have the Perfect in **ui**:

Crēbresco	(*crēber*),	ĕre,	crēbrui,	*to become frequent.*
Dūresco	(*dūrus*),	ĕre,	dūrui,	*to become hard.*
Innōtesco	(*ĭn, nōtus*),	ĕre,	innōtui,	*to become known.*
Macresco	(*măcer*),	ĕre,	macrui,	*to become lean.*
Mātūresco	(*mātūrus*),	ĕre,	mātūrui,	*to ripen.*
Nigresco	(*nĭger*),	ĕre,	nigrui,	*to become black.*
Obmūtesco	(*ŏb, mūtus*),	ĕre,	obmūtui,	*to grow dumb.*
Recrūdesco	(*rĕ, crūdus*),	ĕre,	recrūdui,	*to bleed afresh.*
Vīlesco	(*vīlis*),	ĕre,	vīlui,	*to become worthless.*

283. Deponent Verbs.

Amplector,	i,	amplexus sum,	*to embrace.*

So *complector*, *circumplector*.

Apiscor,	i,	aptus sum,	*to obtain.*

Adĭpiscor, i, ădeptus sum; so *indĭpiscor.*

Commĭniscor,	i,	commentus sum,	*to devise.*

Rĕmĭniscor wants Perf.

Expergiscor,	i,	experrectus sum,	*to awake.*
Fătiscor,	i,	———	*to gape.*

Dēfĕtiscor, i, dēfessus sum.

Fruor,	frui,	fructus sum, / fruĭtus sum,	*to enjoy.*

Part. *fruitūrus.*

Fungor,	i,	functus sum,	*to perform.*
Grădior,	i,	gressus sum,	*to walk.*

Compounds thus: *aggrĕdior, i, aggressus sum.*

Irascor,	i,	———	*to be angry.*
Lābor,	i,	lapsus sum,	*to fall.*
Lĭquor,	i,	———	*to melt.*
Lŏquor,	i,	locūtus sum,	*to speak.*

Mĭniscor, *obsolete*; *see* commĭniscor.

Mŏrior,	i (īri, *rare*),	mortuus sum,	*to die.*

Part. *morĭtūrus.*

Nanciscor,	i,	nactus (nanctus) sum,	*to obtain.*
Nascor,	i,	nātus sum,	*to be born.*

Part. *nascĭtūrus.*

Nītor,	i,	nīsus sum, / nixus sum,	*to strive.*
Oblīviscor,	i,	oblītus sum,	*to forget.*

Păciscor,	i,	pactus sum,	*to bargain.*
Pătior,	i,	passus sum,	*to suffer.*

Perpĕtior, i, perpessus sum.

Prŏfĭciscor,	i,	profectus sum,	*to set out.*
Quĕror,	i,	questus sum,	*to complain.*
Rĕmĭniscor,	i,	———	*to remember.*
Ringor,	i,	———	*to growl.*
Sĕquor,	i,	secūtus sum,	*to follow.*
Tuor, *antiquated form for tueor*, 271, 1.			
Ulciscor,	i,	ultus sum,	*to avenge.*
Utor,	i,	ūsus sum,	*to use.*
Vertor; *see* dēvertor, etc., under *verto*, 273, III.			
Vescor,	i,	———	*to eat.*

Semi-Deponent.

Fīdo,	fidĕre,	fīsus sum,	*to trust.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Class I.—Stem in **i**: Perfect in **vi**.

284. Principal Parts in: **io, īre, īvi, ītum.**

The following are examples:

Fīnio,	finīre,	finīvi,	finītum,	*to finish.*
Lēnio,	lenīre,	lenīvi,	lenītum,	*to alleviate.*
Mūnio,	munīre,	munīvi,	munītum,	*to fortify.*
Pūnio,	punīre,	punīvi,	punītum,	*to punish.*
Scio,	scīre,	scīvi,	scītum,	*to know.*
Sĕpĕlio,	sepelīre,	sepelīvi,	sepultum,[1]	*to bury.*
Sītio,	sitīre,	sitīvi,	———	*to thirst.*
Vāgio,	vagīre,	vagīvi,	———	*to cry.*

1. *V* is often dropped in the Perfect: *audii* for *audīvi.* See 234, 1.

2. Desideratives (332, III.),—except *ēsŭrio, īre, —, ītum; nuptŭrio, īre, īvi,* and *partŭrio, īre, īvi,*—want both Perf. and Sup. Also a few others:

Balbūtio,	*to stammer.*	Fĕrōcio,	*to be fierce.*	Sāgio,	*to be wise.*
Caecūtio,	*to be blind.*	Gannio,	*to bark.*	Sŭperbio,	*to be proud.*
Fĕrio,	*to strike.*	Ineptio,	*to trifle.*	Tussio,	*to cough.*

Class II.—Stem in **c, l,** or **r**: Perfect in **ui.**

Present Stem adds **i.** See 251, 3.

285. Principal Parts in: **io, īre, ui, tum.**

Amĭcio,	ămicīre,	amicui (xi),	amictum,	*to clothe.*
Apĕrio,	ăpĕrīre,	aperui,	apertum,	*to open.*
Opĕrio,	ŏperīre,	operui,	opertum,	*to cover.*
Sălio,	salīre,	salui (ii),	(saltum),	*to leap.*

Compounds thus: *dēsĭlio, īre, ui (ii), (desultum).*

[1] Supine irregular.

CLASS III.—STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN **si** OR **i**.

286. STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN **si**.

I. Principal Parts in: **io, īre, si, tum.**

Farcio,	farcīre,	farsi,	{ fartum, farctum,	*to stuff.*

Compounds thus: *confercio, īre, confersi, confertum.*

Fulcio,	fulcīre,	fulsi,	fultum,	*to prop.*
Haurio,[1]	haurīre,	hausi,	haustum, hausum,	*to draw.*
Sancio,	sancīre,	sanxi,	{ sancītum, sanctum,	*to ratify.*
Sarcio,	sarcīre,	sarsi,	sartum,	*to patch.*
Sēpio,	sepīre,	sepsi,	septum,	*to hedge in.*
Vincio,	vincīre,	vinxi,	vinctum,	*to bind.*

II. Principal Parts in: **io, īre, si, sum.**

Raucio,	raucīre,	rausi,	rausum,	*to be hoarse.*
Sentio,	sentīre,	sensi,	sensum,[2]	*to feel.*

287. STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN **i**.

I. WITH LENGTHENED STEM-VOWEL.

Vĕnio,	venīre,	vēni,	ventum,	*to come.*

So compounds: *advenio, convenio, dēvenio, invenio, obvenio, pervenio,* etc.

II. WITH UNCHANGED STEM.

Compĕrio,	comperīre,	compĕri,	compertum,	*to learn.*
Rĕpĕrio,	reperīre,	repĕri,	repertum,	*to find.*

288. DEPONENT VERBS.

1. *Regular.*

Blandior,	īri,	blandītus sum,	*to flatter.*
Largior,	īri,	largītus sum,	*to bestow.*
Mentior,	īri,	mentītus sum,	*to lie.*
Mōlior,	īri,	molītus sum,	*to strive.*
Partior,	īri,	partītus sum,	*to divide.*

Impertior, īri, impertītus sum; so *dispertior.*

Pŏtior,[3]	īri,	potītus sum,	*to obtain.*
Sortior,	īri,	sortītus sum,	*to draw lots.*

2. *Irregular.*

Assentior,[4]	īri,	assensus sum,	*to assent.*

---

[1] The stem of *haurio* is *haus*. The Present adds *i* and changes *s* to *r* between two vowels. In *hausi* and *hausum*, *s* stands for *ss*—*hausi* for *haus-si*—and is therefore not changed. See 258, I. 5.

[2] Compound *assentio* has a deponent form *assentior*. See 288, 2.

[3] In the Pres. Ind. and Subj., forms of Conj. III. occur.

[4] Compounded of *ăd* and *sentio*. See *sentio*, 286, II.

Expĕrior,	īri,	expertus sum,	*to try.*
Mētior,	īri,	mensus sum,	*to measure.*
Oppĕrior,	īri,	oppertus sum, / opperītus sum,	*to await.*
Ordior,	īri,	orsus sum,	*to begin.*
Orior,	īri,	ortus sum,	*to rise.*

Part. *ŏrĭtūrus.*—Pres. Ind. Conj. III., *ŏrĕris, orĭtur.* Imp. Subj., *ŏrīrer* or *orĕrer.* —So compounds, but *ădŏrior* follows Conj. IV.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

289. A few verbs which have special irregularities are called by way of preëminence *Irregular* or *Anomalous Verbs.* They are

Sŭm, ĕdo, fĕro, vŏlo, fīo, eo, queo,
and their compounds.

290. Sŭm, *I am*, and its compounds.

I. The conjugation of *sum* has been already given (204); its numerous compounds—*absum*,[1] *adsum*, *dēsum*, *praesum*,[1] etc.—except *possum* and *prōsum*, are conjugated in the same way.

II. Possŭm, possĕ, pŏtuī, *to be able.*

Indicative.

	Singular.			Plural.		
Pres.	possŭm,	pŏtĕs,	pŏtest;	possŭmŭs,	pŏtestĭs,	possunt.
Imp.	pŏtĕrăm;[2]			pŏtĕrāmŭs.		
Fut.	pŏtĕrŏ;			pŏtĕrĭmŭs.		
Perf.	pŏtuī;			pŏtuĭmŭs.		
Plup.	pŏtuĕrăm;			pŏtuĕrāmŭs.		
Fut. Perf.	pŏtuĕrŏ;			pŏtuĕrĭmŭs.		

Subjunctive.

Pres.	possĭm,	possīs,	possĭt;	possīmŭs,	possītĭs,	possint.
Imp.	possĕm;			possēmŭs.		
Perf.	pŏtuĕrĭm;			pŏtuerĭmŭs.		
Plup.	pŏtuissĕm;			pŏtuissēmŭs.		

Infinitive.

Pres. possĕ.
Perf. pŏtuissĕ.

Participle.

Pres. pŏtens (*as an adjective*).

1. Composition.—*Possum* is compounded of *pŏtis*, able, and *sum*, to be. The parts are sometimes separated, and then *pŏtis* is indeclinable: *pŏtis sum*, *pŏtis sŭmus*, etc.

---

[1] *Absum* and *praesum*, like *possum*, have Pres. Participles, *absens* and *praesens.*

[2] Inflected regularly through the different persons: *potĕram*, *potĕras*, *potĕrat*, etc. So also in the other tenses: *potui*, *potuisti*, etc.

2. IRREGULARITIES.—In *possum* observe

1) That *potis* drops *is*, and that *t* is assimilated before *s*: *possum* for *potsum*.

2) That *f* of the simple is dropped after *t*: *potui* for *potfui*.

3) That the Infin. *posse* and Subj. *possem* are shortened forms for *potesse* and *potessem*.

3. OLD AND RARE FORMS. See 204, 2.

III. *Prōsŭm*, I profit, is compounded of *prō*, *prōd*, for, and *sŭm*, to be. It retains *d* when the simple verb begins with *e*: *prōsŭm*, *prōdĕs*, *prōdest*, etc. Otherwise it is conjugated like *sŭm*.

291. Edŏ, ĕdĕrĕ, ēdī, ēsŭm, *to eat.*

This verb is sometimes regular, and sometimes takes forms[1] like those of *sŭm* which begin in *ĕs*. Thus:

INDICATIVE.

PRES.	ĕdŏ,	ĕdĭs,	ĕdĭt;	ĕdĭmŭs,	ĕdĭtĭs,	ĕdunt.
		ēs,[1]	est;		estis.	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMP.	ĕdĕrĕm,	ĕdĕrēs,	ĕdĕrĕt;	ĕdĕrēmŭs,	ĕdĕrētĭs,	ĕdĕrent.
	essĕm,	essēs,	essĕt;	essēmŭs,	essētĭs,	essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	ĕdĕ;	ĕdĭtĕ.	
	ēs;[1]	estĕ.	
FUT.	ĕdĭtŏ;	ĕdĭtōtĕ,	ĕduntŏ.
	estŏ;	estōtĕ.	

INFINITIVE.

PRES. ĕdĕrĕ. essĕ.

1. PASSIVE FORMS.—*Estŭr* for *ĕdĭtŭr* and *essētŭr* for *ĕdĕrētŭr* also occur.

2. FORMS IN IM for *am* occur in Pres. Subj.: *ĕdĭm*, *ĕdĭs*, *ĕdĭt*, etc., for *ĕdăm*, *ĕdās*, *ĕdăt*, etc.

3. COMPOUNDS are conjugated like the simple verb, but *cŏmĕdo* has in Sup. *comēsum* or *comestum*.

292. Fĕrŏ, ferrĕ, tŭlī, lātŭm, *to bear.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES.	fĕrŏ, fers, fert;	fĕrĭmŭs, fertĭs,[2] fĕrunt.
IMP.	fĕrēbăm;[3]	fĕrēbāmŭs.

[1] But these forms have *e* long before *s*, even where the corresponding forms of *sum* have *e* short.

[2] *Fers* for *fĕris*: *fert* for *fĕrĭt*; *fertĭs* for *fĕrĭtĭs* (*i* dropped).

[3] Inflect the several tenses in full: *fĕrēbam*, *fĕrēbas*, etc.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
FUT.	fĕrăm;	fĕrēmŭs.
PERF.	tŭlī;	tŭlĭmŭs.
PLUP.	tŭlĕrăm;	tŭlĕrāmŭs.
FUT. PERF.	tŭlĕrŏ;	tŭlĕrĭmŭs.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	fĕrăm;	fĕrāmŭs.
IMP.	ferrĕm;	ferrēmŭs.[1]
PERF.	tŭlĕrĭm;	tŭlĕrĭmŭs.
PLUP.	tŭlissĕm;	tŭlissēmŭs.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	fĕr;[2]	fertĕ.
FUT.	fertŏ,	fertōtĕ,
	fertŏ;	feruntŏ.

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	ferrĕ.[1]
PERF.	tŭlissĕ.
FUT.	lātūrŭs essĕ.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. fĕrens.

FUT. lātūrŭs.

GERUND.

Gen.	fĕrendī.
Dat.	fĕrendŏ.
Acc.	fĕrendŭm.
Abl.	fĕrendŏ.

SUPINE.

Acc. lātŭm.
Abl. lātū.

PASSIVE VOICE.

fĕrŏr, ferrī, lātŭs sŭm, *to be borne.*

INDICATIVE.

PRES.	fĕrŏr, ferrĭs, fertŭr;[3]	fĕrĭmŭr, fĕrĭmĭnī, fĕruntŭr.
IMP.	fĕrēbăr;	fĕrēbāmŭr.
FUT.	fĕrăr;	fĕrēmŭr.
PERF.	lātŭs sŭm;	lātī sŭmŭs.
PLUP.	lātŭs ĕrăm;	lātī ĕrāmŭs.
FUT. PERF.	lātŭs ĕrŏ;	lātī ĕrĭmŭs.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	fĕrăr;	fĕrāmŭr.

[1] *Ferrem*, etc., for *fĕrĕrĕm*, etc.; *ferrĕ* for *fĕrĕrĕ* (*e* dropped).
[2] *Fĕr* for *fĕrĕ*; *ferto*, *fertĕ*, *fertōte*, for *fĕrĭtĕ*, *fĕrĭto*, *fĕrĭtōtĕ* (*i* dropped).
[3] *Ferris* for *fĕrĕrĭs*; *fertŭr* for *fĕrĭtŭr*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Imp.	ferrĕr;[1]	ferrēmŭr.
Perf.	lātŭs sīm;	lātī sīmŭs.
Plup.	lātŭs essĕm;	lātī essēmŭs.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	ferrĕ;[1]	fĕrīmĭnī.
Fut.	fertŏr,	——
	fertŏr;	fĕruntŏr.

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	ferrī.[1]
Perf.	lātŭs essĕ.
Fut.	lātŭm īrī.

PARTICIPLE.

Perf.	lātŭs.
Ger.	fĕrendŭs.

1. Irregularities.—*Fĕro* has two principal irregularities:

1) It forms its Perf. and Sup. *tŭli* (rarely *tĕtŭli*) and *lātum* from obsolete stems.

2) It drops the connecting vowel **e** or **i** before **r**, **s**, and **t**.

2. Compounds of *fĕro* are conjugated like the simple verb, but in a few of them the preposition suffers a euphonic change:

ab-	aufĕro,	auferre,	abstŭli,	ablātum.
ad-	affĕro,	afferre,	attŭli,	allātum.
con-	confĕro,	conferre,	contŭli,	collātum.
dis-	diffĕro,	differre,	distŭli,	dīlātum.
ex-	effĕro,	efferre,	extŭli,	ēlātum.
in-	infĕro,	inferre,	intŭli,	illātum.
ob-	offĕro,	offerre,	obtŭli,	oblātum.
sub-	suffĕro,	sufferre,	sustŭli,	sublātum.

Sustŭli and *sublātum* are not often used in the sense of *suffĕro*, to bear, but they supply the Perf. and Sup. of *tollo*, to raise. See 278, I. 1.

293. Vŏlō̆, vellĕ, vŏluī, *to be willing.*
Nōlō̆, nollĕ, nōluī, *to be unwilling.*
Mālō̆, mallĕ, māluī, *to prefer.*

INDICATIVE.

Pres.	vŏlō̆,	nōlō̆,	mālō̆,
	vīs,	nōn vīs,	māvīs,
	vult;	nōn vult;	māvult;
	vŏlŭmŭs,	nōlŭmŭs,	mālŭmŭs,
	vultĭs,	nōn vultĭs,	māvultĭs,
	vŏlunt.	nōlunt.	mālunt.

[1] *Fĕrrĕr*, etc., for *fĕrĕrĕr*, etc.; *ferrĕ* for *fĕrĕrĕ*; *fertŏr* for *fĕrĭtŏr*; *ferrī* for *fĕrĕrī*, *fĕrī*.

IMP.	vŏlēbăm.	nōlēbăm.	mālēbăm.
FUT.	vŏlăm.	nōlăm.	mālăm.
PERF.	vŏluī.	nōluī.	māluī.
PLUP.	vŏluĕrăm.	nōluĕrăm.	māluĕrăm.
FUT. PERF.	vŏluĕrŏ.	nōluĕrŏ.	māluĕrŏ.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	vĕlīm.[1]	nōlīm.	mālīm.
IMP.	vellĕm.[2]	nollĕm.	mallĕm.
PERF.	vŏluĕrīm.	nōluĕrīm.	māluĕrīm.
PLUP.	vŏluissĕm.	nōluissĕm.	māluissĕm.

IMPERATIVE.

P. nōlī,	nōlītĕ.
F. nōlītŏ,	nōlītōtĕ,
nōlītŏ;	nōluntŏ.

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	vellĕ.	nollĕ.	mallĕ.
PERF.	vŏluissĕ.	nōluissĕ.	māluissĕ.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	vŏlens.	nōlens.

1. The stem of *vŏlo* is *vŏl* with variable stem-vowel, ŏ, ĕ, ŭ.

2. NŌLO is compounded of *nē* or *nōn* and *vŏlo;* MALO, of *măgĭs* and *vŏlo.*

3. RARE FORMS.—(1) Of VOLO: *volt, voltis,* for *vult, vultis; sīs, sultis,* for *sī vis, si vultis; vin'* for *visne.*—(2) Of NŌLO: *nēvis, nēvult* (*nēvolt*), *nevelle,* for *non* (*ne*) *vis, non* (*ne*) *vult, nolle.*—(3) Of MALO: *māvŏlo, mavĕlim, mavellem,* for *mālo, mālim, mallem.*

294. Fīŏ, fiĕrī, factŭs sŭm, *to become, be made.*[3]

INDICATIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES.	fīŏ, fīs, fīt;	fīmŭs, fītĭs, fīunt.
IMP.	fīēbăm;	fīēbāmŭs.
FUT.	fīăm;	fīēmŭs.

---

[1] *Vĕlim* is inflected like *sim,* and *vellem* like *essem.*

[2] *Vellĕm* and *velle* are syncopated forms for *velĕrem, velĕre; e* is dropped and *r* assimilated; *velĕrem, velrem, vellem; velĕre, velre, velle.* So *nollem* and *nolle,* for *nolĕrem* and *nolĕre; mallem* and *malle,* for *malĕrem* and *malĕre.*

[3] COMPOUNDS of *fio* are conjugated like the simple verb, but *confit, dēfit,* and *infit* are defective. See 297, III. 2.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PERF.	factŭs sŭm;	factī sŭmŭs.
PLUP.	factŭs ĕrăm;	factī ĕrāmŭs.
FUT. PERF.	factŭs ĕrŏ;	factī ĕrĭmŭs.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	fīăm;	fīāmŭs.
IMP.	fīĕrĕm;	fīĕrēmŭs.
PERF.	factŭs sĭm;	factī sīmŭs.
PLUP.	factŭs essĕm;	factī essēmŭs.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	fī;	fītĕ.

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	fīĕrī.
PERF.	factŭs essĕ.
FUT.	factŭm īrī.

PARTICIPLE.

PERF. factŭs.

GER. făciendŭs.

295. Eŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ĭtŭm, *to go.*

INDICATIVE.

PRES.	eŏ, īs, ĭt;	īmŭs, ītĭs, eunt.
IMP.	ībăm;	ībāmŭs.
FUT.	ībŏ;	ībĭmŭs.
PERF.	īvī;	īvĭmŭs.
PLUP.	īvĕrăm;	īvĕrāmŭs.
FUT. PERF.	īvĕrŏ;	īvĕrĭmŭs.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	eăm;	eāmŭs.
IMP.	īrĕm;	īrēmŭs.
PERF.	īvĕrĭm;	īvĕrĭmŭs.
PLUP.	īvissĕm;	īvissēmŭs.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	ī;	ītĕ.
FUT.	ītŏ,	ītōtĕ,
	ītŏ;	euntŏ.

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	īrĕ.
PERF.	īvissĕ.
FUT.	ĭtūrŭs essĕ.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. iens. *Gen.* euntĭs.

FUT. ĭtūrŭs.

GERUND.		SUPINE.
Gen.	eundī.	
Dat.	eundō̆.	
Acc.	eundŭm.	*Acc.* ĭtŭm.
Abl.	eundō̆.	*Abl.* ĭtū.

1. IRREGULARITIES.—*Eo* is a verb of the fourth conjugation, but it forms the Sup. with a short vowel (*ĭtum*) and is irregular in several parts of the present system. It admits contraction according to 234: *istis* for *ivistis*, etc.

2. PASSIVE INFINITIVE.—*Eo*, as an intransitive verb, wants the Passive, except when used impersonally in the third singular, *ītur*, *ībātur*, etc. (301, 1), but *īri*, the Pass. Infin., occurs as an auxiliary in the Fut. Infin. Pass. of the regular conjugations: *ămātum īri*, etc.

3. COMPOUNDS of *eo* are generally conjugated like *eo*, but shorten *ivi* into *ii*.—*Vēneo* (*vēnum eo*) has sometimes *vēniēbam* for *venībam*. Many compounds want the supine, and a few admit in the Fut. a rare form in *eăm*, *iēs*, *iĕt*.

Transitive compounds have also the Passive: *ădeo*, to approach, *adeor*, *adīris*, *adītur*, etc.

Ambio is regular, like *audio*, though *ambībam* for *ambiēbam* occurs.

296. *Queo*, *quīre*, *quīvi*, *quĭtum*, to be able, and *nēqueo*, *nēquīre*, *nequīvi* (*ii*), *nequĭtum*, to be unable, are conjugated like *eo*, but they want the Imperative and Gerund, and are rare except in the Present tense.[1]

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

297. Defective Verbs want certain parts. The following are the most important.[2]

I. PRESENT SYSTEM WANTING.

Coepi, *I have begun.* Mĕmĭni, *I remember.* Odi, *I hate.*

INDICATIVE.

PERF.	coepī.	mĕmĭnī.	ōdī.
PLUP.	coepĕrăm.	mĕmĭnĕrăm.	ōdĕrăm.
FUT. PERF.	coepĕrō̆.	mĕmĭnĕrō̆.	ōdĕrō̆.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERF.	coepĕrĭm.	mĕmĭnĕrĭm.	ōdĕrĭm.
PLUP.	coepissĕm.	mĕmĭnissĕm.	ōdissĕm.

[1] A passive form *quĭtur*, *nequĭtur*, etc., sometimes occurs before a Pass. Infin.

[2] Many, which want the Perf. or Sup. or both, have been mentioned under the Classification of Verbs. See 259 to 288.

IMPERATIVE.

	S. mĕmentŏ.	
	P. mĕmentōtĕ.	

INFINITIVE.

PERF.	coepissĕ.	mĕmĭnissĕ.	ōdissĕ.
FUT.	coeptūrŭs essĕ.		ōsūrŭs essĕ.

PARTICIPLE.

PERF.	coeptŭs.		ōsŭs.[1]
FUT.	coeptūrŭs.		ōsūrŭs.

1. PASSIVE FORM.—With passive infinitives *coepi* generally takes the passive form: *coeptus sum*, *ĕram*, etc. The Part. *coeptus* is passive in sense.

2. PRESENT IN SENSE.—*Memĭni* and *ōdi* are present in sense; hence in the Pluperf. and Fut. Perf. they have the sense of the Imperf. and Fut.—*Nōvi*, I know, Perf. of *nosco*, to learn, and *consuēvi*, I am wont, Perf. of *consuesco*, to accustom one's self, are also present in sense.

II. PARTS OF EACH SYSTEM WANTING.

1. Aio, *I say, say yes.*[2]

INDIC.	*Pres.*	āio,	aĭs,[3]	aĭt;	——	——	āiunt.
	Imp.	āiēbăm,	-ēbās,	-ēbăt;	-ēbāmŭs,	-ēbātĭs,	-ēbant.[4]
	Perf.	——	——	aĭt;	——	——	——
SUBJ.	*Pres.*	——	āiās,	āiăt;	——	——	āiant.
IMPER.	*Pres.*	aī (*rare*).					
PART.	*Pres.*	āiens (*as adjective*).					

2. Inquam, *I say.*

INDIC.	*Pres.*	inquăm,	inquĭs,	inquĭt;	inquĭmŭs,	inquĭtĭs,	inquiunt.
	Imp.	——	——	inquiēbăt;[5]	——	——	——
	Fut.	——	inquiēs,	inquiĕt;	——	——	——
	Perf.	——	inquistī,	inquĭt;	——	——	——
IMPER.	*Pres.*	inquĕ.	*Fut.* inquĭtŏ.				

---

[1] *Osus* is active in sense, *hating*, but is rare except in compounds: *exōsus*, *pĕrōsus*.

[2] In this verb *a* and *i* do not form a diphthong; before a vowel the *i* has the sound of *y*: *ā-yo*, *a'-is*. See 7, 4, 4).

[3] The interrogative form *aisne* is often shortened into *ain'*.

[4] *Aībam*, *aības*, etc., occur in comedy.

[5] Also written *inquĭbat*.

3. Fāri, *to speak.*[1]

INDIC.	*Pres.*	——	——	fātŭr;	——	——	——
	Fut.	fābŏr,	——	fābĭtŭr;	——	——	——
	Perf.	fātŭs sŭm,	ĕs,	est;	fātī sŭmŭs,	estĭs,	sunt.
	Plup.	fātŭs ĕrăm,	erās,	erăt;	fātī erāmŭs,	erātĭs,	ĕrant.
SUBJ.	*Perf.*	fātŭs sĭm,	sīs,	sĭt;	fātī sīmŭs,	sītĭs,	sint.
	Plup.	fātŭs essĕm,	essēs,	essĕt;	fātī essēmŭs,	essētĭs,	essent.

IMPER. *Pres.* fārĕ.
INFIN. *Pres.* fārī.
PART. *Pres.* (fans) fantis; *Perf.* fātŭs; *Ger.* fandŭs.
GERUND, *Gen.* and *Abl.* fandī, dŏ. SUPINE, *Abl.* fātū.

III. IMPERATIVES AND ISOLATED FORMS.

1. IMPERATIVES.—ăvē, avētĕ; avētŏ; INF. avērĕ, *hail.*
salvē, salvētĕ, salvētŏ;[2] salvērĕ, *hail.*
cĕdŏ, cettĕ, *tell me, give me.*
ăpăgĕ, *begone.*

2. ISOLATED FORMS.

INDIC. *Pres.*		*Fut.*	SUB. *Pres.*	*Imp.*	INFIN.	
confĭt,	——	——	confĭăt,	confĭĕrĕt,	confĭĕrī,	*to be done.*
dēfĭt,	defĭunt,	defĭet,	defĭăt,	——	defĭĕrī,	*to be wanting.*
infĭt,	infĭunt,	——	——	——	——	*to begin.*

SUB. *Imp.* fŏrĕm, fŏrēs, fŏrĕt, —— —— fŏrent. INF. fŏrĕ.[3]
IND. *Pres.* ŏvăt. PART. ŏvans, *he rejoices.*
IND. *Pres.* quaesŏ, quaesŭmŭs,[4] *I pray.*

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

298. Impersonal Verbs never admit a personal subject. They correspond to the English Impersonal with *it: lĭcet,* it is lawful, *ŏportet,* it behooves.[5] They are conjugated like other verbs, but are used only in the third person singular of the Indicative and Subjunctive, and in the Present and Perfect Infinitive.

299. Strictly Impersonal are only :

[1] *Fāri* is used chiefly in poetry. Compounds have some forms not found in the simple: *affāmur, affamĭni, affābar; effabĕris.*

[2] The Fut. *salvēbis* is also used for the Imperat.

[3] *Fŏrem* = essem: *fŏre* = fūturum esse. See 204, 2.

[4] Old forms for *quaero* and *quaerĭmus.*

[5] The real subject is generally an infinitive or clause: *hoc fĭĕri ŏportet,* that this should be done is necessary.

Dĕcĕt,	dĕcuĭt,	*it becomes.*[1]
Lĭbĕt,	lĭbuĭt, lĭbĭtŭm est,	*it pleases.*[1]
Lĭcĕt,	lĭcuĭt, lĭcĭtŭm est,	*it is lawful.*[1]
Lĭquĕt,	lĭcuĭt,	*it is evident.*[1]
Mĭsĕrĕt,	mĭsĕrĭtŭm est,	*it excites pity;*
	me misĕret,	*I pity.*
Oportĕt,	ŏportuĭt,	*it behooves.*
Pĭgĕt,	pĭguĭt, pĭgĭtŭm est,	*it grieves.*
Paenĭtĕt,	paenĭtuit,	*it causes regret;*
	paenĭtet me,	*I repent.*
Pŭdĕt,	pŭduĭt, pŭdĭtŭm est,	*it shames.*
Taedĕt,	*it wearies;*	pertaedĕt, pertaesŭm est.

1. Participles are generally wanting, but a few occur, though with a somewhat modified sense: (1) from libet: *libens*, willing; (2) from licet: *licens*, free; *licitŭs*, allowed; (3) from paenitet: *paenitens*, penitent; *paenitendŭs*, to be repented of; (4) from pudet: *pŭdens*, modest; *pŭdendŭs*, shameful.

2. Gerunds are generally wanting, but occur in rare instances: *paenĭtendŭm*, *pŭdendŏ*.

300. Generally Impersonal are several verbs which designate the changes of weather, or the operations of nature:

Fulmĭnăt, *it lightens;* grandĭnăt, *it hails;* lūcescĭt, *it grows light;* pluĭt, *it rains;* rōrăt, *dew falls;* tŏnăt, *it thunders.*

301. Many other verbs are often used impersonally:

Accĭdit, *it happens;* appāret, *it appears;* constat, *it is evident;* contingit, *it happens;* dēlectat, *it delights;* dŏlet, *it grieves;* intĕrest, *it concerns;* jŭvat, *it delights;* pătet, *it is plain;* plăcet, *it pleases;* praestat, *it is better;* rēfert, *it concerns.*

1. In the Passive Voice intransitive verbs can only be used impersonally. The participle is then neuter:

Mihi crēdĭtur, *it is credited to me, I am believed;* tibi credĭtur, *you are believed;* credĭtum est, *it was believed;* certātur, *it is contended;* currĭtur, *there is running, people run;* pugnātur, *it is fought, they, we,* etc., *fight;* vīvĭtur, *we, you, they live.*

2. The Passive Periphrastic Conjugation (232) is often used impersonally. The participle is then neuter:

Mihi scrībendum est, *I must write;* tibi scribendum est, *you must write;* illi scribendum est, *he must write.*

---

[1] These four occur in the third person plural, but without a personal subject.

CHAPTER V.

PARTICLES.

302. The Latin has four parts of speech sometimes called *Particles:* the *Adverb*, the *Preposition*, the *Conjunction*, and the *Interjection*.

ADVERBS.

303. The Adverb is the part of speech which is used to qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs: *cĕlĕrĭtĕr currĕre*, to run swiftly; *tăm cĕler*, so swift; *tam celerĭter*, so swiftly.

304. Adverbs may be divided, according to their signification, into four principal classes:

I. Adverbs of Place.

Hīc,	*here;*	hūc,	*hither;*	hinc,	*hence.*
illīc,	*there;*	illūc,	*thither;*	illinc,	*thence.*
istīc,	*there;*	istūc,	*thither;*	istinc,	*thence.*
ŭbĭ,	*where?*	quō,	*whither?*	undĕ,	*whence?*

II. Adverbs of Time.

Hŏdiē,	*to-day.*	nondŭm,	*not yet.*	saepĕ,	*often.*
ĭbĭ,	*then.*	nunc,	*now.*	sĕmĕl,	*once.*
jăm,	*now.*	nunquăm,	*never.*	tŭm,	*then.*
jamdiū,	*long since.*	ōlīm,	*formerly.*	unquăm,	*ever.*

III. Adverbs of Manner, Means, Degree.

Adeō,	*so.*	paenĕ,	*almost.*	sīc,	*so.*
ălĭtĕr,	*otherwise.*	pălăm,	*openly.*	ŭt,	*as.*
ĭtă,	*so.*	prorsŭs,	*wholly.*	valdē,	*much.*
măgĭs,	*more.*	rītĕ,	*rightly.*	vix,	*scarcely.*

IV. Adverbs of Cause, Inference.

Cūr,	*why?*	eō,	*for this reason.*
quārē,	*wherefore.*	ĭdeō,	*on this account.*
quămobrĕm,	*wherefore.*	idcircō,	*therefore.*
quaproptĕr,	*wherefore.*	proptĕreā,	*therefore.*

1. For Interrogative Particles, see 346, II. 1 and 2.
2. For Negative Particles, see 584 and 585.

305. Comparison.—Most Adverbs are derived from adjectives, and are dependent upon them for their comparison. The comparative is the neuter singular of the adjective, and the superlative changes the ending **us** of the adjective into **ē**:

altus,	altior,	altissĭmus,	*lofty.*
altē,	altius,	altissĭmē,	*loftily.*
prūdens,	prudentior,	prudentissĭmus,	*prudent.*
prūdentĕr,	prudentius,	prudentissĭmē,	*prudently.*

1. Magis and Maxime.—When the adjective is compared with *măgĭs* and *maxĭmē*, the adverb is compared in the same way:

ēgrĕgius,	măgis egregius,	maxĭme egregius,	*excellent.*
egregiē,	măgis egregie,	maxĭme egregie,	*excellently.*

2. Irregular Comparison.—When the adjective is irregular, the adverb has the same irregularity:

bŏnus,	mĕlior,	optĭmus,	*good.*
bĕnĕ,	mĕlius,	optĭmē,	*well.*
mălĕ,	pejus,	pessĭmē,	*badly.*

3. Defective Comparison.—When the adjective is defective, the adverb is generally defective:

———	dētĕrior,	deterrĭmus,	*worse.*
———	dētĕrius,	deterrĭme,	*worse.*
nŏvus,	———	novissĭmus,	*new.*
nŏvē,	———	novissĭmē,	*newly.*

4. Compared.—A few not derived from adjectives are compared:

diū,	diūtiŭs,	diutissĭmē,	*for a long time.*
saepĕ,	saepius,	saepissĭmē,	*often.*
sătĭs,	satius,	———	*sufficiently.*
nūpĕr,	———	nuperrĭme,	*recently.*

5. Not compared.—Most adverbs not derived from adjectives, as also those from adjectives incapable of comparison (169), are not compared: *hīc*, here; *nunc*, now; *vulgārĭtĕr*, commonly.

6. Superlatives in *o* or *um* are used in a few adverbs: *prīmō*, *prīmŭm*, *pŏtissĭmŭm*.

PREPOSITIONS.

306. The Preposition is the part of speech which shows the relations of objects to each other: *ĭn Itălia esse*, to be in Italy; *antĕ mē*, before me. See 433–435.

307. Inseparable Prepositions.—*Ambĭ*, *amb*, around, about; *dĭs*, *dī*, asunder; *rĕ*, *rĕd*, back; *sē*, *sēd*, aside, apart; and *vē*, not, are called inseparable prepositions, because they are used only in composition.

CONJUNCTIONS.

308. Conjunctions are mere connectives: *păter* ET *fīlius*, the father and son; *păter* AUT *filius*, the father or son.

309. Conjunctions are divided, according to their use, into two classes:

I. Coördinate Conjunctions,—which connect similar constructions: *lăbor vŏluptasquĕ*, labor and pleasure; *Carthāgĭnem cēpit āc dīruit*, he took and destroyed Carthage.

II. Subordinate Conjunctions,—which connect subordinate with principal constructions: *haec dŭm collĭgunt, effŭgit*, while they collect these things, he escapes.

I. Coördinate Conjunctions.

310. Coördinate Conjunctions comprise five subdivisions:

1. Copulative Conjunctions, denoting union:

Et, quĕ, atquĕ, ăc, *and.* Etiăm, quŏquĕ, *also.* Nĕquĕ, nĕc, *and not.* Nĕquĕ—nĕquĕ, nĕc—nĕc, nĕquĕ—nĕc, *neither—nor.*

2. Disjunctive Conjunctions, denoting separation:

Aut, vĕl, vĕ, sīvĕ (seu), *or.* Aut—aut, vĕl—vĕl, *either—or.* Sīvĕ—sīvĕ, *either—or.*

3. Adversative Conjunctions, denoting opposition:

Sĕd, autĕm, vērŭm, vērō, *but.* At, *but, on the contrary.* Atquī, *rather.* Cētĕrŭm, *but still.* Tămĕn, *yet.*

4. Illative Conjunctions, denoting inference:

Ergō, ĭgĭtŭr, indĕ, proindĕ, ĭtăquĕ, *hence, therefore.* See also 587, IV. 2.

5. Causal Conjunctions, denoting cause:

Năm, namquĕ, ĕnĭm, ĕtĕnĭm, *for.*

II. Subordinate Conjunctions.

311. Subordinate Conjunctions comprise eight subdivisions:

1. Temporal Conjunctions, denoting time:

Quandō, quŭm, *when.* Ut, ŭbĭ, *as, when.* Quum prīmŭm, ŭt prīmum, ŭbi prīmum, sĭmŭl, sĭmŭlăc, sĭmŭlatquĕ, *as soon as.* Dŭm, dōnĕc, quoăd,

quamdiū, *while, until, as long as.* Antĕquăm, priusquam, *before.* Posteăquam, *after.*

2. Comparative Conjunctions, denoting comparison :

Ut, ŭtī, sīcŭt, sīcŭtī, *as, so as.* Vĕlŭt, *just as.* Praeŭt, proŭt, *according as, in comparison with.* Quăm, *as.* Tanquăm, quăsī, ŭt sī, ăc sī, vĕlŭt sī, *as if.*

3. Conditional Conjunctions, denoting condition:

Sī, *if.* Sī nōn, nĭsī, nī, *if not.* Sīn, *but if.* Sī quĭdĕm, *if indeed.* Sī mŏdŏ, dŭm, mŏdŏ, dummŏdŏ, *if only.*

4. Concessive Conjunctions, denoting concession:

Quamquăm, lĭcĕt, quŭm, *although.* Etsī, tămetsī, ĕtiamsī, *even if.* Quamvīs, quantumvīs, quantumlĭbĕt, *however much, although.* Ut, *grant that.* Nē, *grant that not.*

5. Final Conjunctions, denoting purpose or end:

Ut, ŭtī, *that, in order that.* Nē, nēvĕ (neu), *that not.* Quō, *that.* Quōmĭnŭs, *that not.*

6. Consecutive Conjunctions, denoting consequence or result :

Ut, *so that.* Ut nōn, quīn, *so that not.*

7. Causal Conjunctions, denoting cause :

Quiă, quŏd, *because.* Quŭm, *since.* Quŏniăm, quandō, quandŏquĭdem, sīquĭdem, *since indeed.*

8. Interrogative Conjunctions, denoting inquiry :

Nĕ, nonnĕ, nŭm, utrŭm, ăn, *whether.* An nōn, necnĕ, *or not.*

INTERJECTIONS.

312. Interjections are certain particles used as expressions of feeling or as mere marks of address. They may express

1. Astonishment: *ō, hĕm, ehĕm, huī, ătăt, păpae, văh, ĕn, eccĕ.*
2. Joy: *iō, eu, ēvoe.*
3. Sorrow: *vae, hei, heu, ēheu, ohē, āh, au, prō* or *proh.*
4. Disgust: *ahă, phuī, ăpăgĕ.*
5. Calling: *heus, ō, ehŏ, ehŏdŭm.*
6. Praise: *eugĕ, ejă, hejă.*

CHAPTER VI.

FORMATION OF WORDS.

313. Words may be formed in two ways:

I. By Derivation; i. e., by the addition of certain endings to the stems of other words: *ămŏr*, love, from *ămō*, to love.

II. By Composition; i. e., by the union of two or more words or their stems: *bĕnĕvŏlens*, well-wishing, from *bĕnĕ*, well, and *vŏlens*, wishing.

1. Simple and Compound.—Words formed by composition are called *Compounds;* those not thus formed are called *Simple Words.*

2. Primitive and Derivative.—Simple words formed by derivation are called *Derivatives;* those not thus formed are called *Primitives.*

DERIVATION OF NOUNS.

314. Nouns are derived from other *Nouns*, from *Adjectives*, and from *Verbs.*

I. Nouns from Nouns.

315. Diminutives generally end in

ŭlŭs, ŭlă, ŭlŭm, cŭlŭs, cŭlă, cŭlŭm.

hort-ŭlus,	*a small garden,*	from	hortus,	*garden.*
virg-ŭla,	*a small branch,*	"	virga,	*branch.*
oppid-ŭlum,	*a small town,*	"	oppĭdum,	*town.*
flos-cŭlus,	*a small flower,*	"	flōs,	*flower.*
partĭ-cŭla,	*a small part,*	"	pars,	*part.*
mūnus-cŭlum,	*a small present,*	"	mūnus,	*present.*

1. **Ulus, ŭla, ŭlum,** originally **ŏlus, ŏla, ŏlum,** are appended to **a** and **o** stems, and to Dental and Guttural Stems. When appended to **a** and **o** stems, they take the place of the final vowel.

2. The original forms **ŏlus, ŏla, ŏlum,** are used after **i** or **e**: *fīliŏlus*, little son, from *filius*: *fīliŏla*, little daughter, from *filia; atriŏlum*, small hall, from *atrium.*

3. **El-lus, el-la, el-lum, il-lus, il-la, il-lum,** are used when the stem

of the primitive ends in **a** or **o**, preceded by **l**, **n**, or **r**: *ŏcel-lus*,[1] small eye, from *ŏcŭlus; fābel-la*, short fable, from *fābŭla; vil-lum*,[1] a little wine, from *vīnum*.

4. **Cŭlus**, **cŭla**, **cŭlum**, are appended to **e**, **i**, and **o** stems, and to liquid and **s**-stems, but stems in **u** change **u** into **i**, and stems in **on** change **o** into **u**: *versĭ-cŭlus*, a little verse, from *versus; hŏmun-cŭlus*, a small man, from *hŏmo*. Like nouns in **o**, a few other words form diminutives in *uncŭlus*, *uncŭla: ăv-uncŭlus*, maternal uncle, from *ăvus*, grandfather.[2]

5. **Uleus** and **cio** are rare: *ĕquuleus*, a small horse, from *ĕquus; hŏmuncio*, a small man, from *hŏmo*.

316. Patronymics, or names of descent, generally end in

ĭdes,	**īdes**,	**iădes**,	**ădes**,	*masculine*.
ĭs,	**ēis**,	**ias**,	**as**,	*feminine*.

Tantăl-ĭdes,	*son of Tantalus;*	Tantăl-is,	*daughter of Tantalus*.
Thēs-īdes,	*son of Theseus;*	Thes-ēis,	*daughter of Theseus*.
Lāert-iădes,	*son of Laertes;*	Laert-ias,	*daughter of Laertes*.
Thesti-ădes,	*son of Thestius;*	Thesti-as,	*daughter of Thestius*.

1. These endings take the place of the final stem-vowel or diphthong.

2. **Ides** (ĭ) and **ĭs** are the common endings.

3. **Ides** (ī) and **ēis** are used especially with primitives in *eus*.

4. **Iădes**, **ădes**, and **ias**, **as**, are used principally with primitives in *ius*, and in those in *as* and *es* of Dec. I.—*Aenēas* has *Aeneădes*, masc., and *Aenēis*, fem.

5. **Inē** and **ōnē** are rare feminine endings: *Neptūn-īnē*, daughter of Neptune; *Acrĭsi-ōnē*, daughter of Acrisius.

317. Designations of Place are often formed with the endings

ārium,	**ētum, tum**,		**īle**.[3]
cŏlumb-ārium,	*a dovecot*,	from	cŏlumba.
querc-ētum,	*a forest of oaks*,	"	quercus.
sălic-tum,	*a thicket of willows*,	"	sălix.
ŏv-īle,	*a sheepfold*,	"	ŏvis.

1. **Arium** designates the place where anything is kept, a receptacle: *aerārium*, treasury, from *aes*.

2. **Etum**, **tum**, used with names of trees and plants, designate the place where they flourish: *ŏlīvētum*, an olive-grove, from *ŏlīva*.

---

[1] The syllables *el* and *il* do not belong to the ending, but are produced by a slight change in the stem: thus, *ŏcŭlus*, *ŏcŭl-ŭlus=ŏcul-lus=ŏcel-lus; vīnum*, *vīn-ŭlum=vin-lum=vil-lum*.

[2] *Nūbē-cŭla*, *plēbē-cŭla*, and *vulpē-cŭla*, are formed as if from *e-stems*.

[3] When appended to vowel-stems, these endings take the place of the final vowel.

3. **Ile**, used with names of animals, designates their stall or fold: *bŏvīle*, stall for cattle, from *bos*.

318. DERIVATIVES are also formed with several other endings, especially with

ārius, io, ium, ĭtium, tus, ĭtus, ātus.[1]

stătu-ārius,	*a statuary*,	from	stătua.
lūd-io,	*a player*,	"	lūdus.
săcerdōt-ium,	*priesthood*,	"	săcerdōs.
serv-ĭtium,	*servitude*,	"	servus.
vir-tus,	*virtue*,	"	vĭr.
consŭl-ātus,	*consulship*,	"	consŭl.

1. **Arius** and **io** generally designate one's occupation.

2. **Ium** and **itium** denote office, condition, or collection: *servitium*, servitude, sometimes a collection of servants.

3. **Tus** and **ĭtus** designate some characteristic or condition: *virtus*, manliness, virtue, from *vir*; *jŭventus*, youth, from *jŭvĕnis*.

4. **Atus** denotes rank, office, collection: *consŭlātus*, consulship, from *consul*; *sĕnātus*, senate, collection of old men, from *sĕnex*.

5. PATRIAL OR GENTILE NOUNS.—See 326, 2.

II. NOUNS FROM ADJECTIVES.

319. From Adjectives are formed various ABSTRACT NOUNS with the endings

ia, ĭtia, ĭtās, ĭtūdo, ĭmōnia.[1]

dīlĭgent-ia,	*diligence*,	from	dīlĭgens.
ămīc-ĭtia,	*friendship*,	"	ămīcus.
bŏn-ĭtās,	*goodness*,	"	bŏnus.
sōl-ĭtūdo,	*solitude*,	"	sōlus.
ăcr-ĭmōnia,	*sharpness*,	"	ăcĕr.

1. **Itās, tās, ĕtās.**—*Itas* sometimes drops *i*: *lībertās*, liberty, from *lībĕr*; *ĕtas* is used with primitives in *ius*: *piĕtās*, piety, from *pius*. Sometimes the stem of the adjective is slightly changed: *făcĭlis*, *făcultas*, faculty; *diffĭcĭlis*, *diffĭcultas*, difficulty; *pŏtens*, *pŏtestas*, power; *hŏnestus*, *hŏnestas*, honesty.

2. **Itūdo** and **ĭtās.**—A few adjectives form abstracts with both these endings: *firmus*, *firmĭtas*, *firmitūdo*, firmness. Polysyllabic adjectives in *tus* generally change *tus* into *tūdo*: *sollĭcĭtus*, *sollĭcĭtūdo*, solicitude.

3. **Imōnia** is rare: *Parsĭmōnia*=*parcimonia*, parsimony, from *parcus*.

---

[1] When appended to vowel-stems, these endings take the place of the final vowel. This is true of all endings beginning with a vowel.

III. Nouns from Verbs.

320. From the Verb-stem are formed Verbal Nouns with various endings, especially with

ŏr; ium; mĕn, mentum; bŭlum, cŭlum, brum, crum, trum.

ăm-ŏr,	*love,*	from	ămo.
gaud-ium,	*joy,*	"	gaudeo.
ornā-mentum,	*ornament,*	"	orno.
vŏcā-bŭlum,	*appellation,*	"	vŏco.
sĭmŭlā-crum,	*image,*	"	sĭmŭlo.

1. **Or**[1] designates the *action* or *state* denoted by the verb.

2. **Ium**[1] has nearly the same force, but sometimes designates the *thing done: aedĭfĭcium,* edifice, from *aedĭfĭco.*

3. **Men** and **mentum** generally designate the *means* of an action, or its involuntary *subject: flūmen,* a stream, something which flows, from *fluo; agmen,* an army in motion, from *ăgo.*

A connecting vowel is sometimes used: *ăl-ĭ-mentum.* The stem is sometimes shortened or changed: *mōmentum,* moving force, from *mŏveo.*

4. **Bŭlum, cŭlum, brum, crum, trum,** designate the *instrument* or the *place* of the action: *vehĭcŭlum,*[2] vehicle, instrument of the action, from *veho; stăbŭlum,* stall, place of the action, from *sto.*

The stem-vowel is sometimes changed: *sĕpulcrum,* sepulchre, from *sĕpĕlio.*

5. **Ulum, ŭla.**—*Ulum* for *cŭlum* occurs after *c* and *g: vinc-ŭlum,* a bond, from *vincio; cing-ŭlum,* girdle, from *cingo. Ula* also occurs: *rēgŭla,* rule, from *rĕgo.*

6. **Us, a, o,** sometimes designate the *agent* of the action: *cŏquus,* cook, from *cŏquo; scrība,* writer, from *scrībo; erro,* wanderer, from *erro.*

7. **Ela, ĭdo, ĭgo,** and a few other endings also occur: *quĕrēla,* complaint, from *quĕror; cŭpīdo,* desire, from *cŭpio; ŏrīgo,* origin, from *ŏrior.*

321. From the Verb-stem are formed Verbal Nouns with the endings

tŏr, tio, tŭs, tūra.

ămā-tŏr,	*lover,*	from	ămo.
audī-tor,	*hearer,*	"	audio.
mŏnĭ-tio,	*advising,*	"	mŏneo.
audī-tio,	*hearing,*	"	audio.
audī-tŭs,	*hearing,*	"	audio.
can-tŭs,	*singing,*	"	căno.
pic-tūra,	*painting,*	"	pingo.

[1] See foot-note, p. 143.

[2] With connecting vowel.

1. **T** in these endings becomes **s** when added to stems which form the Supine stem in **s**: *vī-sio*, *vī-sus*, sight, vision. See 257.

2. **Or** denotes the *agent* or *doer*. The corresponding feminine ending is *trix*: *victor*, conqueror; *victrix*, conqueress.

3. **Tio, tus,** and **tūra**, form *abstract* nouns, and denote the *act* itself.

DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

322. Derivative adjectives are formed from *Nouns*, *Adjectives*, *Verbs*, and *Adverbs*.

I. Adjectives from Nouns.

323. Fulness.—Adjectives denoting *fulness*, *abundance*, *supply*, generally end in

ōsus, ŏlentus, ŭlentus, ātus, ītus, ūtus, tus.[1]

ănĭm-ōsus,	*full of courage*,	from	ănĭmus.
vīn-ŏlentus,	*full of wine*,	"	vīnum.
ŏp-ŭlentus,	*opulent*,	"	ŏpēs.
āl-ātus,	*winged*,	"	āla.
turr-ītus,	*turreted*,	"	turris.
corn-ūtus,	*horned*,	"	cornu.
jus-tus,	*just*,	"	jūs.

324. Material.—Adjectives designating the material of which anything is made generally end in

eŭs, ĭnus, ĭneŭs, nus, neŭs, āceŭs, ĭcius.[1]

aur-eus,	*golden*,	from	aurum.
făg-ĭnus,	*of beech*,	"	făgus.
făg-ĭneŭs,	*of beech*,	"	făgus.
pōpul-nus,	*of poplar*,	"	pōpŭlus.
pōpul-neŭs,	*of poplar*,	"	pōpŭlus.
păpȳr-āceŭs,	*of papyrus*,	"	păpȳrus.
lăter-ĭciŭs,	*of brick*,	"	lăter.

1. These endings sometimes denote *characteristic* or *possession*: *virgĭneŭs*, belonging to a maiden.

325. Characteristic.—Adjectives signifying *belonging to*, *derived from*, generally end in

---

[1] When appended to vowel-stems, these endings generally take the place of the final vowel, but *u*-stems retain *u* before the ending *ōsus*: *fructu-ōsus*, fruitful.

ĭcus, īlis, īnus, ius; ālis, ānus, āris, ārius, ensis.[1]

cīv-ĭcus,	*relating to a citizen,*	from	cīvis.
cīv-īlis,	*relating to a citizen,*	"	cīvis.
ĕqu-īnus,	*of, pertaining to a horse,*	"	ĕquus.
rēg-ius,	*royal,*	"	rex.
mort-ālis,	*mortal,*	"	mors.
urb-ānus,	*of, pertaining to a city,*	"	urbs.
sălūt-āris,	*salutary,*	"	sălūs.
auxĭli-ārius,	*auxiliary,*	"	auxĭlium.
fŏr-ensis,	*forensic,*	"	fŏrum.

1. **Ester, ĭtĭmus, tĭcus,** and a few other endings occur: *camp-ester*, level, from *campus; măr-ĭtĭmus*, maritime, from *măre; rus-tĭcus*, rustic, from *rūs*.

326. Adjectives from proper nouns generally end in

ānus, iānus, īnus; iăcus, ĭcus, ius, ensis, iensis, as, aeus, ēus.[1]

Sull-ānus,	*of Sylla,*	from	Sulla.
Rōm-ānus,	*Roman,*	"	Rōma.
Cĭcĕrōn-iānus,	*Ciceronian,*	"	Cĭcĕro.
Lăt-īnus,	*Latin,*	"	Lătium.
Cŏrinth-iăcus,	*Corinthian,*	"	Cŏrinthus.
Cŏrinth-ius,	*Corinthian,*	"	Cŏrinthus.
Brĭtann-ĭcus,	*British,*	"	Brĭtannus.
Cann-ensis,	*of Cannae,*	"	Cannae.
Athēn-iensis,	*Athenian,*	"	Athēnae.
Fīdēn-ās,	*of Fidenae,*	"	Fīdēnae.
Smyrn-aeus,	*Smyrnean,*	"	Smyrna.
Pȳthăgŏr-ēus,	*Pythagorean,*	"	Pȳthăgŏrās.

1. **Anus** and **iānus** are the endings generally used in derivatives from *Names of Persons;* but others also occur.

2. Patrials.—Many of these adjectives from names of places are also used substantively as *Patrial* or *Gentile Nouns* to designate the citizens of the place: *Cŏrinthii*, the Corinthians; *Athēnienses*, the Athenians.

II. Adjectives from Adjectives.

327. Diminutives from other adjectives generally end like diminutive nouns (315) in

ŭlus, ŭla, ŭlum, cŭlus, cŭla, cŭlum.[1]

long-ŭlus, a, um,	*rather long,*	from	longus.
pauper-cŭlus, a, um,	*rather poor,*	"	pauper.

[1] See 319, foot-note.

1. **Olus**, **ellus**, and **illus**, also occur as in nouns.

2. **Cŭlus** is sometimes added to comparatives: *dūrius-cŭlus*, somewhat hard, from *dūrius*.

III. Adjectives from Verbs.

328. Verbal adjectives generally end in

bundus, **cundus**, **ĭdus**, **ĭlis**, **bĭlis**, **ax**.[1]

mīrā-bundus,	*wondering*,	from	mīror.
vĕrē-cundus,	*diffident*,	"	vĕreor.
căl-ĭdus,	*warm*,	"	căleo.
păv-ĭdus,	*fearful*,	"	păveo.
dŏc-ĭlis,	*docile*,	"	dŏceo.
ămā-bĭlis,	*worthy of love*,	"	ămo.
pugn-ax,	*pugnacious*,	"	pugno.
aud-ax,	*daring*,	"	audeo.

1. **Bundus** and **cundus** have nearly the force of the present participle; but *bundus* is somewhat more expressive than the Part.: *laetābundus*, rejoicing greatly; and *cundus* generally denotes some characteristic rather than a single act or feeling: *vĕrē-cundus*, diffident.

2. **Idus** retains the simple meaning of the verb.

3. **Ilis** and **bĭlis** denote *capability*, generally in a passive sense: *ămābĭlis*, capable or worthy of being loved; sometimes in an *active* sense: *terrĭbĭlis*, terrible, capable of producing terror. *Bĭlis* is sometimes added to the Supine stem: *flex-ĭ-bĭlis*, flexible.

4. **Ax** denotes *inclination*, generally a faulty one: *lŏquax*, loquacious.

5. **Uus**, **ŭlus**, **tĭcius**, and **tīvus**, also occur:—(1) *uus* in the sense of *ĭdus*: *văc-uus*, vacant.—(2) *ŭlus* in the sense of *ax*: *crēd-ŭlus*, credulous.—(3) *tĭcius* and *tīvus* in the sense of the Perf. Part.: *fic-tĭcius*, feigned, from *fingo*; *cap-tīvus*, captive, from *căpio*.

IV. Adjectives from Adverbs and Prepositions.

329. A few adjectives are formed from adverbs and prepositions:

hŏdiernus,	*of this day*,	from	hŏdiē.
contrārius,	*contrary*,	"	contrā.

DERIVATION OF VERBS.

330. Derivative Verbs are formed from *Nouns*, *Adjectives*, and *Verbs*.

---

[1] See 319, foot-note.

I. Verbs from Nouns and Adjectives.

331. Verbs formed from nouns and adjectives are called *Denominatives.* They end in

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. IV.
o,	**eo,**	**io.**

cūro,	*to cure,*	from	cūra.
nōmĭno,	*to name,*	"	nōmĕn.
lībĕro,	*to liberate,*	"	lībĕr.
flōreo,	*to bloom,*	"	flōs.
lūceo,	*to shine,*	"	lux.
albeo,	*to be white,*	"	albus.
fīnio,	*to finish,*	"	fīnis.
mollio,	*to soften,*	"	mollis.

1. Denominatives of the Second Conjugation are intransitive, but most of the others are transitive.

2. **Asco** and **esco** occur in Inceptives. See 332, II.

3. Deponent. Derivatives, like other verbs, may of course be deponent: *dŏmĭnŏr*, to domineer, from *domĭnus.*

II. Verbs from Verbs.

332. I. Frequentatives denote *repeated* or *continued* action. They are of the first conjugation, and end in **ĭto,** or **to,** sometimes **so.**

clām-ĭto,[1]	*to exclaim,*	from	clāmo.
vŏl-ĭto,	*to flit,*	"	vŏlo.
hăb-ĭto,	*to have often,*	"	hăbeo.
ăg-ĭto,	*to put in motion often,*	"	ăgo.
can-to,	*to sing,*	"	căno.
cur-so,	*to run about,*	"	curro.

1. Primitives of Conj. I. take **ĭto**, but contraction sometimes takes place: *adjū-to* for *adjŭv-ĭto,* to assist often, from *adjŭvo.*

2. **So** is used with primitives which form the Supine in *sum.* See 257.

3. Frequentatives may be formed from other frequentatives: *cant-ĭto,* to sing often, from *can-to,* from *căno.*

4. **Esso** and **isso** form derivatives which are generally classed with *frequentatives,* though they are *intensive* in force, denoting *earnest* rather than *repeated* action, and are of Conj. III.: *făcio, făcesso,* to do earnestly;

---

[1] *Ito* takes the place of the final stem-vowel. This is true of all endings beginning with a vowel.

incĭpio, incĭpisso, to begin eagerly. The regular frequentatives sometimes have the same force: *răpio, rapto*, to seize eagerly.

II. Inceptives or Inchoatives denote the beginning of the action. They are of the third conjugation, and end in

asco,	esco,		isco.[1]	
gĕl-asco,	*to begin to freeze*,	from	gĕlo,	āre.
rŭb-esco,	*to grow red*,	"	rŭbeo,	ēre.
trĕm-isco,	*to begin to tremble*,	"	trĕmo,	ĕre.
obdorm-isco,	*to fall asleep*,	"	obdormio,	īre.

1. **Asco** is used in inceptives from verbs of Conj. I., and in a few from nouns and adjectives: *puĕr, puĕrasco*, to become a boy.

2. **Esco** is by far the most common ending, and is used in inceptives from verbs of Conj. II., and in many from nouns and adjectives: *dūrus, dūresco*, to grow hard.

III. Desideratives denote a *desire* to perform the action. They are of the fourth conjugation, and are formed from the Supine stem by adding **ŭrio**:

ēs-ŭrio,	*to desire to eat*,	from	ĕdo,	ēsum.
empt-ŭrio,	*to desire to buy*,	"	ĕmo,	emptum.

IV. Diminutives denote a *feeble* action.[2] They are of the first conjugation, and end in **illo**:

cant-illo,	*to sing feebly*,	from	canto.[1]
conscrīb-illo,	*to scribble*,	"	conscrībo.

DERIVATION OF ADVERBS.

333. Adverbs are formed from *Nouns*, *Adjectives*, *Participles*, *Pronouns*, and *Prepositions*.

I. Adverbs from Nouns.

334. Adverbs are formed from Nouns

1. By simply taking a case-ending, as that of the accusative, ablative, or locative:

partĭm, partly; *forte*, by chance; *jūre*, with right, rightly; *tempŏre, tempŏri*, in time; *hĕrī*, yesterday.

---

[1] See foot-note on page 148.

[2] Sometimes treated as *Denominatives* from supposed Diminutive Nouns.

2. By taking special endings:

1) **ātĭm, tĭm**, denoting MANNER: *grex, grĕg-ātim*, by herds; *fūr, fur-tim*, by stealth.

2) **ĭtŭs**, denoting ORIGIN, SOURCE: *caelum, cael-ĭtus*, from heaven; *fundus, fund-ĭtus*, from the foundation.

II. Adverbs from Adjectives and Participles.

335. Adverbs from adjectives and participles generally end in

ē, tĕr, ĭtĕr.

doctus, doct-ē, learnedly; *lībĕr, libĕr-ē*, freely; *ēlĕgans, ēlegan-ter*, elegantly; *ămans, aman-ter*, lovingly; *prūdens, pruden-ter*, prudently; *cĕlĕr, celer-ĭter*, quickly.

1. Stems in **o** take **ē** or **ĭtĕr**; some both **ē** and **ĭtĕr**: *dūrus, dur-ē, dur-ĭter*, hardly.

2. Stems in **nt** take **tĕr**, but drop the final **t** of the stem. See examples.

3. Adverbs are also formed with the endings **ātĭm, ĭm**, and **ĭtŭs**: *singŭli, singul-ātim*, one by one; *passus* (part.) *pass-im*, everywhere; *divīnus, divin-ĭtus*, divinely.

4. Certain cases of adjectives are often used as adverbs:

1) Neuter accusatives in **e, um**, rarely **a**: *făcĭle*, easily; *multum, multa*, much.

2) Ablatives in **a, o, is**: *dextra*, on the right; *consulto*, designedly; *paucis*, briefly, in few words.

3) Accusatives in **am**: *bĭfārĭam*, in two parts; *multĭfārĭam*, in many parts or places (*partem*, understood).

5. Numeral Adverbs.—See 181.

III. Adverbs from Pronouns.

336. Various adverbs are formed from Pronouns: thus from *hĭc, illĕ*, and *istĕ*, are formed

hīc,	*here;*	hūc,	*hither;*	hinc,	*hence.*
illīc,	*there;*	illūc,	*thither;*	illinc,	*thence.*
istīc,	*there;*	istūc,	*thither;*	istinc,	*thence.*

IV. Adverbs from Prepositions.

337. A few adverbs are formed from Prepositions, or are at least related to them:

intrā, intrō, within; *ultrā, ultrō*, beyond; *ĭn, intŭs*, within; *sŭb, subtŭs*, beneath.

COMPOSITION OF WORDS.

338. The elements of a compound may unite in three distinct ways:

I. The two elements may unite without change of form:[1] *dĕcem-vĭri*, the decemvirs, ten men; *ăb-eo*, to go away.

II. One element, generally the first, may be put in an oblique case, generally the genitive, dependent upon the other: *lēgis-lātor*, legislator, from *lex*, *lēgis*, and *lātor*.

III. The stem of the first element may unite with the second element, or with its stem: *bellĭ-gĕro*, to wage war, from *bellum* and *gĕro*; *magn-ănĭmus*, magnanimous, from *magnus* and *ănĭmus*; *frūg-ĭ-fĕr*, fruit-bearing, from *frux* and *fĕro*.

1. The final vowel of the stem is often dropped, as in *magn-anĭmus*, or changed, as in *belli-gĕro*. Sometimes a connecting vowel is inserted between the parts of a compound: *frūg-ĭ-fĕr*, fruit-bearing.

2. Prepositions in Composition admit the following *euphonic changes*.

A, ăb, abs:—*ā* before *m* and *v*; *abs* before *c*, *p*, *t*; *ăb* before the vowels and the other consonants: *ā-mitto*; *abs-condo*; *ăb-eo*, *ab-jicio*. But *abs* before *p* drops *b*: *as-porto* for *abs-porto*. *Ab* becomes *au* in *au-fĕro* and *au-fŭgio*.

Ad,—unchanged before vowels and before *b*, *d*, *h*, *j*, *m*, and *v*; **d** generally assimilated before the other consonants, but changed to *c* before *q* and dropped before *gn* and often before *sc*, *sp*, and *st*: *ăd-eo*, *ad-do*, *ad-jungo*; *af-fĕro*, *al-lĭgo*; *ac-quīro*, *a-gnosco* (*ad* and *gnosco*), *a-scendo*.

Ante,—the original form **anti**, retained in *antĭ-cĭpo* and *anti-sto*.

Circŭm,—unchanged, except in *circu-eo*.

Cŏm for *cŭm*,—(1) unchanged before *b*, *m*, *p*: *com-bĭbo*, *com-mitto*,—(2) **m** generally dropped before vowels, *h*, and *gn*: *co-eo*, *co-haero*, *co-gnosco*,—(3) **m** assimilated before *l*, *n*, *r*: *col-lĭgo*, *cor-rumpo*,—(4) **m** changed to *n* before the other consonants: *con-fĕro*, *con-gĕro*.

E, ex:—*ex* before vowels and before *c*, *h*, *p*, *q*, *s*, *t*, and with assimilation before *f*; *e* generally before the other consonants and sometimes before *p* and *s*: *ex-eo*, *ex-pōno*, *ef-fĕro*; *ē-dūco*, *ē-lĭgo*, *ē-pōto*, *e-scendo*. *S* after *ex* is often dropped: *exspecto* or *expecto*.

In,—**n** assimilated before *l*, *m*, *r*, changed to *m* before *b*, *p*; in other situations unchanged: *il-lūdo*, *im-mitto*; *im-buo*, *im-pōno*; *ĭn-eo*, *in-dūco*.

---

[1] Except of course euphonic changes.

Intĕr,—unchanged, except in *intel-lĭgo.*

Ob,—**b** assimilated before *c, f, p;* in other situations generally unchanged: *oc-curro, of-ficio, op-pōno; ob-jĭcio, ob-sto.* But **b** is dropped in *ŏ-mitto*, and an old form *obs* occurs in a few words: *obs-ŏlesco, os-tendo* for *obs-tendo* (*b* dropped).

Pĕr,—unchanged, except in *pel-lĭcio, pel-lūceo*, and *pe-jĕro.*

Post, unchanged except in *pō-moerium* and *pō-mĕrīdiānus.*

Pro, prōd:—*prōd* the usual form before a vowel: *prōd-eo, prōd-ĭgo.*

Sŭb,—**b** assimilated before *c, f, g, p*, generally before *m* and *r*: dropped before *sp*; in other situations unchanged: *suc-cumbo, su-spĭcio* for *sub-spicio; sŭb-eo, sub-dūco.* An old form *subs* shortened to *sus* occurs in a few words: *sus-cipio, sus-pendo.*

Trans drops *s* before *s*, and often *ns* before *d, j, n: trans-eo, trans-fĕro; tran-sĭlio* for *trans-sĭlio; trā-do* for *trans-do; tra-jĭcio* for *trans-jĭcio; trā-no* for *trans-no.*

3. Inseparable Prepositions (307) also admit *euphonic changes:*

Ambi, amb:—*amb* before vowels; *ambĭ, am*, or *an* before consonants: *amb-ĭgo; ambĭ-dens, am-pŭto, an-quīro.*

Dis, di: *dĭs* before *c, p, q, t, s* before a vowel, and with assimilation, before *f*; *dī* in most other situations: *dis-curro, dis-pōno, dif-fluo; dī-dūco, di-mŏveo.* But *dĭr* occurs in *dĭr-ĭmo* and *dĭr-ĭbeo* (*dis* and *habeo*), and both *dis* and *di* occur before *j*: *dis-jungo, di-judĭco.*

In,—**n** dropped before *gn*: *i-gnosco;* otherwise like the prep. *in* above.

Por,—**r** assimilated before *l* and *s*; in other situations unchanged: *pol-lĭceor, pos-sĭdeo, por-rĭgo.*

Red, re:—*rĕd* before vowels, before *h*, and in *red-do; rĕ* in other situations: *rĕd-eo, rĕd-ĭgo, rĕd-hĭbeo; rĕ-clūdo, rĕ-vello.*

Sed, se: *sĕd* before vowels, *sē* before consonants: *sĕd-ĭtio, sē-pōno.*

339. In Compound Nouns, the first part is generally a noun, but sometimes an adjective, adverb, or preposition; the second part is a verb or noun:

artĭ-fex,	*artist,*	from	ars and făcio.
caprĭ-cornus,	*capricorn,*	"	căpĕr and cornu.
aequĭ-noctium,	*equinox,*	"	aequus and nox.
nē-mo,	*nobody,*	"	nē and hŏmo.
prō-nōmĕn,	*pronoun,*	"	prō and nōmĕn.

1. Genitive in Compounds.—In compounds of two nouns, or of a noun and an adjective, the first part is often a genitive: *lēgis-lātor*, legislator; *jūris-consultus*, lawyer.

2. Compounds in **fex, cĕn**, and **cŏla**, are among the most important compounds of nouns and verbs; *fex* from *făcio; cĕn* from *căno; cŏla* from *cŏlo: artĭ-fex*, artist; *tŭbĭ-cĕn*, trumpeter; *ăgrĭ-cŏla*, husbandman.

340. In COMPOUND ADJECTIVES, the first part is generally a noun, adjective, or preposition, and the second a noun, adjective or verb:

lētĭ-fer,	*death-bearing,*	from	lētum and fĕro.
magn-ănĭmus,	*magnanimous,*	"	magnus and ănĭmus.
per-făcĭlis,	*very easy,*	"	pĕr and făcĭlis.

341. In COMPOUND VERBS the first part is a noun, adjective, verb, adverb, or preposition, and the second is a verb:

aedĭ-fĭco,	*to build,*	from	aedēs and făcio.
amplĭ-fĭco,	*to enlarge,*	"	amplus and făcio.
pătĕ-făcio,	*to open,*	"	păteo and făcio.
bĕnĕ-făcio,	*to benefit,*	"	bĕnĕ and făcio.
ăb-eo,	*to go away,*	"	ăb and eo.

1. When the first part is a verb, the second is generally *făcio: pătĕ-făcio.*

2. When the first part is a noun or adjective, the second is generally *făcio* or *ăgo.* These verbs then become *fĭco* and *ĭgo* of Conj. I.: *aedĭ-fĭco,* āre, to build; *nāv-ĭgo,* āre, to sail, from *nāvis* and *ăgo.*

3. Verbs compounded with prepositions often undergo certain vowel-changes.

1) *A* short and *ĕ* generally become *ĭ: hăbeo, ăd-hĭbeo; tĕneo, con-tĭneo.* But *a* sometimes becomes *e* or *u: carpo, dē-cerpo; calco, con-culco.*

2) *Ae* becomes *ī: caedo, in-cīdo.*

3) *Au* generally becomes *ō* or *ū: plaudo, ex-plōdo; claudo, in-clūdo.*

4. Changes in Prepositions.—See 338, 2 and 3.

342. COMPOUND ADVERBS are variously formed, but most of them may be divided into three classes:

1. Such as consist of an oblique case with its preposition: *ad-mŏdum,* very, to the full measure; *ob-viam,* in the way.

2. Such as consist of a noun with its adjective: *hŏ-diē* (*hoc* and *diē*), to-day, on this day; *quā-rē,* wherefore, by which thing.

3. Such as consist of two particles: *ăd-hūc,* hitherto; *inter-dŭm,* sometimes; *in-sŭpĕr,* moreover.

PART THIRD.

S Y N T A X.

CHAPTER I.

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

SECTION I.

CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

343. SYNTAX treats of the construction of sentences.

344. A sentence is thought expressed in language.

345. In their STRUCTURE, sentences are either *Simple*, *Complex*, or *Compound*:

I. A SIMPLE SENTENCE expresses but a single thought:

Deus mundum aedĭfĭcāvit, *God made the world.* Cic.

II. A COMPLEX SENTENCE expresses two (or more) thoughts so related that one is dependent upon the other:

Dōnec ĕris fēlix, multos nŭmĕrābis ămīcos; *So long as you are prosperous, you will number many friends.* Ovid.

1. CLAUSES.—In this example two simple sentences, (1) "*You will be prosperous,*" and (2) "*You will number many friends,*" are so united that the first only specifies the *time* of the second: *You will number many friends* (when?), *so long as you are prosperous.* The parts thus united are called *Clauses* or *Members.*

2. PRINCIPAL AND SUBORDINATE.—The part of the complex sentence which makes complete sense of itself—*multos numerābis amīcos*—is called the *Principal Clause;* and the part which is dependent upon it—*donec eris felix*—is called the *Subordinate Clause.*

III. A COMPOUND SENTENCE expresses two or more independent thoughts:

Sol ruit et montes umbrantur, *The sun descends and the mountains are shaded.* Virg.

346. In their USE, sentences are either *Declarative*, *Interrogative*, *Imperative*, or *Exclamatory*.

I. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion:

Miltiădes accūsātus est, *Miltiades was accused.* Nep.

II. An Interrogative Sentence has the form of a question:

Quis non paupertātem extĭmescit, *Who does not fear poverty?* Cic

1. Interrogative Words.—Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word—either an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne, nonne, num:*

1) Questions with *ne* ask for information: *Scribitne*, Is he writing? *Ne* is always thus appended to some other word. But *ne* appended to the principal verb often suggests the answer *yes*, while appended to any other word, it often suggests the answer *no*. It is sometimes appended to *utrum*, *num*, or *an*, without affecting their meaning, and sometimes inserted in the clause after *utrum:*

Utrum tăceamne, an praedicem, *Shall I be silent, or shall I speak?* Ter.

2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes: Nonne scribit*, Is he not writing? *Non* for *nonne* indicates surprise that there should be any doubt on the question: *Non vides*, Do you really not see?

3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no: Num scribit*, Is he writing?

4) Questions with *an*. See 2. 4) below.

5) The interrogative word is sometimes omitted, and sometimes *numquid* is used for *num*, and *ecquid* for *ne* or *nonne: Ecquid vides*, Do you not see?

2. Double Questions.—Double or disjunctive questions offer a choice or alternative, and generally take one of the following forms:

1) The first clause has *utrum*, *num*, or *ne*, and the second *an:*

Utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est, *Is that your fault or ours?* Cic.

2) The first clause omits the particle, and the second has *an* or *ne:*

Elŏquar an sĭleam, *Shall I utter it, or keep silence?* Virg.

3) When the second clause is negative, the particle generally unites with the negative, giving *annon* or *necne:*

Sunt haec tua verba necne, *Are these your words or not?* Cic.

4) By the omission of the first clause, the second often stands alone with *an*, in the sense of *or:*

An hoc tĭmēmus, *Or do we fear this?* Liv.

5) Other forms are rare.

3. Answers.—In answers the verb or some emphatic word is usually repeated, often with *prorsus, vēro*, and the like; or if negative, with *non:*

Dixitne causam? Dixit. *Did he state the cause? He stated it.* Cic. Possŭmusne tūti esse? Non possŭmus. *Can we be safe? We cannot.* Cic.

1) Sometimes the simple particle is used; affirmatively, *sāne, ĕtiam, ĭta, vēro, certe*, etc., negatively, *non, mĭnĭme*, etc.

Vēnitne? Non. *Has he come? No.* Plaut.

III. An Imperative Sentence has the form of a command, exhortation, or entreaty:

Justĭtiam cŏle, *Cultivate justice.* Cic.

IV. An Exclamatory Sentence has the form of an exclamation:

Rĕlīquit quos vĭros, *What heroes he has left!* Cic.

Exclamatory sentences are often elliptical.

SECTION II.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

ELEMENTS OF SENTENCES.

347. The simple sentence in its *most simple form* consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied:

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks.
2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject:

Cluilius mŏrĭtur, *Cluilius dies.* Liv.

Here *Cluilius* is the subject, and *morĭtur* the predicate.

348. The simple sentence in its *most expanded form* consists only of these same parts with their various modifiers:

In his castris Cluilius, Albānus rex, mŏrĭtur; *Cluilius, the Alban king, dies in this camp.* Liv.

Here *Cluilius, Albānus rex,* is the subject in its enlarged or modified form, and *in his castris morĭtur* is the predicate in its enlarged or modified form.

349. PRINCIPAL AND SUBORDINATE.—The subject and predicate, being essential to the structure of every sentence, are called the *Principal* or *Essential* elements; but their modifiers, being subordinate to these, are called the *Subordinate* elements.

350. SIMPLE AND COMPLEX.—The elements, whether principal or subordinate, may be either simple or complex:

1. *Simple*, when not modified by other words.
2. *Complex*, when thus modified.

SIMPLE SUBJECT.

351. The subject of a sentence, expressed or implied, must be a noun or some word or words used as a noun:

Rex dēcrēvit, *The king decreed.* Nep. *Ego* scrībo, *I write.* Cic. *Vĭdeo* ĭdem vălet, *The word* video *has the same meaning.* Quint.

COMPLEX SUBJECT.

352. The subject admits the following modifiers:

I. AN ADJECTIVE:

Pŏpŭlus *Rōmānus* dēcrēvit, *The Roman people decreed.* Cic.

II. A NOUN either in apposition with the subject, in the genitive, or in an oblique case with a preposition:

Cluilius *rex* mŏrĭtur, *Cluilius the king dies.* Liv. Rex *Rŭtŭlōrum, the king of the Rutuli.* Liv. Lĭber *de offĭcĭis, The book on duties.* Cic.

1. Modifiers of Nouns.—Any noun may be modified like the subject.

2. Appositive and its Subject.—The noun in apposition with another is called an *Appositive,* and the other noun is called the *Subject* of the appositive.

3. Adverbs with Nouns.—Sometimes adverbs and adverbial expressions occur as modifiers of nouns:

Non ignāri sŭmus ante mălōrum, *We are not ignorant of past misfortunes.* Virg. Victōria ăpud Cnĭdum, *The victory at Cnidus.* Nep.

Simple Predicate.

353. The simple predicate must be either a verb or the copula *sum* with a noun or adjective:

Miltiădes est accūsātus, *Miltiades was accused.* Nep. Tu es testis, *You are a witness.* Cic. Fortūna caeca est, *Fortune is blind.* Cic.

1. Like *Sum* several other verbs sometimes unite with a noun or adjective to form the predicate. See 362. 2. A noun or adjective thus used is called a *Predicate Noun* or *Predicate Adjective.*

2. *Sum* with an *Adverb* sometimes forms the predicate:

Omnia recte sunt, *All things are right.* Cic.

Complex Predicate.

354. I. The Verb admits the following modifiers:

I. Objective Modifiers:

1. A *Direct Object* in the Accusative—that upon which the action is directly exerted:

Miltiădes *Athēnas* lībĕrāvit, *Miltiades liberated Athens.* Nep.

2. An *Indirect Object* in the Dative—that *to* or *for* which something is or is done:

Lăbōri stŭdent, *They devote themselves to labor.* Caes.

3. *Combined Objects* consisting of two or more cases:

Me rŏgāvit *sententiam, He asked me my opinion.* Cic. Pons *ĭter hostĭbus* dĕdit, *The bridge furnished a passage to the enemy.* Liv.

II. Adverbial Modifiers:

1. *Adverbs:*

Bella *fēlīcĭter* gessit, *He waged wars successfully.* Cic.

2. *Adverbial Expressions*—consisting of oblique cases of nouns, with or without prepositions:

In his castris mŏrĭtur, *He dies* (where?) *in this camp.* Liv. *Vēre* convēnēre, *They assembled* (when?) *in the spring.* Liv.

355. II. The Predicate Noun is modified in the various ways specified for the subject (352).

356. III. The Predicate Adjective admits the following modifiers:

I. An Adverb:

Sătis hŭmĭlis est, *He is sufficiently humble.* Liv.

II. A Noun in an oblique case:

1. *Genitive*: Avĭdi laudis fuērunt, *They were desirous of praise.* Cic.
2. *Dative:* Omni aetāti mors est commūnis, *Death is common to every age.* Cic.
3. *Ablative:* Digni sunt ămīcĭtiā, *They are worthy of friendship.* Cic.

SECTION III.

COMPLEX SENTENCES.

357. A Complex sentence differs from a Simple one only in taking a sentence or clause as one (or more) of its elements:

I. A Sentence as an Element:

"Cīvis Rōmānus sum" audiēbātur, "*I am a Roman citizen*" *was heard.* Cic. Alĭquis dīcat mihi: "Nulla hăbes vĭtia;" *Some one may say to me,* "*Have you no faults?*" Hor.

1. In the first example, an entire sentence—*Civis Romānus sum*—is used as the *Subject* of a new sentence; and in the second example, the sentence—*Nulla habes vitia*—is the *Object* of *dicat.*

2. Any sentence may be thus quoted and introduced without change of form as an element in a new sentence.

II. A Clause as an Element:

Trādĭtum est Hŏmērum caecum fuisse, *That Homer was blind has been handed down by tradition.* Cic. Quālis sit ănĭmus, ănĭmus nescit, *The soul knows not what the soul is.* Cic.

1. In these examples the clauses used as elements have undergone certain changes to adapt them to their subordinate rank. The clause *Homērum caecum fuisse,* the subject of *tradĭtum est,* if used as an independent sentence, would be *Homērus caecus fuit;* and the clause *Qualis sit anĭmus,* the object of *nescit,* would be *Qualis est anĭmus,* What is the soul?

2. Forms of Subordinate Clauses.

1) Infinitive with Subject Accusative:

Hoc majōres dīcĕre audīvi, *I have heard that our ancestors said this.* Cic.

2) Indirect Questions:

Quid dies fĕrat, incertum est, *What a day may bring forth is uncertain.* Cic.

3) Relative Clauses:

Sententia, quae tūtissĭma vĭdēbātur, *The opinion which seemed the safest.* Liv.

4) Clauses with Conjunctions:

Mos est ut dīcat, *It is his custom to speak.* Cic. Priusquam lūcet, adsunt, *They are present before it is light.* Cic.

358. Infinitive Clauses sometimes drop their subjects:

Dīlĭgi jūcundum est, *It is pleasant to be loved.* Cic. Vīvĕre est cōgĭtāre, *To live is to think.* Cic. See 545. 2.

359. Participles often supply the place of subordinate clauses.

Plăto *scrībens* mortuus est, *Plato died while writing*, or *while he was writing.* Cic. See 576–578.

SECTION IV.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

360. Compound sentences express two or more independent thoughts, and are of five varieties:

I. Copulative Sentences—in which two or more thoughts are presented in harmony with each other:

Sol ruit et montes umbrantur, *The sun descends and the mountains are shaded.* Virg.

II. Disjunctive Sentences—in which a choice between two or more thoughts is offered:

Audendum est ălĭquid aut omnia pătienda sunt, *Something must be risked or all things must be endured.* Liv.

III. Adversative Sentences—in which the thoughts are opposed to each other:

Gyges a nullo vĭdēbātur, ipse autem omnia vĭdēbat, *Gyges was seen by no one, but he himself saw all things.* Cic.

IV. Illative Sentences—which contain an inference:

Nihil lăbōras, ĭdeo nihil hăbes; *You do nothing, therefore you have nothing.* Phaed.

V. Causal Sentences—which contain a cause or reason:

Diffĭcĭle est consĭlium, sum ĕnim sōlus; *Consultation is difficult, for I am alone.* Cic.

1. The CONNECTIVES generally used in these several classes of compounds are the corresponding classes of conjunctions, i. e., *copulative*, *disjunctive*, *adversative*, *illative*, and *causal* conjunctions. See 310. But the connective is often omitted.

2. DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS have special connectives. See 346. II. 2.

361. Compound sentences are generally abridged when their members have parts in common. Such sentences have compound elements:

1. Compound Subjects:

Abŏrīgĭnes Trojānīque dŭcem āmīsēre, *The Aborigines and the Trojans lost their leader.* Liv.

The two members here united are: *Aborigines ducem amisēre* and *Trojāni ducem amisēre;* but as they have the same predicate, *ducem amisēre*, that predicate is expressed but once, and the two subjects are united into the compound subject: *Aborigines Trojanique.*

2. Compound Predicates:

Rōmāni părant consultantque, *The Romans prepare and consult.* Liv.

3. Compound Modifiers:

Athēnas Graeciamque lībĕrāvit, *He liberated Athens and Greece.* Nep.

CHAPTER II.

SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

SECTION I.

AGREEMENT OF NOUNS.

RULE I.—Predicate Nouns.

362. A Predicate Noun denoting the same person or thing as its Subject agrees with it in CASE:[1]

Ego sum nuntius, *I am a messenger.* Liv. Servius rex est dēclārātus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv. Orestem se esse dixit, *He said that he was Orestes.* Cic. See 353.

1. In GENDER AND NUMBER Agreement either may or may not take place. But

1) If the Predicate Noun has different forms for different genders, it must agree with its subject in gender:

Usus măgister est, *Experience is an instructor.* Cic. Histŏria est măgistra (*not* magister), *History is an instructress.* Cic.

[1] For Pred. Noun denoting a different person or thing from its subject, see 401. For convenience of reference the *Rules* will be presented in a body on page 274.

2. WITH FINITE VERBS.—Predicate Nouns are most frequent

1) With *Sum* and a few intransitive verbs: *ēvādo, exsisto, appāreo*, and the like:

Ego sum nuntius, *I am a messenger*. Liv. Hŏmo magnus ēvāsĕrat, *He had become* (turned out) *a great man*. Cic. Exstitit vindex lībertātis, *He became* (stood forth) *the defender of liberty*. Cic.

2) With Passive verbs of *appointing, making, naming, regarding, esteeming*, and the like:

Servius rex est dēclārātus, *Servius was declared king*. Liv. Mundus cīvitas existimātur, *The world is regarded as a state*. Cic.

(1) In the poets, Predicate Nouns are used with great freedom after verbs of a great variety of significations. Thus with *audio* = *appellor*: Rex audisti, *You have been called king*; i. e., have heard yourself so called. Hor.

(2) For *Predicate Accusative*, see 373. 1.

(3) The Dative of the object for which (390), *pro* with the Abl., and *lŏco* or *in nŭmĕro* with the Gen. are often kindred in force to Predicate Nouns: *hosti, pro hoste, lŏco hostis, in nŭmĕro hostium*, for or as an enemy. See also Pred. Gen. 401.

3. WITH INFINITIVES, PARTICIPLES, ETC.—Predicate Nouns are used not only with finite verbs, but also with Infinitives and Participles, and sometimes without verb or participle:

Dēclārātus rex Nŭma, *Numa having been declared king*. Liv. Cāninio consŭle, *Caninius being consul*. Cic. See 431, also *Orestem* under the rule.

1) For *Predicate Nominative* after *esse*, see 547.

2) For Infinitive or Clause as Predicate, see 553, I.; 495, 3.

RULE II.—Appositives.

363. An Appositive agrees with its Subject in CASE:

Cluilius rex mŏrĭtur, *Cluilius the king dies*. Liv. Urbes Carthāgo atque Nŭmantia, *the cities Carthage and Numantia*. Cic. See 352. 2.

1. In GENDER and NUMBER the appositive conforms to the same rule as the predicate noun. See 362. 1.

2. The SUBJECT of the appositive is often omitted:

Hostis hostem occīdĕre vŏlui, *I* (*ego* understood) *an enemy wished to slay an enemy*. Liv.

3. FORCE OF APPOSITIVES.—Appositives are generally kindred in force to Relative clauses, but sometimes to Temporal clauses:

Cluilius rex, *Cluilius* (who was) *the king*. Liv. Fūrius puer didicit, *Furius learned, when a boy*, or *as a boy*. Cic.

4. PARTITIVE APPOSITIVE.—The parts are sometimes in apposition with the whole:

Duo rēges, ille bello, hic pāce cīvitātem auxērunt, *Two kings advanced the state, the former by war, the latter by peace*. Liv.

Conversely the whole may be in apposition with its parts.

5. CLAUSES.—A noun or pronoun may be in apposition with a clause, or a clause in apposition with a noun or pronoun. See 445, 7; 553, II.

SECTION II.

NOMINATIVE.

364. Cases.—Nouns have different forms or cases to mark the various relations in which they are used. These cases, in accordance with their general force, may be arranged and characterized as follows:

I.	Nominative,	Case of the Subject.
II.	Vocative,	Case of Address.
III.	Accusative,	Case of Direct Object.
IV.	Dative,	Case of Indirect Object.
V.	Genitive,	Case of Adjective Relations.
VI.	Ablative,	Case of Adverbial Relations.[1]

365. Kindred Cases.—The cases naturally arrange themselves in pairs: the Nominative and Vocative require no governing word; the Accusative and Dative are the regular cases of the Object of an action; the Genitive has usually the force of an Adjective, and the Ablative that of an Adverb.

366. Nominative.—The Nominative is either the Subject of a Sentence or in agreement with another Nominative.

RULE III.—Subject Nominative.

367. The Subject of a Finite Verb is put in the Nominative:[2]

Servius regnāvit, *Servius reigned.* Liv. Pătent portae, *The gates are open.* Cic. Rex vīcit, *The king conquered.* Liv.

1. The Subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively:

Ego rēges ejēci, *I have banished kings.* Cic.

2. Subject Omitted.—The subject is generally omitted

1) When it is a Personal Pronoun, unless expressed for contrast or emphasis, and when it can be readily supplied from the context:

Discipŭlos mŏneo, ut stŭdia ăment, *I instruct pupils to love their studies.* Quint.

2) When it means men, people: *Fĕrunt,* They say.

3) When the verb is impersonal: *Pluit,* It rains.

3. Verb Omitted.—The Verb is sometimes omitted, when it can be readily supplied, especially *est* and *sunt:*

---

[1] This arrangement is adopted in the discussion of the cases, because, it is thought, it will best present the force of the several cases and their relation to each other.

[2] For the Subject of the Infinitive, see 545. For the agreement of the verb with its subject, see 460.

Ecce tuae littĕrae, *Lo your letter* (comes). Cic. Tot sententiae, *There are* (sunt) *so many opinions.* Ter. Consul prŏfectus (est), *The consul set out.* Liv.

1) *Făcio* is often omitted in short sentences and clauses. Thus with *nihil ăliud* (amplius, minus, etc.) *quam, nihil praeterquam* = merely, *si nihil ăliud, finem,* etc.: Nihil ăliud quam stĕtĕrunt, *They merely stood* (did nothing other than). Liv. Also in brief expressions of opinion: Recte ille, *He does rightly.* Cic.

368. Agreement.—A Nominative in agreement with another nominative is either a Predicate Noun or an Appositive. See 362 and 363.

For the Predicate Nominative after a verb with *esse*, see 547.

SECTION III.

VOCATIVE.

RULE IV.—Case of Address.

369. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative:

Perge, Laeli, *Proceed, Laelius.* Cic. Quid est, Cătĭlīna, *Why is it, Catiline?* Cic. Tuum est, Servi, regnum, *The kingdom is yours, Servius.* Liv. O dii immortāles, *O immortal gods.* Cic.

1. With Interjections.—The vocative is used both with and without interjections.

2. Nominative for Vocative.—In poetry and sometimes in prose, the nominative in apposition with the subject occurs where we should expect the vocative:

Audi tu, pŏpŭlus Albānus, *Hear ye, Alban people.* Liv. Here *popŭlus* may be treated as a Nom. in apposition with *tu*, though it may also be treated as an irregular Voc. See 52, 3.

3. Vocative for Nominative.—Conversely the vocative by attraction sometimes occurs in poetry where we should expect the nominative:

Quĭbus, Hector, ab ōris exspectāte vĕnis, *From what shores, Hector, do you anxiously awaited come?* Virg.

SECTION IV.

ACCUSATIVE.

370. The Accusative is used

I. As the Direct Object of an Action.
II. As the Subject of an Infinitive.
III. In Agreement with another Accusative.
IV. In an Adverbial Sense—with or without Prepositions.
V. In Exclamations—with or without Interjections.

I. Accusative as Direct Object.

RULE V.—Direct Object.

371. The Direct Object of an action is put in the Accusative:

Deus mundum aedĭfĭcāvit, *God made the world.* Cic. Lĭbĕra rem publĭcam, *Free the republic.* Cic. Pŏpŭli Rōmāni sălūtem dēfendĭte, *Defend the safety of the Roman people.* Cic.

1. The Direct Object may be

1) The *Object,* person or thing, on which the action of the verb is directly exerted, as *salūtem* above.

2) The *Effect* of the action, i. e., the object produced by it, as *mundum* above.

3) The *Cognate Accusative.* Many verbs, generally intransitive, sometimes become so far transitive as to admit an accusative of *cognate* or *kindred* meaning:

Eam vītam vīvĕre, *to live that life.* Cic. Mīrum somniāre somnium, *to dream a wonderful dream.* Plaut. Servĭtūtem servīre, *to serve a servitude.* Ter.

(1) This accusative is usually qualified by an adjective as in the first two examples.

(2) Neuter Pronouns and Adjectives often supply the place of the Cognate accusative:

Eădem peccat, *He makes the same mistakes.* Cic. Hoc stŭdet ūnum, *He studies this one thing* (this one study). Hor. Id assentior, *I make this assent.* Cic. Idem glōriāri, *to make the same boast.* Cic.

(3) The object is often omitted when it is a reflexive (184, 5) or can be easily supplied: *mŏveo* — mŏveo me, I move (myself); *vertit* — vertit se, he moves (himself).

(4) Some verbs are sometimes transitive and sometimes intransitive: *augeo, dūro, incĭpio, laxo, ruo, suppĕdĭto, turbo,* etc.

2. With or Without other Cases.—The direct object may be used with all transitive verbs, whether with or without other cases. See 384. 410. 419.

3. Transitive and Intransitive Verbs.—Many verbs transitive in English are intransitive in Latin. See 385. Conversely some verbs intransitive in English are transitive in Latin, or at least are often so used, especially verbs denoting

1) *Feeling* or *Mental State: despēro,* to despair of; *dŏleo,* to grieve for; *gĕmo,* to sigh over; *horreo,* to shudder at; *lăcrĭmo,* to weep over; *moereo,* to mourn over; *mīror,* to wonder at; *rīdeo,* to laugh at; *sĭtio,* to thirst for, etc.

Hŏnōres despērat, *He despairs of honors.* Cic. Haec gĕmēbant, *They were sighing over these things.* Cic. Dētrīmenta rīdet, *He laughs at losses.* Hor.

2) *Taste* or *Smell: ŏleo, săpio,* and their compounds, both literally and figuratively:

Olet unguenta, *He smells of perfumes.* Ter. Orātio rĕdŏlet antīquĭtātem, *The oration smacks of antiquity.* Cic.

4. Compounds of Prepositions.—We notice two classes:

1) Many compounds become transitive by the force of the prepositions with which they are compounded, especially compounds of *circum*, *per*, *praeter*, *trans*, *sŭper*, and *subter:*

Murmur conciōnem pervāsit, *A murmur went through the assembly.* Liv. Rhēnum transiērunt, *They crossed* (went across) *the Rhine.* Caes.

2) Many compounds, without becoming strictly transitive, admit an Accus. dependent upon the preposition:

Circumstant sĕnātum, *They stand around the senate.* Cic.

5. Clause as Object.—An Infinitive or a Clause may be used as Direct Object:

Impĕrāre cŭpiunt, *They desire to rule.* Just. Sentīmus călēre ignem, *We perceive that fire is hot.* Cic.

6. Passive Construction.—When a verb takes the passive construction

1) The direct object of the active becomes the subject of the passive, and

2) The subject of the active becomes the Ablative of Cause (414) or the Ablative of Agent with *a* or *ab* (414. 5).

Thēbāni Lȳsandrum occīdērunt, *The Thebans slew Lysander.* Passive: Lȳsander occīsus est a Thēbānis, *Lysander was slain by the Thebans.* Nep.

7. Accusative in Special Instances.—Participles in *dus*, verbal adjectives in *bundus*, and in Plautus a few verbal nouns, occur with the accusative:

Vītābundus castra, *avoiding the camp.* Liv. Quid tĭbi hanc cūrātio est rem, *What care have you of this?* Plaut.

372. Two Accusatives.—Two accusatives without any connective, expressed or understood, may depend upon the same verb. They may denote

1. The same person or thing.
2. Different persons or things.

Any number of accusatives connected by conjunctions, expressed or understood, may of course depend upon the same verb.

RULE VI.—Two Accusatives—Same Person.

373. Verbs of making, choosing, calling, regarding, showing, and the like, admit two Accusatives of the same person or thing:

Hămilcărem impĕrātōrem fēcērunt, *They made Hamilcar commander.* Nep. Ancum rēgem pŏpŭlus creāvit, *The people elected Ancus king.* Liv. Summum consĭlium appellārunt Senātum, *They called their highest council Senate.* Cic. Se praestĭtit prōpugnātōrem lībertātis, *He showed*

himself the champion of liberty. Cic. Flaccum hăbuit collēgam, *He had Flaccus as colleague.* Nep.

1. Predicate Accusative.—One of the two accusatives is the *Direct Object*, and the other an essential part of the Predicate. The latter may be called a *Predicate Accusative.* See 362. 2. (2).

2. Verbs with Predicate Accusative.—The verbs which most frequently admit a Direct Object with a Predicate Accusative are verbs of

1) *Making, electing:* făcio, efficio, reddo,—creo, ēlĭgo, dēsigno, dēclāro.

2) *Calling, regarding:* appello, nōmino, vŏco, dico,—arbitror, existĭmo, dūco, jūdico, hăbeo, pŭto.

3) *Showing:* praesto, praebeo, exhibeo.

3. Adjective as Predicate Accusative.—The Predicate Accusative may be either Substantive or Adjective:

Hŏmines caecos reddit ăvārĭtia, *Avarice renders men blind.* Cic.

4. Passive Construction.—In the Passive these verbs take two Nominatives, a *Subject* and *Predicate*, corresponding to the two Accusatives of the Active:

Servius rex est dēclārātus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv. See 362. 2. 2.)

RULE VII.—Two Accusatives—Person and Thing.

374. Some verbs of asking, demanding, teaching, and concealing, admit two Accusatives in the Active, and one in the Passive:

Me sententiam rŏgāvit, *He asked me my opinion.* Cic. Ego sententiam rŏgātus sum, *I was asked my opinion.* Cic. Phĭlŏsŏphia nos res omnes dŏcuit, *Philosophy has taught us all things.* Cic. Artes ēdoctus fuĕrat, *He had been taught the arts.* Liv. Non te cēlāvi sermōnem, *I did not conceal from you the conversation.* Cic.

1. Person and Thing.—One accusative generally designates the *person*, the other the *thing:* with the Passive the accusative of the Person becomes the subject and the accusative of the thing is retained: see examples.

2. Verbs with two Accusatives.—Those most frequently so used are

1) *Regularly:* cēlo—dŏceo, ēdŏceo, dēdŏceo.

2) *Sometimes:* ōro, exōro, rŏgo, interrŏgo, percontor, flāgĭto, posco, rĕposco.

3. Other Constructions also occur:

1) *Cēlo:* Ablative with a preposition:

Me de hoc libro cēlāvit, *He kept me ignorant of this book.* Cic. Passive: Accus. of Neuter pronoun or Abl. with *de:* Hoc cēlāri, *to be kept ignorant of this.* Ter. Cēlāri de consilio, *to be kept ignorant of the plan.* Cic. The Dative is rare: Id Alcibiădi cēlāri non pŏtuit, *This could not be concealed from Alcibiades.* Nep.

2) *Verbs of Teaching:* Ablative with or without a preposition:

De sua re me dŏcet; *He informs me in regard to his case.* Cic. Sŏcrătem fidibus dŏcuit, *He taught Socrates* (with) *the lyre.* Cic.

3) *Verbs of Asking, Demanding:* Ablative with a preposition:

Hoc a me poscĕre, *to demand this from me.* Cic. Te iisdem de rēbus interrŏgo, *I ask you in regard to the same things.* Cic.

4) *Pĕto, postŭlo,* and *quaero* take the Ablative of the person with a preposition:

Pācem a Rōmānis pĕtiērunt, *They asked peace from the Romans.* Caes.

4. Infinitive or Clause as Accusative of thing:

Te săpĕre dŏcet, *He teaches you to be wise.* Cic.

5. A Neuter Pronoun or Adjective as a second accusative occurs with many verbs which do not otherwise take two accusatives:

Hoc te hortor, *I exhort you to this, I give you this exhortation.* Cic. Ea mŏnēmur, *We are admonished of these things.* Cic.

6. Compound Verbs.—A few compounds of *trans, circum, ad,* and *in* admit two accusatives, dependent the one upon the verb, the other upon the preposition:

Ibērum cōpias trajēcit, *He led his forces across the Ebro.* Liv.

In the Passive, not only these, but even other compounds sometimes admit an Accus. depending upon the preposition:

Praetervĕhor ostia Pantăgiae, *I am carried by the mouth of the Pantagia.* Virg.

7. Poetic Accusative.—In poetry, rarely in prose, verbs of clothing, unclothing—*induo, exuo, cingo, accingo, indūco,* etc.—sometimes take in the Passive an accusative in imitation of the Greek:

Găleam induĭtur, *He puts on his helmet.* Virg. Inūtĭle ferrum cingĭtur, *He girds on his useless sword.* Virg. Virgĭnes longam indūtae vestem, *maidens attired in long robes.* Liv.

II. Accusative as Subject of Infinitive.

375. The Accusative is used as the Subject of an Infinitive; see 545:

Plătōnem fĕrunt in Ităliam vēnisse, *They say that Plato came into Italy.* Cic.

Platōnem is the subject of *venisse.*

III. Accusative in Agreement with an Accusative.

376. The Accusative in agreement with another Accusative is either a Predicate Noun or an Appositive:

Orestem se esse dixit, *He said that he was Orestes.* Cic. Apud Hērŏdŏtum, patrem histŏriae, *in Herodotus, the father of history.* Cic. See 362 and 363.

IV. Accusative in an Adverbial Sense

377. In an Adverbial sense the Accusative is used either with or without Prepositions.

1. With Prepositions. See 433.

2. Without Prepositions.—The Adverbial use of the Accusative without Prepositions is presented in the following rules.

RULE VIII.—Accusative of Time and Space.

378. Duration of Time and Extent of Space are expressed by the Accusative:

Rōmŭlus septem et trīginta regnāvit annos, *Romulus reigned thirty-seven years.* Liv. Quinque millia passuum ambŭlāre, *to walk five miles.* Cic. Pĕdes octōginta distāre, *to be eighty feet distant.* Caes. Nix quattuor pĕdes alta, *snow four feet deep.* Liv. But

1. Duration of Time is sometimes expressed by the Ablative or the Accusative with a Preposition:

1) By the *Ablative:* Pugnātum est hōris quinque, *The battle was fought five hours.* Caes.
2) By the *Accusative with Preposition:* Per annos vīginti certātum est, *The war was waged for twenty years.* Liv.

2. Distance is sometimes expressed by the Ablative:

Millĭbus passuum sex consēdit, *He encamped at the distance of six miles.* Caes. Sometimes with a preposition: Ab millĭbus passuum duōbus, *at the distance of two miles.* Caes.

RULE IX.—Accusative of Limit.

379. The Name of a Town used as the Limit of motion is put in the Accusative:

Nuntius Rōmam rĕdit, *The messenger returns to Rome.* Liv. Plăto Tărentum vēnit, *Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic. Fŭgit Tarquĭnios, *He fled to Tarquinii.* Cic. But

1. The Accusative with *Ad* occurs:

1) In the sense of—*to, toward, in the direction of, into the vicinity of:*
Tres sunt viae ad Mŭtĭnam, *There are three roads to Mutina.* Cic. Ad Zămam pervēnit, *He came to the vicinity of Zama.* Sall.
2) In contrast with *a* or *ab:*
A Diānio ad Sĭnōpen, *from Dianium to Sinope.* Cic.

2. *Urbs* or *Oppĭdum* with a Preposition:

Pervēnit in oppĭdum Cirtam, *He came into the town of Cirta.* Sall.

3. Like Names of Towns are used

1) The Accusatives **dŏmum, dŏmos, rus:**

Scīpio dŏmum rĕductus est, *Scipio was conducted home.* Cic. Dŏmos abducti, *led to their homes.* Liv. Rus ēvŏlāre, *to hasten into the country.* Cic.

2) Sometimes the Accusative of names of Islands and Peninsulas:

Lātōna confūgit Dēlum, *Latona fled to Delos.* Cic. Pervēnit Chersŏnēsum, *He went to the Chersonesus.* Nep.

4. Names of Other Places used as the limit of motion are generally in the Accusative with a Preposition:

In Asiam rĕdit, *He returns into Asia.* Nep.

But the preposition is sometimes omitted before names of countries, and, in the poets, before names of nations and even before common nouns:

Aegyptum prōfūgit, *He fled to Egypt.* Cic. Ităliam vēnit, *He came to Italy.* Virg. Ibīmus Afros, *We shall go to the Africans.* Virg. Lāvīnia vēnit lītŏra, *He came to the Lavinian shores.* Virg.

5. A Poetic Dative for the accusative with or without a preposition occurs:

It clāmor coelo (for *ad coelum*), *The shout ascends to heaven.* Virg.

RULE X.—Accusative of Specification.

380. A Verb or Adjective may take an Accusative to define its application:

Căpĭta vēlāmur, *We have our heads veiled* (are veiled as to our heads). Virg. Nūbe hŭmĕros ămictus, *with his shoulders enveloped in a cloud,* Hor. Mīles fractus membra lăbōre, *the soldier with limbs shattered with labor* (broken as to his limbs). Hor. Aenēas os deo sĭmĭlis, *Aeneas like a god in appearance.* Virg.

1. In a strict sense, the Accusative of Specification generally specifies the part to which the action or quality particularly belongs. In this sense, it is mostly poetic, but occurs also in prose. See 429.

2. In a freer sense, this Accusative includes the adverbial use of *partem, vicem, nihil,* of *id* and *genus* in *id tempŏris, id aetātis* (at this time, age), *id gĕnus, omne genus, quod genus* (for *ejus genĕris,* etc.), etc.; also of *sĕcus, libra* and of many neuter pronouns and adjectives; *hoc, illud, id, quid* (454, 2), *multum, summum, cētĕra, relĭqua,* etc. In this sense, it is common in prose.

Maxĭmam partem lacte vīvunt, *They live mostly* (as to the largest part) *upon milk.* Caes. Nihil mōti sunt, *They were not at all moved.* Liv. Lŏcus id tempŏris vacuus ĕrat, *The place was at this time vacant.* Cic. Alĭquid id gĕnus scrībĕre, *to write something of this kind.* Cic. Quaerit, quid possint, *He inquires how powerful they are.* Caes. Quid vĕnis, *Why do you come?*

V. Accusative in Exclamations.

RULE XI.—Accusative in Exclamations.

381. The Accusative either with or without an Interjection may be used in Exclamations:

Heu me mĭsĕrum, *Ah me unhappy!* Cic. Me mĭsĕrum, *Me miserable!*[1] Cic. O fallācem spem, *O deceptive hope!* Cic. Me caecum, *Blind that I am!* Cic. Pro deōrum fĭdem, *In the name of the gods!* Cic. But

1. An Adjective or Genitive generally accompanies this accusative, as in the examples.

2. *O*, *ēheu*, *heu* are the Interjections most frequently used with the Accusative, though others occur.

3. Other Cases also occur in exclamations:

1) The *Vocative*—when an address as well as an exclamation is intended:

Pro sancte Jūpiter, *O holy Jupiter.* Cic. Infēlix Dīdo, *Unhappy Dido.* Virg.

2) The *Nominative*—when the exclamation approaches the form of a statement:

En dextra, *Lo the right hand* (there is, or that is the right hand)! Virg. Ecce tuae littĕrae, *Lo your letter* (comes)! Cic.

3) The *Dative*—to designate the person after *hei*, *vae*, and sometimes after *ecce*, *en*, *hem*.

Hei mihi, *Woe to me.* Virg. Vae tibi, *Woe to you.* Ter. Ecce tibi, *Lo to you* (lo here is to you = observe). Cic. En tibi, *This for you* (lo I do this for you). Liv. See 389. 2.

SECTION V.

DATIVE.

382. The Dative is the Case of the Indirect Object, and is used

I. With Verbs.

II. With Adjectives.

III. With their Derivatives—Adverbs and Substantives.

I. Dative with Verbs.

383. Indirect Object.—A verb is often attended by a noun designating the object indirectly affected by the action, that to or for which something is or is done. A noun thus used is called an Indirect Object.

RULE XII.—Dative with Verbs.

384. The Indirect Object is put in the Dative:

I. With Intransitive and Passive Verbs:

Tempŏri cēdit, *He yields to the time.* Cic. Sĭbi tĭmuĕrant, *They had feared for themselves.* Caes. Lăbōri stŭdent, *They devote themselves to labor.* Caes. Mundus deo pāret, *The world obeys God.*[2] Cic. Caesări supplĭcābo, *I will supplicate Caesar.*[3] Cic. Nōbis vīta dăta est, *Life has*

[1] Milton, Par. Lost, iv. 73

[2] Is subject to God.

[3] Will make supplication to Caesar.

been granted to us. Cic. Nŭmĭtōri dēditur, *He is delivered to Numitor.* Liv.

II. With Transitive Verbs, in connection with the Accusative:

Pons ĭter hostĭbus dĕdit, *The bridge gave a passage to the enemy.* Liv. Lēges cīvĭtātĭbus suis scripsĕrunt, *They prepared laws for their states.* Cic.

1. Double Construction.—A few verbs admit (1) the Dative of the person and the Accusative of the thing, or (2) the Accusative of the person and the Ablative of the thing: *alĭcui rem dōnāre*, to present a thing to any one, or *alĭquem re dōnāre*, to present any one with a thing. For the Dat. of the person, the Dat. of a thing sometimes occurs, especially if it involves persons or is in a measure personified:

Mūrum urbi circumdĕdit, *He surrounded the city with a wall.* Nep.

This double construction occurs chiefly with: *aspergo, circumdo, circumfundo, dōno, exuo, impertio, induo, inspergo, interclūdo.*

2. To and For are not always signs of the Dative: thus

1) To, denoting mere *motion* or *direction*, is generally expressed by the Accusative with or without a preposition (379. and 379. 4):

Vēni ad urbem, *I came to the city.* Cic. Dēlum vēnĭmus, *We came to Delos.* Cic. But the Dative occurs in the poets: It clāmor coelo, *The shout goes to heaven.* Virg.

2) For, *in defence of, in behalf of*, is expressed by the Abl. with *pro*; *for the sake of, for the purpose of*, sometimes by the Accus. with *in*.

Pro patria mŏri, *to die for one's country.* Hor. Dīmĭcāre pro lībertāte, *to fight for liberty.* Cic. Sătis in ūsum, *enough for use.* Liv.

3. Other English Equivalents.—Conversely the dative is often used where the English either omits to or for, or employs some other preposition. We proceed to specify the cases in which this difference of idiom requires notice.

385. The **Dative of Advantage and Disadvantage** is used with verbs signifying *to benefit* or *injure*, *please* or *displease*, *command* or *obey*, *serve* or *resist*; also, *indulge*, *spare*, *pardon*, *envy*, *threaten*, *be angry*, *believe*, *persuade*, and the like:

Sĭbi prōsunt, *They benefit themselves.* Cic. Nŏcēre altĕri, *to injure another.* Cic. Zēnōni plăcuit, *It pleased Zeno.* Cic. Displĭcet Tullo, *It displeases Tullus.* Liv. Cŭpĭdĭtātĭbus impĕrāre, *to command desires.* Cic. Deo pārēre, *to obey God.* Cic. Rēgi servīre, *to serve the king.* Cic. Hostĭbus rĕsistĕre, *to resist the enemy.* Caes. Sĭbi indulgēre, *to indulge one's self.* Cic. Vītae parcĕre, *to spare life.* Nep. Mihi ignoscĕre, *to pardon me.* Cic. Mĭnĭtans patriae, *threatening his country.* Liv. Irasci ămīcis, *to be angry with friends.* Cic. Mihi crēde, *Believe me.* Cic. Iis persuādēre, *to persuade them.* Caes.

1. Other Cases.—Some verbs of this class take the Accusative: *dēlecto, jŭvo, laedo, offendo*, etc.; *fīdo* and *confīdo* generally the Ablative (419):

Mărium jūvit, *He helped Marius.* Nep.

2. Special Verbs.—With a few verbs the force of the dative is found only by attending to the strict meaning of the verb: *nūbo*, to marry, strictly to veil one's self, as the bride for the bridegroom; *mĕdeor*, to cure, to administer a remedy to; *sătisfăcio*, to satisfy, to do enough for, etc.

3. Accusative or Dative with a difference of signification: *căvēre ălĭquem*, to ward off some one; *căvēre ălĭcui*, to care for some one; *consŭlĕre ălĭquem*, to consult, etc.; *ălĭcui*, to consult for; *mĕtuĕre, tĭmēre ălĭquem*, to fear, etc.; *ălĭcui*, to fear for; *prospĭcĕre, prōvĭdēre ălĭquid*, to foresee; *ălĭcui*, to provide for; *tempĕrāre, mŏdĕrāri ălĭquid*, to govern, direct; *ălĭcui*, to restrain, put a check upon; *tempĕrāre* (sĭbi) *ab ălĭquo*, to abstain from.

A few verbs admit either the Acc. or Dat. without any special difference of meaning: *ădūlor*, to flatter; *cŏmĭtor*, to accompany, etc.

4. Dative rendered From, occurs with a few verbs of *differing, dissenting, repelling, taking away*: diffĕro, discrĕpo, disto, dissentio, arceo, etc.

Differre cuīvis, *to differ from any one.* Nep. Discrĕpāre istis, *to differ from those.* Hor. Sĭbi dissentīre, *to dissent from himself.* Cic. See 412.

5. Dative rendered With, occurs with *misceo, admisceo, permisceo, jungo, certo, dēcerto, lucto, altercor*, and sometimes *făcio* (434. 2):

Sĕvērĭtātem miscēre cōmĭtāti, *to unite severity with affability.* Liv.

Misceo and its compounds, as also *junctus* and *conjunctus*, also take the Abl. with or without *cum*.

386. Dative with Compounds.—The dative is used with many verbs compounded with the prepositions:

ad,	**ante,**	**con,**	**in,**	**inter,**
ob,	**post,**	**prae,**	**sub,**	**super:**

Adsum ămīcis, *I am present with my friends.* Cic. Omnĭbus antestāre, *to surpass all.* Cic. Terris cohaeret, *It cleaves to the earth.* Sen. Vŏluptāti inhaerēre, *to be connected with pleasure.* Cic. Interfuit pugnae, *He participated in the battle.* Nep. Consĭliis obstāre, *to oppose plans.* Nep. Lībertāti ŏpes postferre, *to sacrifice wealth to liberty.* Liv. Pŏpŭlo praesunt, *They rule the people.* Cic. Succumbĕre dŏlōrĭbus, *to yield to sorrows.* Cic. Sŭperfuit patri, *He survived his father.* Liv.

1. Transitive Verbs thus compounded admit both the Accusative and Dative:

Se oppŏsuit hostĭbus, *He opposed himself to the enemy.* Cic.

2. Compounds of other Prepositions, especially *ab, de, ex, pro*, and *circum*, sometimes admit the Dative; while several of the compounds specified under the rule admit the Abl.: *assuesco, consuesco, insuesco, acquiesco, sŭpersĕdeo* (also with Acc.), etc.

Hoc Caesări dēfuit, *This failed* (was wanting to) *Caesar.* Caes.

3. Motion or Direction.—Compounds expressing mere motion or direction generally take the Accusative or repeat the preposition:

Adire āras, *to approach the altars.* Cic. Ad consŭles ădire, *to go to the consuls.* Cic.

In some instances where no motion is expressed, several of these compounds admit some other construction for the Dative:

In ōrātōre inest scientia, *In the orator is knowledge.* Cic.

387. The **Dative of Possessor** is used with the verb *Sum:*

Mihi est nŏverca, *I have* (there is to me) *a stepmother.* Virg. Fonti nōmen Arĕthūsa est, *The fountain has* (there is to the fountain) *the name Arethusa.* Cic. But

1. The Dative of the Name as well as of the possessor is common in expressions of naming: *nōmen est, nomen dātur*, etc.:

Scīpiōni Africāno cognōmen fuit, *Scipio had the surname Africanus.* Sall. Here *Africāno*, instead of being in apposition with *cognōmen*, is put by attraction in apposition with *Scipiōni.*

2. The Genitive of the Name dependent upon *nomen* occurs:

Nōmen Mercŭrii est mihi, *I have the name of Mercury.* Plaut.

3. By a Greek Idiom, *vŏlens, cŭpiens*, or *invītus* sometimes accompanies the dative of possessor:

Quĭbus bellum vŏlentĭbus ĕrat, *They liked the war* (it was to them wishing). Tac.

388. Dative of Agent.—The Dative of Agent is used with the Participle in *dus:*

Suum cuique incommŏdum fĕrendum est, *Every one has his own trouble to bear*, or *must bear his own trouble.* Cic.

1. Dative with Compound Tenses.—The Dative of the Agent is sometimes used with the compound tenses of passive verbs:

Mihi consĭlium captum jam diu est, *I have a plan long since formed.* Cic.

1) The Dative of Agent, with the Participle in *dus*, as in the Periphrastic Conjugation, designates the person who has the work to do; while with the Compound Tenses of passive verbs, it designates the person who has the work already done. See examples above.

2) Habeo with the Perfect Participle has the same force as est mihi with the Perfect Participle (388, 1):

Bellum hăbuit indictum, *He had a war* (already) *declared.* Cic.

3) The Ablative with *a* or *ab* occurs:

Est a vōbis consŭlendum, *Measures must be taken by you.* Cic.

2. The Real Agent with Passive verbs is denoted by the Ablative with *a* or *ab*. The Dative, though the regular construction with the Passive Periphrastic conjugation, does not regard the person strictly as agent, but rather as possessor or indirect object. Thus, *Suum cuique incommŏdum est*, means, Every one has his trouble (*cuique* Dative of Possessor), and *Suum cuique incommŏdum fĕrendum est*, Every one has his trouble to bear. So too, *Mihi consilium est*, I have a plan; *Mihi consilium captum est*, I have a plan (*already*) formed.

3. Dative with Simple Tenses.—The Dative is used with the tenses for incomplete action, to designate the person who is at once *Agent* and *Indirect Object*, the person by whom and for (to) whom the action is performed:

Hŏnesta bŏnis vīris quaeruntur, *Honorable things are sought by good men*, i. e., for themselves. Cic.

4. Dative of Agent in Poets.—In the poets the Dative is often used for the *Ablative* with *a* or *ab*, to designate simply the agent of the action :

Non intellīgor ulli, *I am not understood by any one.* Ovid.

389. Ethical Dative.—A Dative of the person to whom the thought is of special interest is often introduced into the Latin sentence when it cannot be imitated in English :

At *tĭbi* vĕnit ad me, *But lo, he comes to me.* Cic. Ad illa *mihi* intendat ănĭmum, *Let him, I pray, direct his attention to those things.* Liv. Quid *mihi* Celsus ăgit? *What is my Celsus doing?* Hor. But

1. The Ethical Dative is always a personal pronoun.

2. Ethical Dative with volo and interjections :

1) With Volo: Quid vōbis vultis? *What do you wish, intend, mean?* Liv. Avārĭtia quid sĭbi vult, *What does avarice mean*, or *what object can it have?* Cic.

2) With Interjections: *hei, vae* and some others: Hei mihi, *ah me.* Virg. Vae tĭbi, *Woe to you.* Ter. See 381. 3. 3).

RULE XIII.—Two Datives—To which and For which.

390. Two Datives—the object to which and the object for which—occur with a few verbs:

I. With Intransitive and Passive Verbs:

Mălo est hŏmĭnĭbus ăvārĭtia, *Avarice is an evil to men* (lit. *is to men for an evil*). Cic. Est mihi cūrae, *It is a care to me.* Cic. Dŏmus dēdĕcŏri dŏmĭno fit, *The house becomes a disgrace to its owner.* Cic. Vēnit Attĭcis auxilio, *He came to the assistance of the Athenians.* Nep. Hoc illi trĭbuēbātur ignāviae, *This was imputed to him as cowardice* (*for cowardice*). Cic. Iis subsĭdio missus est, *He was sent to them as aid.* Nep.

II. With Transitive Verbs in connection with the Accusative :

Quinque cohortes castris praesĭdio rĕlīquit, *He left five cohorts for the defence of the camp* (lit. *to the camp for a defence*). Caes. Pĕricles agros suos dōno rei pūblĭcae dĕdit, *Pericles gave his lands to the republic as a present* (lit. *for a present*). Just.

1. Verbs with Two Datives are

1) Intransitives signifying *to be, become, go,* and the like; *sum, fio,* etc.

2) Transitives signifying *to give, send, leave, impute, regard, choose,* and the like: *do, dōno, dūco, hăbeo, mitto, rĕlinquo, trĭbuo, verto,* etc. These take in the Active two datives with an accusative, but in the Passive two datives only, as the Accusative of the active becomes the subject of the passive. See 371. 6.

2. One Dative Omitted.—One dative is often omitted or its place supplied by a Predicate Noun:

Ea sunt ūsui, *These things are of use* (for use). Caes. Tu illi pāter es, *You are a father to him.* Tac.

3. With *Audiens* two Datives sometimes occur, the Dat. *dicto* dependent upon *audiens* and a personal Dat. dependent upon *dicto-audiens* treated as a verb of obeying (385):

Dicto sum audiens, *I am listening to the word, I obey.* Plaut. Nōbis dicto audiens est, *He is obedient to us.* Cic. Sometimes *dicto ŏbēdiens* is used in the same way: Măgistro dicto obediens, *obedient to his master.* Plaut.

II. Dative with Adjectives.

RULE XIV.—Dative.

391. With Adjectives the object to which the quality is directed is put in the Dative:

Patriae sŏlum omnĭbus cārum est, *The soil of their country is dear to all.* Cic. Id aptum est tempŏri, *This is adapted to the time.* Cic. Omni aetāti mors est commūnis, *Death is common to every age.* Cic. Cănis sĭmĭlis lŭpo est, *A dog is similar to a wolf.* Cic. Nātūrae accommŏdātum, *adapted to nature.* Cic. Graeciae ūtĭle, *useful to Greece.* Nep.

1. Adjectives with Dative.—The most common are those signifying:

Agreeable, easy, friendly, like, near, necessary, suitable, subject, useful, together with others of a similar or opposite meaning, and verbals in *bilis.*

Such are: accommŏdātus, aequālis, ălienus, ămīcus and inimīcus, aptus, cārus, făcilis and diffĭcilis, fidēlis and infidēlis, fīnĭtĭmus, grātus and ingrātus, idōneus, jūcundus and injūcundus, mŏlestus, nĕcessārius, nōtus and ignōtus, noxius, par and dispar, perniciōsus, prŏpinquus, proprius, sălūtāris, similis and dissimĭlis, vīcīnus, etc.

2. Other Constructions sometimes occur where the learner would expect the Dative:

1) *Accusative with a Preposition:* (1) **in, erga, adversus** with adjectives signifying *friendly, hostile,* etc., and (2) **ad,** to denote the *object* or *end for which,* with adjectives signifying *useful, suitable, inclined,* etc.:

Pĕrindulgens in patrem, *very kind to his father.* Cic. Multas ad res pĕrūtĭlis, *very useful for many things.* Cic. Ad cōmĭtātem prōclīvis, *inclined to affability.* Cic. Prōnus ad luctum, *inclined to mourning.* Cic.

2) *Accusative without a Preposition* with *prŏpior, proxĭmus:*

Prŏpior montem, *nearer the mountain.* Sall. Proxĭmus măre, *nearest to the sea.* Caes. See 433 and 437.

3) *Ablative with* or *without a Preposition:*

Aliēnum a vīta mea, *foreign to my life.* Ter. Hŏmĭne ălienissĭmum, *most foreign to man.* Cic. Ei cum Roscio commūnis, *common to him and Roscius* (with Roscius). Cic.

4) *Genitive:* (1) with *proprius, commūnis, contrārius;* (2) with *sĭmĭlis,*

dissimilis, assimilis, consimilis, par and *dispar*, especially to express likeness in character; (3) with adjectives used substantively, sometimes even in the superlative; (4) sometimes with *affīnis, ălienus, insuētus*, and a few others:

Pŏpŭli Rōmāni est propria lībertas, *Liberty is characteristic of the Roman people.* Cic. Alexandri sīmīlis, *like Alexander*, i. e., in character. Cic. Dispar sui, *unlike itself.* Cic. Cujus păres, *like whom.* Cic. Amīcissīmus hŏmĭnum, *the best friend of the men*, i. e., the most friendly to them. Cic.

3. **Idem** occurs with the Dative, especially in the poets:

Idem făcit occīdenti, *He does the same as kill*, or *as he who kills.* Hor.

4. For the Genitive and Dative with an adjective, see 399. 6.

III. Dative with Derivative Nouns and Adverbs.

RULE XV.—Dative.

392. A few Derivative Nouns and Adverbs take the Dative after the analogy of their primitives:

I. Verbal Nouns.—Justĭtia est obtempĕrātio lēgĭbus, *Justice is obedience to laws.* Cic. Sĭbi responsio, *replying to himself.* Cic. Opŭlento hŏmĭni servĭtus dūra est, *Serving a rich man* (servitude to) *is hard.* Plaut.

II. Adverbs.—Congruenter nātūrae vīvĕre, *to live in accordance with nature.* Cic. Sĭbi constanter dīcĕre, *to speak consistently with himself.* Cic. Proxĭme hostium castris, *next to the camp of the enemy.* Caes.

1. Dative with Nouns.—Nouns construed with the Dative are derived from verbs which govern the Dative. With other nouns the Dative is generally best explained as dependent upon some verb, expressed or understood:

Tĕgĭmenta gălеis mīlites făcĕre jubet, *He orders the soldiers to make coverings for their helmets.* Caes. Here *galeis* is probably the indirect object of *facĕre* and not dependent upon *tegimenta.* In conspectum vĕnĕrat hostĭbus, *He had come in sight of the enemy.* Caes. Here *hostĭbus* is dependent not upon *conspectum*, but upon *venĕrat;* the action, *coming in sight*, is conceived of as done to the enemy. See 398. 5.

2. Dative with Adverbs.—A few adverbs not included in the above rule occur with the Dative: *huic ūna* = *ūna cum hoc*, with him.

SECTION VI.

GENITIVE.

393. The Genitive in its primary meaning denotes *source* or *cause*, but in its general use, it corresponds to the English possessive, or the objective with *of*, and expresses various adjective relations.

1. But sometimes, especially when Objective (396, II.), the Genitive is best rendered by *to, for, from, in, on account of*, etc.:

Bĕnĕfĭcii grātia, *gratitude for a favor.* Cic. Lăbōrum fŭga, *escape from labors.* Cic.

394. The Genitive is used
I. With Nouns.
II. With Adjectives.
III. With Verbs.
IV. With Adverbs.

I. Genitive with Nouns.

RULE XVI.—Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive:

Cătōnis ōrātiōnes, *Cato's orations.* Cic. Castra hostium, *the camp of the enemy.* Liv. Mors Hămilcăris, *the death of Hamilcar.* Liv. Deum mĕtus, *the fear of the gods.* Liv. Vir consĭlii magni, *a man of great prudence.* Caes. See 363.

396. Varieties of Genitive with Nouns.—The principal varieties of the Genitive are the following:

I. The Subjective Genitive designates the *subject* or *agent* of the action, feeling, etc., including the *author* and *possessor*:

Serpentis morsus, *the bite of the serpent.* Cic. Păvor Nŭmĭdārum, *the fear of the Numidians.* Liv. Xĕnŏphontis libri, *the books of Xenophon.* Cic. Fānum Neptūni, *the temple of Neptune.* Nep.

II. The Objective Genitive designates the *object* toward which the action or feeling is directed:

Amor glōriae, *the love of glory.* Cic. Mĕmŏria mălōrum, *the recollection of sufferings.* Cic. Deum mĕtus, *the fear of the gods.* Liv.

III. The Partitive Genitive designates the *whole* of which a *part* is taken:

Quis vestrum, *which of you?* Cic. Vītae pars, *a part of life.* Cic. Omnium săpientissĭmus, *the wisest of all men.* Cic.

1. Nostrum and Vestrum.—As partitive genitives, *nostrum* and *vestrum* are generally used instead of *nostri* and *vestri*.

2. Use.—The Partitive Genitive is used

1) With *pars*, *nēmo*, *nihil*; nouns of quantity, number, weight, etc.: *mŏdius*, *lĕgio*, *tălentum*, and any nouns used partitively:

Equōrum pars, *a part of the horses.* Liv. Mĕdimnum trītĭci, *a bushel of wheat.* Cic. Pĕcūniae tălentum, *a talent of money.* Nep. Quōrum Cāius, *of whom Caius.* Cic.

2) With *Numerals* used Substantively:

Quōrum quattuor, *four of whom.* Liv. Săpientum octāvus, *the eighth of the wise men.* Hor.

(1) But the Genitive should not be used when the two words refer to the same number of objects, even though *of* be used in English: Vīvi qui (not *quōrum*) duo sŭpersunt, *the living, of whom two survive.* Cic.

3) With Pronouns and Adjectives used substantively, especially (1) with *hic, ille, quis, qui, alter, ŭter, neuter,* etc.; (2) with comparatives and superlatives; (3) with neuters: *hoc, id, illud, quid; multum, plus, plūrĭmum, mĭnus, mĭnĭmum, tantum, quantum,* etc.; (4) with *omnes* and *cuncti,* rarely:

Quis vestrum, *which of you?* Cic. Consŭlum alter, *one of the consuls.* Liv. Prior hōrum, *the former of these.* Nep. Gallōrum fortissĭmi, *the bravest of the Gauls.* Caes. Id tempŏris, *that (of) time.* Cic. Multum ŏpĕrae, *much (of) service.* Cic. Hŏmĭnum cuncti, *all of the men.* Ovid. But *omnes* and *cuncti* generally agree with their nouns: Omnes hŏmĭnes, *all men.* Cic.

Pronouns and Adjectives, except neuters, when used with the Part. Gen. take the gender of the Gen. unless they agree directly with some other word; see *Consŭlum alter* above.

4) With a few *Adverbs* used substantively; (1) with adverbs of Quantity—*abunde, affătim, nĭmis, părum, partim, quoad, sătis,* etc.; (2) with adverbs of Place—*hic, huc, nusquam, ŭbi,* etc.; (3) with adverbs of Extent, degree, etc.—*eo, huc, quo;* (4) with superlatives:

Armōrum affătim, *abundance of arms.* Liv. Lūcis nĭmis, *too much (of) light.* Ovid. Săpientiae părum, *little (of) wisdom.* Sall. Partim cōpiārum, *a portion of the forces.* Liv. Quoad ejus făcĕre pŏtest, *as far as* (as much of it as) *he is able to do.* Cic. Nusquam gentium, *nowhere in the world.* Cic. Huc arrŏgantiae, *to this degree of insolence.* Tac. Maxĭme omnium, *most of all.* Cic.

3. *Lŏci* and *lŏcōrum* occur as partitive genitives in expressions of time:

Intĕrea lŏci, *in the mean time.* Ter. Adhuc lŏcōrum, *hitherto.* Plaut.

4. For *id gĕnus = ejus gĕnĕris, sĕcus, lĭbra,* etc., see 380. 2.

5. For Predicate Genitive, see 401.

IV. The GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC designates *character* or *quality,* including *value, price, size, weight, age,* etc.

Vir maxĭmi consĭlii, *a man of very great prudence.* Nep. Mītis ingĕnii jŭvĕnis, *a youth of mild disposition.* Liv. Vestis magni prĕtii, *a garment of great value.* Cic. Exsĭlium dĕcem annōrum, *an exile of ten years.* Nep. Cŏrōna parvi pondĕris, *a crown of small weight.* Liv. See 402, III. 1.

1. A noun designating *character* or *quality* may be either in the Gen. or in the Abl. See 428.

1) But it must be accompanied by an adjective, numeral, or pronoun, unless it be a compound containing such modifier; as *hujusmŏdi* = hujus modi: *trĭdui*, from tres dies; *bĭdui*, from duo (bis) dies. With *trĭdui* and *bĭdui*, via or spătium is sometimes omitted: Abĕrant bidui, *They were two days' journey distant.* Cic.

V. The GENITIVE OF SPECIFICATION has the general force of an Appositive (363):

Virtus contĭnentiae, *the virtue of self-control.* Cic. Verbum vŏluptātis, *the word* (of) *pleasure.* Cic. Oppĭdum Antiŏchīae, *the city of Antioch.* Cic. Tellus Ausŏniae, *the land of Ausonia.* Virg.

397. Peculiarities.—We notice the following:

1. The GOVERNING WORD is often omitted. Thus

Aedes, templum, discĭpŭlus, hŏmo, jŭvĕnis, puer, etc.; *causa, grātia*, and indeed any word when it can be readily supplied:

Ad Jŏvis (*sc.* aedem), *near the temple of Jupiter.* Liv. Hannĭbal annōrum nŏvem (*sc.* puer), *Hannibal a boy nine years of age.* Liv. Nāves sui commŏdi (causa) fēcĕrat, *He had built vessels for his own advantage.* Caes. Conferre vītam Trēbonii cum Dŏlābellae (*sc.* vīta), *to compare the life of Trebonius with that of Dolabella.* Cic.

1) The governing word is generally omitted when it has been expressed before another Gen. as in the last example; and then the second Gen. is sometimes attracted into the case of the governing word: Nātūra hŏmĭnis bēluis (for *bēluārum natūrae*) antecēdit, *The nature of man surpasses* (that of) *the brutes.* Cic.

2) In many cases where we supply *son, daughter, husband, wife*, the ellipsis is only apparent, the Gen. depending directly on the proper noun expressed:

Hasdrŭbal Giscōnis, *Gisco's Hasdrubal*, or *Hasdrubal the son of Gisco.* Liv. Hectŏris Andrŏmăche, *Hector's Andromache*, or *Andromache the wife of Hector.* Virg.

2. Two GENITIVES are sometimes used with the same noun—generally one Subjective and one Objective:

Memmii ŏdium pŏtentiae, *Memmius's hatred of power.* Sall.

3. GENITIVE AND POSSESSIVE.—A Genitive sometimes accompanies a Possessive, especially the Gen. of *ipse, sōlus, ūnus, omnis:*

Tua ipsīus ămīcĭtia, *your own friendship.* Cic. Meum sōlīus peccātum, *my fault alone.* Cic. Nōmen meum absentis, *my name while absent.* Cic.

Here *ipsīus* agrees with *tui* (of you) involved in *tua; solīus* and *absentis*, with *mei* (of me) involved in meum.

398. Other Constructions—for the Genitive occur.

1. ABLATIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC. See 428.

2. An ADJECTIVE is sometimes used for the Genitive:

Bellĭca glōria = belli glōria, *the glory of war.* Cic. Conjux Hectŏrea = conjux Hectŏris, *the wife of Hector.* Virg.

3. The POSSESSIVE is regularly used for the Subjective Gen. of Personal pronouns, rarely for the Objective:

Mea dŏmus, *my house.* Cic. Fāma tua, *your fame.* Cic.

4. CASE WITH PREPOSITION.—A case with a preposition may be used for the Gen.; especially, 1) For the *Objective Genitive,* the Accusative with **in, erga, adversus**:—2) For the *Partitive Genitive,* the Accusative with **inter, ante, ăpud,** or the Ablative with **ex, de, in:**

Odium in hŏmĭnum gĕnus, *hatred of* or *towards the race of men.* Cic. Erga vos ămor, *love towards you.* Cic. Inter rēges ŏpŭlentissĭmus, *the most wealthy of* (among) *kings.* Sen. Unus ex vĭris, *one of the heroes.* Cic.

5. A DATIVE depending on the VERB is sometimes used, instead of the Genitive depending on a noun:

Urbi fundāmenta jăcĕre, *to lay the foundations of* (for) *the city.* Liv. Caesări ad pĕdes projĭcĕre, *to cast at the feet of Caesar,* i. e., before Caesar at his feet. Caes. See 392. 1.

1) The two constructions, the Gen. and the Case with Prep., are sometimes combined in the same sentence.

II. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

RULE XVII.—Genitive.

399. Many Adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning:

Avĭdus laudis, *desirous of praise.* Cic. Otii cŭpĭdus, *desirous of leisure.* Liv. Amans sui virtus, *virtue fond of itself.* Cic. Effĭciens vŏluptātis, *productive of pleasure.* Cic. Glōriae mĕmor, *mindful of glory.* Liv.

1. FORCE OF THIS GENITIVE.—The genitive here retains its usual force—*of, in respect of*—and may be used after adjectives which admit this relation.

2. ADJECTIVES WITH THE GENITIVE.—The most common are

1) Verbals in **ax** and participles in **ans** and **ens** used adjectively:

Virtūtum fĕrax, *productive of virtues.* Liv. Tĕnax prōpŏsĭti, *tenacious* (steadfast) *of purpose.* Hor. Amans patriae, *loving* (fond of) *his country.* Cic. Fŭgiens lăbōris, *shunning labor.* Caes.

2) Adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge, skill, recollection, participation, mastery, fulness,* and their contraries:

(1) DESIRE, AVERSION—*ăvĭdus, cŭpĭdus, stŭdiōsus; fastīdiōsus,* etc.; sometimes *aemŭlus* and *invĭdus,* which also take the Dative:

Contentiōnis cŭpĭdus, *desirous of contention.* Cic. Săpientiae stŭdiōsus, *studious of* (student of) *wisdom.* Cic.

(2) KNOWLEDGE, SKILL, RECOLLECTION with their contraries—*gnārus,*

ignārus, consultus, conscius, inscius, nescius, certus, incertus, suspensus; prōvidus, prūdens, imprūdens; pĕrītus, impĕrītus, rŭdis, insuētus; mĕmor, immĕmor, etc.:

Rei gnārus, *acquainted with the thing.* Cic. Prūdens rei mīlĭtāris, *skilled in military science.* Nep. Pĕrītus belli, *skilled in war.* Nep. Insuētus lăbōris, *unaccustomed to labor.* Caes. Glōriae mĕmor, *mindful of glory.* Liv. Immĕmor bĕnĕfĭcii, *forgetful of kindness.* Cic.

(3) Participation, Fulness, Mastery, with their contraries—*affīnis, consors, exsors, expers, partĭceps; plēnus, fertĭlis, rĕfertus, ĕgēnus, inops, văcuus; pŏtens, impŏtens, compos, impos*, etc.:

Affīnis culpae, *sharing the fault.* Cic. Rătiōnis partĭceps, *endowed with* (sharing) *reason.* Cic. Rătiōnis expers, *destitute of reason.* Cic. Vīta mĕtus plēna, *a life full of fear.* Cic. Mei pŏtens sum, *I am master of myself.* Liv. Virtūtis compos, *capable of virtue.* Cic.

3. Other Adjectives also occur with the Genitive.

1) A few of a signification kindred to the above:

Mănĭfestus rērum căpĭtālium, *convicted of capital crimes.* Sall. Noxius conjūrātiōnis, *guilty of conspiracy.* Tac.

2) *Sĭmĭlis, assĭmĭlis, consĭmĭlis, dissĭmĭlis; par* and *dispar*, especially to denote internal or essential likeness. See 391. 2. 4).

3) Sometimes *ăliēnus, commūnis, proprius, publĭcus, săcer, vīcīnus:*

Aliēnus dignĭtātis, *inconsistent with dignity.* Cic. Vīri proprius, *characteristic of a man.* Cic.

4) In the poets and late prose writers, especially Tacitus, a Genitive of Cause occurs with a few adjectives, especially those denoting *emotion* or *feeling*, and a Gen. having the force of—*in, in respect of, for*, especially *ănĭmi* and *ingĕnii*, with many adjectives:

Anxius pŏtentiae, *anxious for power.* Tac. Lassus mīlĭtiae, *tired of military service.* Hor. See Gen. with Verbs, 409. 2 and 4. Aeger ănĭmi, *afflicted in mind.* Liv. Anxius ănĭmi, *anxious in mind.* Sall. Intĕger aevi, *whole in respect of age*, i. e., in the bloom of youth. Virg.

4. Partitive Genitive with Adjectives. See 396. III. 3).

5. Other Constructions for the Genitive also occur:

1) Dative: Mănus sŭbĭtis ăvĭdae, *hands ready for sudden events.* Tac. Insuētus mōrĭbus Rōmānis, *unaccustomed to Roman manners.* Liv. Făcĭnŏri mens conscia, *a mind conscious of crime.* Cic.

2) Accusative with Preposition: Insuētus ad pugnam, *unaccustomed to battle.* Liv. Fertĭlis ad omnia, *productive for all things.* Plin. Avĭdus in nŏvas res, *eager for new things.* Liv.

3) Ablative with or without Preposition: Prūdens in jūre cīvīli, *learned in civil law.* Cic. Rŭdis in jūre cīvīli, *uninstructed in civil law.* Cic. His de rēbus conscius, *aware of those things.* Cic. Văcuus de dēfensōrĭbus, *destitute of defenders.* Caes. Cūris văcuus, *free from cares.* Cic. Rĕfertus bŏnis, *replete with blessings.* Cic.

6. The Genitive and Dative occur with the same adjective:

Sĭbi conscii culpae, *conscious to themselves of fault.* Cic.

III. Genitive with Verbs.

400. The Genitive with Verbs includes

I. Predicate Genitive.

II. Genitive in Special Constructions.

I. Predicate Genitive.

RULE XVIII.—Predicate Genitive.

401. A Predicate Noun denoting a different person or thing from its Subject is put in the Genitive:

Omnia hostium ĕrant, *All things belonged to the enemy.*[1] Liv. Sĕnātus Hannĭbălis ĕrat, *The senate was Hannibal's*, i. e., in his interest. Liv. Jūdĭcis est vērum sĕqui, *To follow the truth is the duty of a judge.*[2] Cic. Parvi prĕtii est, *It is of small value.* Cic.

1. Predicate Genitive and Predicate Nominative.—The Predicate Genitive is distinguished from the Predicate Nominative and Accusative by the fact that it always designates a different person or thing from its subject, while they always designate the same person or thing as their subjects. See 362.

2. Predicate Genitive and Predicate Adjective.—The genitive is often nearly or quite equivalent to a predicate adjective (353. 1): *hŏmĭnis est* = *hūmānum est*, it is the mark of a man, is human; *stulti est* = *stultum est*, it is foolish. The Gen. is the regular construction in adjectives of one ending: *săpientis est* (for *săpiens est*), it is the part of a wise man, is wise.

402. Varieties of Predicate Genitive.—The principal are,

I. Subjective or Possessive Genitive—generally best rendered by—*of*, *property of*, *duty*, *business*, *mark*, *characteristic of*:

Haec hostium ĕrant, *These things were of* (belonged to) *the enemy.* Liv. Est impĕrātōris sŭpĕrāre, *It is the duty of a commander to conquer.* Caes.

II. Partitive Genitive:

Fīes nōbĭlium fontium, *You will become one of the noble fountains.* Hor.

III. Genitive of Characteristic—including *value*, *price*, *size*, *weight*, etc.:

Summae făcultātis est, *He is* (a man) *of the highest ability.* Cic. Opĕra magni fuit, *The assistance was of great value.* Nep.

1. The Genitive of *Price* or *Value* is generally an adjective belonging to *prĕtii* understood; but sometimes *prĕtii* is expressed:

---

[1] Lit. *were of the enemy*, or *were the enemy's.*

[2] Lit. *is of a judge.*

Parvi prĕtii est, *It is of little value.* Cic. See 396. IV.

2. *Price* and *Value* with verbs of *buying, selling,* and the like, are expressed

1) Regularly by the Ablative. See 416.

2) Sometimes by the Genitive of adjectives, like the Pred. Gen. of price: Vendo frūmentum plūris, *I sell grain at a higher price.* Cic.

But the Gen. is thus used only in *indefinite* and *general* expressions of price and value. A definite price or value regularly requires the Ablative.

3) In familiar discourse sometimes by the genitives, *assis, flocci, nihili, pili* and a few others:

Non flocci pendĕre, *not to care a straw* (lock of wool) *for.* Plaut.

3. *Bŏni* and *Aequi,* as Predicate Genitives, occur in such expressions as *aequi bŏni făcĕre* and *bŏni consŭlĕre,* to take in good part.

403. Verbs with Predicate Genitive.—The Predicate genitive occurs most frequently with *sum* and *făcio,* but sometimes also with verbs of *seeming* and *regarding:*

Haec hostium ĕrant, *These things were the enemy's.* Liv. Oram Rōmānae dĭtiōnis fĕcit, *He brought the coast under* (of) *Roman rule.* Liv.

1. Transitive Verbs of this class admit in the active, an Accusative with the Genitive, as in the second example.

2. With Verbs of *Seeming* and *Regarding*—vĭdeor, hăbeo, dūco, pŭto, etc.—*esse* may generally be supplied:

Hŏmĭnis vĭdētur, *It seems to be* (esse) *the mark of a man.* Cic.

404. Other Constructions for the Genitive also occur.

1. The *Possessive* is regularly used for the Pred. Gen. of personal pronouns:

Est tuum (not *tui*) vĭdēre, *It is your duty to see.* Cic.

2. The Genitive with *Offĭcium, Mūnus, Nĕgōtium, Proprium:*

Sĕnātus offĭcium est, *It is the duty of the senate.* Cic. Fuit proprium pŏpŭli, *It was characteristic of the people.* Cic.

The Predicate Genitive could in most instances be explained by supplying some such word, but it seems to be more in accordance with the idiom of the Latin to regard the genitive as complete in itself.

3. The *Ablative of Characteristic.* See 428.

II. Genitive in Special Constructions.

405. The Genitive, either alone or with an Accusative, is used in a few constructions which deserve separate mention.

RULE XIX.—Genitive with Certain Verbs.

406. The Genitive is used

I. With **mĭsĕreor** and **mĭsĕresco:**

Mĭsĕrēre lăbōrum, *Pity the labors.* Virg. Mĭsĕrescĭte rēgis, *Pity the king.* Virg.

II. With **rĕcordor, mĕmĭni, rĕmĭniscor,** and **oblīviscor:**

Mĕmĭnit praetĕrĭtōrum, *He remembers the past.* Cic. Oblītus sum mei, *I have forgotten myself.* Ter. Flāgĭtiōrum rĕcordāri, *to recollect base deeds.* Cic. Rĕmĭnisci virtūtis, *to remember virtue.* Caes.

III. With **rēfert** and **intĕrest:**

Illōrum rēfert, *It concerns them.* Sall. Intĕrest omnium, *It is the interest of all.* Cic.

1. Explanation.—The Genitive may be explained as dependent upon *re* in *rēfert*, and upon *re* or *causa* to be supplied with *intĕrest.* With the other verbs it accords with the Greek idiom, and with verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting*, it also conforms to the analogy of the Gen. with the adjectives *mĕmor* and *immĕmor* (399. 2. 2)).

2. Construction according to sense.—The expression *Vĕnit mihi in mentem*, It occurs to my mind, equivalent to *rĕmĭniscor*, is sometimes construed with the Gen.:

Vĕnit mihi Plătōnis in mentem, *The recollection of Plato comes to my mind*, or *I recollect Plato.* Cic. But the Nom. is also admissible: Non vĕnit in mentem pugna, *Does not the battle come to mind?* Liv.

407. Other Constructions with verbs of *Remembering* and *Forgetting* also occur:

1. The *Accusative:* Mĕmĭnĕram Paulum, *I remembered Paulus.* Cic.

This is the regular construction for the *thing* (not person), with *rĕcordor*, and, if it be a neuter pronoun or adjective, also with other verbs:

Triumphos rĕcordāri, *to recall triumphs.* Cic. Ea rĕmĭniscĕre, *Remember those things.* Cic.

2. The *Ablative with De:* Rĕcordāre de cētĕris, *Bethink yourself of the others.* Cic.

This is the regular construction for the *person* with *rĕcordor*, and occurs also with *mĕmĭni*, though that verb takes the *Acc.* of a *contemporary.*

408. The Construction with *Rēfert* and *Intĕrest* is as follows:

1. The Person or Thing interested is denoted

1) By the *Genitive* as under the rule.

2) By the *Ablative Feminine* of the *Possessive:*

Meā rēfert, *It concerns me.* Ter. Intĕrest meā, *It interests me.* Cic.

This possessive regularly takes the place of the Gen. of personal pronouns, and may be explained as agreeing with *re* in *refert*, and with *re* or *causa* to be supplied with *interest.*

3) By the *Dative,* or *Accusative with* or *without Ad;* but rarely, and chiefly with *rēfert,* which moreover often omits the person:

Quid rēfert vīventi, *What does it concern one living?* Hor. Ad me rēfert, *It concerns me.* Plaut.

2. The Subject of Importance, or that which involves the interest, is expressed by an Infinitive or Clause, or by a Neuter Pronoun:

Intĕrest omnium recte făcĕre, *To do right is the interest of all.* Cic. Vestrā hoc intĕrest, *This interests you.* Cic.

3. The Degree of Interest is expressed by an Adverb, by a Neuter used adverbially, or by a Gen. of Value (402. 1 and 2):

Vestrā maxime intĕrest, *It especially interests you.* Cic. Quid nostrā rēfert, *What does it concern us?* Cic. Magni intĕrest meā, *It greatly interests me.* Cic.

4. The Object or End for which it is important is expressed by the Accusative with *ad,* rarely by the Dative:

Ad hŏnōrem nostrum intĕrest, *It is important for our honor.* Cic.

409. Genitive with other Verbs.—Many other verbs sometimes take the Genitive:

1. Some Verbs of *Plenty* and *Want,* as *ĕgeo, indĭgeo,* like adjectives of the same meaning (399. 2. 2)):

Virtus exercĭtātiōnis indĭget, *Virtue requires exercise.* Cic. Auxilii ĕgēre, *to need aid.* Caes.

2. Some Verbs of *Emotion* or *Feeling* like adjectives (399. 3. 4)):

Animi pendeo, *I am uncertain in mind.* Cic. Discrŭcior ănimi, *I am troubled in mind.* Plaut.

3. A few Verbs denoting *Mastery* or *Participation* like adjectives (399. 2. 2)), *pŏtior, ădĭpiscor, regno:*

Siciliae pŏtītus est, *He became master of Sicily.* Nep. Rērum ădeptus est, *He obtained the power.* Tac. Regnāvit pŏpŭlōrum, *He was king of the people.* Hor.

4. A Genitive of *Separation* or *Cause* occurs in the poets, with a few verbs—*abstĭneo, dēcĭpio, dēsĭno, dēsisto; mīror:*

Abstinēre īrārum, *to abstain from anger.* Hor. Lăbōrum dēcĭpitur, *He is beguiled of his labors.* Hor. Dēsine quĕrēlārum, *Cease from complaints.* Hor. Dēsistĕre pugnae, *to desist from the battle.* Virg.

5. *Sătăgo* and *Sătăgĭto* admit a genitive dependent upon *sat* (396. 4)), and verbs of *Promising* admit the Gen. *damni infecti:*

Rērum sătăgĕre, *to be occupied with* (have enough of) *business.* Ter.

6. Genitive of *Gerunds* and *Gerundives.* See 563 and 563. 5.

RULE XX.—Accusative and Genitive.

410. A few transitive verbs take both the Accusative of the Person and the Genitive of the Thing:

I. Verbs of *Reminding*, *Admonishing*.

II. Verbs of *Accusing*, *Convicting*, *Acquitting*.

III. *Mĭsĕret*, *Poenĭtet*, *Pŭdet*, *Taedet*, and *Pĭget*.

I. Reminding, etc.—Te ămīcĭtiae commŏnĕfăcit, *He reminds you of friendship.* Cic. Milĭtes nĕcessĭtātis mŏnet, *He reminds the soldiers of the necessity.* Ter.

II. Accusing, etc.—Vĭros scĕlĕris arguis, *You accuse men of crime.* Cic. Lĕvĭtātis eum convincĕre, *to convict him of levity.* Cic. Absolvĕre injūriae eum, *to acquit him of injustice.* Cic.

III. Miseret, Poenitet, etc.—Eōrum nos mĭsĕret, *We pity them* (it moves our pity of them). Cic. Consĭlii me poenĭtet, *I repent of my purpose.* Cic. Me stultĭtiae meae pŭdet, *I am ashamed of my folly.* Cic.

1. The Genitive of Thing designates, with verbs of *reminding*, etc., that to which the attention is called; with verbs of *accusing*, etc., the crime, charge, and with *mĭsĕret*, *poenĭtet*, etc., the object which produces the feeling. See examples.

2. Passive Construction.—The personal verbs included under this Rule retain the Genitive in the Passive:

Accūsātus est prōdĭtiōnis, *He was accused of treason.* Nep.

3. Verbs of Reminding, *mŏneo*, *admŏneo*, *commŏneo*, *commŏnĕfăcio*, sometimes take, instead of the Genitive,

1) The *Accusative* of a neuter pronoun or adjective, rarely of a substantive, thus admitting two accusatives:

Illud me admŏnes, *You admonish me of that.* Cic.

2) The *Ablative* with *de*, *mŏneo* generally so:

De proelio vos admŏnui, *I have reminded you of the battle.* Cic.

4. Verbs of Accusing, Convicting, sometimes take, instead of the Genitive of the crime, etc.,

1) The *Genitive* with *nōmĭne* or *crīmĭne:*

Nōmĭne conjūrātiōnis damnāti sunt, *They were condemned on the charge of conspiracy.* Cic.

2) The *Accusative* of a neuter pronoun or adjective, rarely:

Id me accūsas, *You accuse me of that.* Plaut.

3) The *Ablative* alone or with a preposition, generally *de:*

De pĕcūniis rĕpĕtundis damnātus est, *He was convicted of extortion.* Cic.

5. With Verbs of Condemning, the *Punishment* may be expressed

1) By the *Genitive:*

Căpĭtis condemnāre, *to condemn to death.* Cic.

(1) *Vōti damnāri*, to be condemned to fulfill a vow = to obtain a wish.

2) By the *Accusative* with a preposition, generally *ad:*

Ad bestias condemnāre, *to condemn to the wild beasts.* Suet.

3) By the *Ablative;* and, in the poets, sometimes by the *Dative:*

Căpĭte damnāre, *to condemn to death.* Cic.

6. With Miseret, Poenitet, Pudet, Taedet, and Piget, an Infinitive or Clause is sometimes used, rarely a neuter pronoun or *nihil:*

Me poenĭtet vixisse, *I repent having lived.* Cic.

1) Like *Mĭsĕret* are sometimes used *mĭsĕrescit*, *commĭsĕrescit*, *mĭsĕrētur*, *commĭsĕrētur*. Like *Taedet* are used *pertaedet*, *pertaesum est.*

2) *Pŭdet* sometimes takes the Gen. of the Person before whom one is ashamed: Me tui pŭdet, *I am ashamed in your presence.* Ter. Pŭdet hŏmĭnum, *It is a shame in the sight of men.* Liv.

3) *Pertaesus* admits the Accusative of the object:

Pertaesus ignāviam suam, *disgusted with his own inaction.* Suet.

7. The Accusative and Genitive occur with other Verbs.—Thus

1) With some Verbs of Freeing with the accessory notion of acquitting:

Eum culpae lībĕrāre, *to free him from blame*, i. e., to acquit him of fault. Liv. So *purgo*, *dēcĭpio*, and the like.

2) With a few Verbs of Filling, like adjectives and verbs of plenty (399. 2. 2) and 409. 1), especially *compleo* and *impleo:*

Multĭtūdĭnem rēlĭgiōnis implēvit, *He inspired* (filled) *the multitude with religion.* Liv. See 419. 2.

3) With a few transitive verbs of Emotion or Feeling (409. 2), rarely:

Te angis ănĭmi, *You make yourself anxious in mind.* Plaut.

IV. Genitive with Adverbs.

411. The Genitive is used with a few Adverbs:

1. With *Partitives.* See 396. III. 2.

2. With *Prīdie* and *Postrīdie*, perhaps dependent upon *die* contained in them, and with *Ergo* and *Tĕnus*, originally nouns:

Prīdie ejus diēi, *on the day before that day.* Caes. Postrīdie ejus diēi, *on the day after that day.* Caes. Virtūtis ergo, *on account of virtue.* Cic. Lumbōrum tĕnus, *as far as the loins.* Cic. For *tĕnus* with the Abl., see 434.

SECTION VII.

ABLATIVE.

412. The Ablative in its primary meaning is closely related to the Genitive; but in its general use, it corresponds to the English objective with—*from*, *by*, *in*, *with*, and expresses various adverbial relations. It is accordingly used

with Verbs and Adjectives, while the genitive, as the case of adjective relations, is most common with Nouns. See 393.

413. The Ablative is used as

I. Ablative of Cause, Manner, Means—including
1. Ablative of Price.
2. Ablative after Comparatives.
3. Ablative of Difference.
4. Ablative in Special Constructions.

II. Ablative of Place.
III. Ablative of Time.
IV. Ablative of Characteristic.
V. Ablative of Specification.
VI. Ablative Absolute.
VII. Ablative with Prepositions.

I. Ablative of Cause, Manner, Means.

RULE XXI.—Cause, Manner, Means.

414. Cause, Manner, and Means are denoted by the Ablative:

Ars ūtĭlĭtāte laudātur, *An art is praised because of its usefulness.* Cic. Glōria dūcĭtur, *He is led by glory.* Cic. Duōbus mŏdis fit, *It is done in two ways.* Cic. Sol omnia lūce collustrat, *The sun illumines all things with its light.* Cic. Aeger ĕrat vulnĕrĭbus, *He was ill in consequence of his wounds.* Nep. Laetus sorte tua, *pleased with your lot.* Hor.

1. Application of Rule.—This ablative is of very frequent occurrence, and is used both with verbs and adjectives.

2. The Ablative of Cause designates that *by which, by reason of which, because of which, in accordance with which* anything is or is done.

1) This includes such ablatives as *meo jūdĭcio*, in accordance with my opinion; *mea sententia, jussu, impulsu, mŏnĭtu*, etc.; also the Abl. with *dŏleo, gaudeo, glōrior, lăbōro*, etc.

The Abl. with *affĭcio*, and with *sto* in the sense of *depend upon, abide by*, is best explained as *Means*. *Affĭcio* and the Abl. are together often equivalent to another verb: *hŏnōre affĭcĕre* = hŏnōrāre, to honor; *admīrātiōne affĭcĕre* = admīrārī, to admire.

2) With *Passive* and *Intransitive* verbs, *Cause* is regularly expressed by the Abl., though a preposition with the Acc. or Abl. sometimes occurs:

Ămīcĭtia propter se expĕtĭtur, *Friendship is sought for itself.* Cic.

3) With *Transitive* verbs the Abl. without a Prep. is rare; but *causa, grătia* and ablatives in *u* of nouns used only in that case (134), *jussu, rŏgātu, mandātu*, etc., are thus used; sometimes also other words.

In other cases, *Cause* in the sense of—*on account of*, *because of*, is generally expressed—(1) by a Preposition with its case: *ob*, *propter*, *de*, *ex*, *prae*, etc.; or (2) by a Perfect Participle with an Ablative:

In oppĭdum propter tĭmōrem sēse rĕcĭpiunt, *They betake themselves into the city on account of their fear.* Caes. Regni cŭpĭdĭtāte inductus conjūrātiōnem fēcit, *Influenced by the desire of ruling, he formed a conspiracy.* Caes.

Cupiditāte in the 2d example really expresses the *cause* of the action *fēcit*, but by the use of *inductus*, it becomes the Abl. of Cause with that participle.

3. Ablative of Manner.—This ablative is regularly accompanied by some modifier, or by the Prep. *cum;* but a few ablatives, chiefly those signifying *manner*—*mōre*, *ordĭne*, *rătiōne*, etc.—occur without such accompaniment:

Vi summa, *with the greatest violence.* Nep. Mōre Persārum, *in the manner of the Persians.* Nep. Cum sĭlentio audīre, *to hear in silence.* Liv.

Per with the Acc. sometimes denotes *Manner: per vim*, violently.

4. Ablative of Means.—This includes the *Instrument* and all other *Means* employed. See also 434. 2; 414, 2, 1).

5. Ablative of Agent.—This designates the Person by whom anything is done as a voluntary agent, and takes the Prep. *A* or *Ab:*

Occīsus est a Thēbānis, *He was slain by the Thebans.* Nep.

1) The Abl. without a Prep. or the Accus. with *per* is sometimes used, especially when the Person is regarded as the *Means*, rather than as the *Agent.*

Cornua Nŭmĭdis firmat, *He strengthens the wings with Numidians.* Liv. Per Fabrĭcium, *by means of* (through the agency of) *Fabricius.* Cic.

2) Dative of *Agent.* See 388.

6. Personification.—When anything is personified as agent, the ablative with *A* or *Ab* may be used as in the names of persons:

Vinci a vŏluptāte, *to be conquered by pleasure.* Cic. A fortūna dătam occāsiōnem, *an opportunity furnished by fortune.* Nep.

7. Ablative of Accompaniment.—This generally takes *cum:*

Vīvit cum Balbo, *He lives with Balbus.* Cic. But

In describing military movements, the preposition is often omitted, especially when the Abl. is qualified by an adjective:

Ingenti exercitu prŏfectus est, *He set out with a large army.* Liv.

415. Kindred Uses of the Ablative.—Kindred to the Ablative of Cause, etc., are

I. The Ablative of Price—that by which the trade is effected.

II. The Ablative with Comparatives—that by which the comparison is effected.

III. The Ablative of Difference—that by which one object differs from another.

IV. The Ablative in Special Constructions.

RULE XXII.—Ablative of Price.

416. PRICE is generally denoted by the Ablative:

Vendĭdit auro patriam, *He sold his country for gold.* Virg. Conduxit magno dŏmum, *He hired a house at a high price.* Cic. Multo sanguĭne Poenis victōria stĕtit, *The victory cost the Carthaginians* (stood to the Carthaginians at) *much blood.* Liv. Quinquāginta tălentis aestĭmāri, *to be valued at fifty talents.* Nep. Vīle est vīginti mĭnis, *It is cheap at twenty minae.* Plaut.

1. Th ABLATIVE OF PRICE is used

1) With verbs of buying, selling, hiring, letting, *ĕmo, vendo, condūco, lŏco, vēneo*, etc.

2) With verbs of costing, of being cheap or dear, *sto, consto, lĭceo, sum*, etc.

3) With verbs of valuing, *aestĭmo*, etc.

4) With adjectives of value, *cārus, vēnālis*, etc.

2. EXCHANGING.—With verbs of exchanging—*mūto, commūto*, etc.—the thing received is generally treated as the price, as with verbs of *selling:*

Pāce bellum mūtāvit, *He exchanged war for peace.* Sall. But sometimes the thing given is treated as the price, as with verbs of *buying*, or is put in the Abl. with *cum:* Exsĭlium patria mūtāvit, *He exchanged country for exile.* Curt.

3. ADVERBS OF PRICE are sometimes used: *bĕne ĕmĕre*, to purchase well, i. e., at a low price; *cāre aestĭmāre*, to value at a high price.

4. GENITIVE OF PRICE. See 402. III.

RULE XXIII.—Ablative with Comparatives.

417. Comparatives without QUAM are followed by the Ablative:

Nihil est ămābĭlius virtūte, *Nothing is more lovely than virtue.* Cic. Quid est mĕlius bŏnĭtāte, *What is better than goodness?* Cic.

1. COMPARATIVES WITH QUAM are followed by the Nominative, or by the case of the corresponding noun before them:

Hĭbernia mĭnor quam Brĭtannia existĭmātur, *Hibernia is considered smaller than Britannia.* Caes. Agris quam urbi terrĭbĭlior, *more terrible to the country than to the city.* Liv.

2. ABLATIVE, WHEN ADMISSIBLE.—The construction with *quam* is the full form for which the Ablative is an abbreviation. This abbreviation is admissible only in place of *quam* with the Nominative or Accusative, but is not necessary even here except for *quam* with a Relative:

Scīmus sōlem majōrem esse terrā, *We know that the sun is larger than the earth.* Cic. Amīcĭtia, qua nihil mĕlius hăbēmus; *friendship, than which we have nothing better.* Cic. See also examples under the Rule.

1) In the first example the Ablative (*terra*) is admissible but not necessary, *quam terram* might have been used; but in the second example the Ablative (*quā*) is necessary, the conjunction *quam* would be inadmissible.

2) In the examples under the rule the ablatives *virtūte* and *bonitāte* are both equivalent to *quam* with the Nom. *quam virtus* and *quam bonitas*, which might have been used.

3) Instead of the Abl., a Preposition with its case, *ante*, *prae*, *praeter*, or *supra* is sometimes used: Ante ălios immānior, *more monstrous than* (before) *the others.* Virg.

3. Construction with Plus, Minus, etc.—*Plus*, *minus*, *amplius*, or *longius*, with or without *quam*, is often introduced in expressions of number and quantity, without influence upon the construction; sometimes also *major*, *minor*, etc.:

Tēcum plus annum vixit, *He lived with you more than a year.* Cic. Mĭnus duo millia, *less than two thousand.* Liv.

So in expressions of age: nātus plus trīginta annos, *having been born more than thirty years.* The same meaning is also expressed by—major trīginta annos nātus, major trīginta annis, major quam trīginta annōrum, *or* major trīginta annōrum.

4. Atque or Ac for Quam occurs chiefly in poetry and late prose:

Arctius atque hĕdĕrā, *more closely than with ivy.* Hor.

5. Alius with the Ablative sometimes occurs. It then involves a comparison, *other than:*

Quaerit ălia his, *He seeks other things than these.* Plaut.

6. Peculiarities.—*Quam pro* denotes disproportion, and many ablatives —*ŏpīniōne*, *spe*, *aequo*, *justo*, *sŏlito*, etc.—are often best rendered by clauses:

Mĭnor caedes quam pro victōria, *less slaughter than was proportionate to the victory.* Liv. Sērius spe vēnit, *He came later than was hoped* (than hope). Liv. Plus aequo, *more than is fair.* Cic.

RULE XXIV.—Ablative of Difference.

418. The Measure of Difference is denoted by the Ablative:

Uno die longiōrem mensem făciunt, *They make the month one day longer* (longer by one day). Cic. Bĭduo me antĕcessit, *He preceded me by two days.* Cic. Sunt magnĭtūdĭne paulo infra ĕlĕphantos, *They are in size a little below the elephant.* Caes.

1. The Ablative is thus used with all words involving a comparison, but adverbs often supply its place: *Multum rōbustior*, much more robust.

2. The Ablative of *Difference* includes the Abl. of *Distance* (378. 2), and the Abl. with *ante*, *post*, and *abhinc* in expressions of time (427).

RULE XXV.—Ablative in Special Constructions.

419. The Ablative is used

I. With **ūtor, fruor, fungor, pŏtior, vescor,** and their compounds:

Plūrĭmis rēbus fruĭmur et ūtĭmur, *We enjoy and use very many things.* Cic. Magna est praeda pŏtītus, *He obtained great booty.* Nep. Vescĭmur bestiis, *We live upon animals.* Cic.

II. With **fīdo, confīdo, nītor,** and **innītor:**

Nēmo pŏtest fortūnae stăbĭlĭtāte confīdĕre, *No one can trust* (confide in) *the stability of fortune.* Cic. Sălus vērĭtāte nītĭtur, *Safety rests upon truth.* Cic.

III. With Verbs and Adjectives of Plenty and Want:

Non ĕgeo mĕdĭcīna, *I do not need a remedy.* Cic. Văcāre culpa, *to be free from fault.* Cic. Villa ăbundat lacte, cāseo, melle; *The villa abounds in milk, cheese, and honey.* Cic. Urbs nūda praesĭdio, *a city destitute of defence.* Cic. Vĭrtūte praedĭtus, *endowed with virtue.* Cic.

IV. With **dignus, indignus, contentus,** and **frētus:**

Digni sunt ămīcĭtia, *They are worthy of friendship.* Cic. Nātūra parvo contenta, *nature content with little.* Cic. Frētus ămīcis, *relying upon his friends.* Liv.

V. With **ŏpus** and **ūsus:**

Auctōrĭtāte tua nōbis ŏpus est, *We need* (there is to us a need of) *your authority.* Cic. Usus est tua mihi ŏpĕra, *I need your aid.* Plaut.

1. Explanation.—This Ablative may in most instances be readily explained as the Ablative of *Cause* or *Means:* thus *ūtor,* I use, serve myself by means of; *fruor,* I enjoy, delight myself with; *vescor,* I feed upon, feed myself with; *fīdo, confīdo,* I confide in, am confident because of, etc.

2. Accusative and Ablative.—*Dignor* and transitive verbs of *Plenty* and *Want* take the Accusative with the Ablative:

Me dignor hŏnōre, *I deem myself worthy of honor.* Virg. Armis nāves ŏnĕrat, *He loads the ships with arms.* Sall. Ocŭlis se prīvat, *He deprives himself of his eyes.* Cic. See 371. 2.

1) Transitive verbs of *Plenty* and *Want* signify to fill, furnish with, deprive of, etc.: *afficio, cŭmŭlo, compleo, impleo, imbuo, instruo, ŏnĕro, orno,* etc.—*orbo, prīvo, spŏlio,* etc. *Dignor* in the best prose admits only the Abl.

2) For the *Accusative and Genitive* with some of these verbs, see 410. 7. 2).

3. Dative and Ablative.—*Opus est* and *ūsus est* admit the Dative of the person with the Ablative of the thing. See examples.

1) The Ablative is sometimes a Perfect Participle, or, with *opus est*, a Noun and Participle:

Consulto ŏpus est, *There is need of deliberation.* Sall. Opus fuit Hirtio convento, *There was need of meeting Hirtius.* Cic.

2) With *opus est*, rarely with *ūsus est*, the thing needed may be denoted—

(1) By the Nominative, rarely by the Genitive or Accusative:

Dux nōbis ŏpus est, *We need a leader*, or *a leader is necessary* (a necessity) *for us.* Cic. Tempŏris ŏpus est, *There is need of time.* Liv. Opus est cibum, *There is need of food.* Plaut.

(2) By an Infinitive, a Clause, or a Supine:

Opus est te vălēre, *It is necessary that you be well.* Cic. Opus est ut lăvem, *It is necessary for me to bathe* (that I bathe). Plaut. Dictu est ŏpus, *It is necessary to be told.* Ter.

4. Other Constructions also occur. Thus

1) *Utor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *pŏtior*, and *vescor*, originally transitive, are occasionally so used in classic authors. Their participle in *dus* is passive in sense. *Utor* admits two ablatives of the same person or thing:

Me ūtētur pătre, *He will find* (use) *me a father.* Ter.

2) *Fīdo*, *confīdo*, and *innītor* admit the Dative, rarely the Abl. with *in*.

Virtūti confīdĕre, *to confide in virtue.* Cic. See 385. 1.

3) *Dignus* and *indignus* admit the Gen., *frētus* the Dat., *nītor* and *innītor* the Acc. or Abl. with Prep., and some verbs of *Want* the Abl. with Prep.

Dignus sălūtis, *worthy of safety.* Plaut. Rei frētus, *relying upon the thing.* Liv. Văcāre ăb ŏpĕre, *to be free from work.* Caes.

4) *Genitive*.—For the *genitive* with *pŏtior*, see 409. 3. For the *genitive* with verbs and adjectives of *Plenty* and *Want*, see 409. 1, 410. 7, and 399. 2. 2).

II. Ablative of Place.

420. This Ablative designates

I. The place in which anything is or is done:

II. The place from which anything proceeds;—including *Source* and *Separation.*

RULE XXVI.—Ablative of Place.

421. I. The place in which and the place from which are generally denoted by the Ablative with a Preposition. But

II. Names of Towns omit the Preposition, and in the Singular of the First and Second declensions designate the place in which by the Locative, (45, 2):

I. Hannĭbal in Itălia fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy.* Nep. In nostris castris, *in our camp.* Caes. In Appia via, *on the Appian way.* Cic. Ab urbe prŏfĭciscĭtur, *He departs from the city.* Caes. Ex Afrĭca, *from Africa.* Liv.

II. Athēnis fuit, *He was at Athens.* Cic. Băbȳlōne mortuus est, *He died at Babylon.* Cic. Fūgit Cŏrintho, *He fled from Corinth.* Cic. Rōmae fuit, *He was at Rome.* Cic. See 48, 4.

422. NAMES OF PLACES NOT TOWNS sometimes omit the preposition:

1. The Ablative of PLACE IN WHICH, sometimes omits the preposition:

1) Generally the Ablatives—*lŏco, lŏcis, parte, partĭbus, dextra, laeva, sinistra, terra, mărī,* and other Ablatives when qualified by *tōtus:*

Alĭquid lŏco pōnĕre, *to put anything in its place.* Cic. Terra mărīque, *on land and sea.* Liv. Tōta Graecia, *in all Greece.* Nep.

2) Sometimes other Ablatives, especially when qualified by adjectives: Hoc libro, *in this book.* Cic.

In poetry the preposition is often omitted even when the ablative has no modifier: Silvis agrisque, *in the forests and fields.* Ov.

2. The Ablative of PLACE FROM WHICH sometimes omits the preposition, especially in poetry:

Cădĕre nūbĭbus, *to fall from the clouds.* Virg. Lābi ĕquo, *to fall from a horse.* Hor.

423. NAMES OF TOWNS differ in their construction from other names of places,

I. Generally in simply omitting the preposition. But

II. In the Singular of the First and Second declensions they designate the PLACE IN WHICH by the Locative. See examples under the Rule.

1. PREPOSITION RETAINED.—The preposition is sometimes retained, especially for emphasis or contrast:

Ab Ardea Rōmam vēnērunt, *They came from Ardea to Rome.* Liv. So also when the *vicinity* rather than the town itself is meant: Discessit a Brundĭsio, *He departed from Brundisium,* i. e., from the port. Caes. Apud Mantinēam, *near Mantinea.* Cic. Ad Trĕbiam, *at* or *near the Trebia.* Liv.

2. LOCATIVE.—The original Locative, denoting the PLACE IN WHICH, was blended with the Ablative, except in the Singular of the First and Second Declensions, where it still remains distinct, though with the same form as the Genitive. A few traces of it also remain in the Singular of the Third Declension, where it ends in *i.* See 62, IV. 3.

3. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS for the Genitive also occur:

1) *Ablative by Attraction:*

In monte Albāno Lāvīniōque, *on the Alban mount and at Lavinium.* Liv.

2) *Ablative without Attraction,* generally with a preposition:

In ipsa Alexandrīa, *in Alexandria itself.* Cic. Longa Alba, *at Alba Longa.* Virg.

This is the regular construction when the noun takes an adjective or adjective pronoun, but the Locative *dŏmi* (424, 2) admits a *possessive* or *ăliēnus:*

Dŏmi, suae, *at his home.* Cic.

3) With an Appellative—*urbs, oppĭdum*—the name of the town is in the Loc. or Abl., but the appellative itself is in the Abl., generally with a Prep.:

In oppĭdo Antiochīae, *in the city of Antioch.* Cic. In oppĭdo Cītio, *in the town Citium.* Nep. Albae, in urbe opportūna, *at Alba, a convenient city.* Cic.

424. Like Names of Towns are used

1. Many names of Islands:

Vixit Cypri, *He lived in Cyprus.* Nep. Dēlo prŏfĭciscĭtur, *He proceeds from Delos,* Cic.

2. **Dŏmus, rus,** and the Locatives **hŭmi, mīlĭtiae,** and **belli:**

Rūri ăgĕre vītam, *to spend life in the country.* Liv. Dŏmi mīlĭtiaeque, *at home and in the field.* Cic. Dŏmo prōfūgit, *He fled from home.* Cic.

3. The Locative of other nouns also occurs:

1) By *Attraction* after names of towns:

Rōmae Nŭmĭdiaeque, *at Rome and in Numidia.* Sall.

2) *Without Attraction* in a few proper names, and rarely also the Locatives *ărēnae, fŏci, terrae, vīcīniae:*

Dŏmum Chersŏnēsi hăbuit, *He had a house in the Chersonesus.* Nep. Truncum rĕlīquit ărēnae, *He left the body in the sand.* Virg.

RULE XXVII.—Ablative of Source and Separation.

425. Source and Separation are denoted by the Ablative, generally with a preposition:

Source.—Hoc audīvi de părente meo, *I heard this from my father.* Cic. Oriundi ab Săbīnis, *descended from the Sabines.* Liv. Stătua ex aere facta, *a statue made of bronze.* Cic. Jŏve nātus, *son of Jupiter.* Cic.

Separation.—Caedem a vōbis dēpello, *I ward off slaughter from you.* Cic. Hunc a tuis āris arcēbis, *You will keep this one from your altars.* Cic. Expulsus est patria, *He was banished from his country.* Cic.

1. The Ablative of Source designates that from which anything is derived, including *parentage, material,* etc.

2. The Ablative of Separation designates that from which anything is separated, or of which it is deprived, and is used:

1) With Intransitive verbs signifying, *to abstain from*, *be distant from*, etc.

2) In connection with the Accusative after transitive verbs signifying, *to hold from*, *separate from*, *free from*, and the like: *arceo*, *abstĭneo*, *dĕterreo*, *ejicio*, *exclūdo*, *exsolvo*, *lībĕro*, *pello*, *prŏhĭbeo*, *rĕmŏveo*, *solvo*, etc.:

3) A few verbs of separation admit the Dative: *ălieno*, *fŭror*, etc. See 385. 4.

3. Preposition Omitted.—This generally occurs

1) With Perfect Participles denoting *parentage* or *birth*—*gĕnĭtus*, *nātus*, *ortus*, etc.:

Jŏve nātus, *son of Jupiter*. Cic.

2) With Verbs of *Freeing*, except *lībĕro*, which is used both with and without a preposition:

Somno solvi, *to be released from sleep*. Cic. But in the sense of *acquitting* these verbs admit the genitive (410. 7): Alĭquem culpae lībĕrāre, *to free one from blame*, i. e., acquit him. Liv.

3) With *Mŏveo* before the ablatives—*lŏco*, *sĕnātu* and *trĭbu*:

Signum mŏvēre lŏco, *to move the standard from the place*. Cic.

4) The preposition is sometimes omitted with other words, especially in poetry.

III. Ablative of Time.

RULE XXVIII.—Time.

426. The Time of an Action is denoted by the Ablative:

Octōgēsĭmo anno est mortuus, *He died in his eightieth year*. Cic. Vēre convēnēre, *They assembled in the spring*. Liv. Nātāli die suo, *on his birthday*. Nep. Hiĕme et aestāte, *in winter and summer*. Cic.

1. Designations of Time.—Any word, so used as to involve the time of an action or event, may be put in the ablative: *bello*, in the time of war; *pugna*, in the time of battle; *lūdis*, at the time of the games; *mĕmŏria*, in memory, i. e., in the time of one's recollection.

2. The Ablative with In is used to denote

1) The *circumstances* of the time, rather than time itself:

In tāli tempŏre, *under such circumstances*. Liv.

2) The time *in* or *within* which anything is done:

In diēbus proxĭmis dĕcem, *in the next ten days*. Sall.

(1) This is used especially after numeral adverbs and in designating the periods of life: *bis in die*, twice in the day; *in puĕrĭtia*, in boyhood.

(2) In a kindred sense occur also the Abl. with *de* and the Accus. with *inter* or *intra*: De mĕdia nocte, *in the middle of the night*. Caes. Inter annos quattuordĕcim, *in* (within) *fourteen years*. Caes.

(3) The Ablative with or without *in* sometimes denotes the time within which or after which: *paucis diēbus*, within (or after) a few days.

427. ACCUSATIVE OR ABLATIVE.—The time since an action or event is denoted by *Abhinc* or *Ante* with the Accusative or Ablative, and the time between two events, by *Ante* or *Post* with the Accusative or Ablative:

Abhinc annos trĕcentos fuit, *He lived* (was) *three hundred years since.* Cic. Abhinc annis quattuor, *four years since.* Cic. Hŏmērus annis multis fuit ante Rōmŭlum, *Homer lived many years before Romulus.* Cic. Paucis ante diēbus, *a few days before.* Cic. Post dies paucos vēnit, *He came after a few days.* Liv.

1. EXPLANATION.—(1) The Accusative with *abhinc* is explained as Duration of Time (378), with *ante* and *post* as dependent upon those prepositions. (2) The Ablative in both cases is explained as the Ablative of Difference (418).

With the Abl. *ante* and *post* are used adverbially unless an Accus. is expressed after them. *Paucis his* (illis) *diēbus*, means *in these* (those) *few days.*

2. NUMERALS WITH ANTE AND POST.—These may be either cardinal or ordinal. Thus: five years after = *quinque annis post*, or *quinto anno post*; or *post quinque annos*, or *post quintum annum*; or with *post* between the numeral and the noun, *quinque post annis*, etc.

3. QUAM WITH ANTE AND POST.—*Quam* may follow *ante* and *post*, may be united with them, or may even be used for *postquam*:

Quartum post annum quam rĕdiĕrat, *four years after he had returned.* Nep. Nōno anno postquam, *nine years after.* Nep. Sexto anno quam ĕrat expulsus, *six years after he had been banished.* Nep.

4. The ABLATIVE OF THE RELATIVE or QUUM may be used for *postquam*: Quătrīduo, quo occīsus est, *four days after he was killed.* Cic.

IV. ABLATIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC.

RULE XXIX.—Characteristic.

428. The Ablative with an adjective may be used to characterize a person or thing:

Summa virtūte ădŏlescens, *a youth of the highest virtue.* Caes. Cătĭlīna ingĕnio mălo fuit, *Catiline was a man of a bad spirit.* Sall.

1. ABLATIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC is used

1) With Substantives as in the first example.

2) In the Predicate with *sum*, and the other verbs which admit a Predicate Genitive (403) as in the second example.

2. The ABLATIVE WITH A GENITIVE instead of the ablative with an adjective is sometimes used:

Uri sunt spĕcie tauri, *The urus is of the appearance of a bull.* Caes.

3. GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC.—See 396. IV.

4. GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE DISTINGUISHED.—The Genitive generally expresses permanent and essential qualities; the Ablative is not limited to any particular kind of qualities.

V. Ablative of Specification.

RULE XXX.—Specification.

429. The Ablative may be used with a word to define its application:

Agēsĭlāus nōmĭne, non pŏtestāte fuit rex, *Agesilaus was king in name, not in power.* Nep. Claudus altĕro pĕde, *lame in one foot.* Nep. Mōrĭbus sĭmĭles, *similar in character.* Cic.

1. Force of Ablative.—This shows in *what respect* or *particular* anything is true: thus, *king* (in what respect?) *in name: similar* (in what respect?) *in character.*

2. Accusative of Specification. See 380.

VI. Ablative Absolute.

430. A noun and a participle, a noun and an adjective, or two nouns may be grammatically independent of (*absolved from*) the rest of the sentence, and yet may express various adverbial modifications of the predicate. When so used they are said to be in the case Absolute.

RULE XXXI.—Ablative Absolute.

431. The Ablative is used as the Case Absolute:

Servio regnante vĭguērunt, *They flourished in the reign of Servius* (Servius reigning). Cic. Rēgĭbus exactis, consŭles creāti sunt, *After the banishment of the kings, consuls were appointed.* Liv. Sĕrēno coelo, *when the sky is clear.* Sen. Cănīnio consŭle, *in the consulship of Caninius.* Cic.

1. Use.—The Ablative Absolute is much more common than the English Nominative Absolute, and expresses a great variety of relations,—*time, cause, reason, means, condition, concession,* etc.

2. How Rendered.—This ablative is generally best rendered (1) by a *Clause* with—*when, while, for, since, if, though,* etc., (2) by a *Noun* with a *Preposition,—in, during, after, by, from, through,* etc., or (3) by an *Active Participle* with its *Object:*

Servio regnante, *while Servius reigned,* or *in the reign of Servius.* Cic. Rĕlĭgiōne neglecta, *because religion was neglected.* Liv. Perdĭtis rēbus omnĭbus, tămen, etc., *Though all things are lost, still,* etc. Cic. Equĭtātu praemisso, subsĕquēbātur, *Having sent forward his cavalry, he followed.* Caes.

3. A Connective sometimes accompanies the Ablative:

Nĭsi mūnītis castris, *unless the camp should be fortified.* Caes.

4. An Infinitive or Clause may be in the Abl. Absolute with a neuter participle or adjective:

Audīto Dărīum mŏvisse, pergit, *Having heard that Darius had withdrawn* (that Darius had, etc., having been heard), *he advanced.* Curt. Multi, incerto quid vītārent, intĕriĕrunt, *Many, uncertain what they should avoid* (what they, etc., being uncertain), *perished.* Liv.

5. A Participle or Adjective may stand alone in the Abl. Absolute:

Multum certāto, pervīcit, *He conquered after a hard struggle* (it having been much contested). Tac.

6. Quisque in the Nominative may accompany the Abl. Absolute:

Multis sĭbi quisque pĕtentĭbus, *while many sought, each for himself.* Sall.

VII. Ablative with Prepositions. See 432 and 434.

SECTION VIII.

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

RULE XXXII.—Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions:

Ad ămīcum scripsi, *I have written to a friend.* Cic. In cūriam, *into the senate house.* Liv. In Itălia, *in Italy.* Nep. Pro castris, *before the camp.*

433. The Accusative is used with

Ad, adversus (adversum), ante, ăpud, circa, circum, circĭter, cis, citra, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, pĕnes, per, pōne, post, praeter, prŏpe, propter, sĕcundum, supra, trans, ultra, versus:

Ad urbem, *to the city.* Cic. Adversus deos, *toward the gods.* Cic. Ante lūcem, *before light.* Cic. Apud concĭlium, *in the presence of the council.* Cic. Circa fŏrum, *around the forum.* Cic. Citra flūmen, *on this side of the river.* Cic. Contra nātūram, *contrary to nature.* Cic. Intra mūros, *within the walls.* Cic. Post castra, *behind the camp.* Caes. Sĕcundum nātūram, *according to nature.* Cic. Trans Alpes, *across the Alps.* Cic.

1. Like *Prŏpe*, the derivatives *prŏpior* and *proxĭmus* take the Accus. dependent perhaps upon *ad* understood. *Exadversus* (um) also occurs with the Accus.:

Prŏpior montem, *nearer to the mountain.* Sall. Proxĭmus măre, *nearest to the sea.* Caes. See also 437, and for compounds, 371. 4. and 374. 6.

2. *Versus* (um) and *usque* as adverbs often accompany prepositions, especially *ad* and *in:* Ad Alpes versus, *towards the Alps.*

434. The Ablative is used with

A *or* ab (abs),	absque,	cōram,	cum,	de,
e *or* ex,	prae,	pro,	sĭne,	tĕnus·

Ab urbe, *from the city*. Caes. Cōram conventu, *in the presence of the assembly*. Nep. Cum Antiŏcho, *with Antiochus*. Cic. De fŏro, *from the forum*. Cic. Ex Asia, *from Asia*. Nep. Sine corde, *without a heart*. Cic.

1. Many verbs compounded with *ab*, *de*, *ex*, or *sŭper*, admit the Ablative dependent upon the preposition:

Abire măgistrātu, *to retire from office*. Tac. Pugna excēdunt, *They retire from the battle*. Caes.

Sometimes the Prep. is repeated, or one of kindred meaning is used:

De vita dēcēdĕre, *to depart from life*. Cic. Dēcēdĕre ex Asia, *to depart from Asia*. Cic.

2. The Ablative with or without *De* is sometimes used with *Făcio*, *Fīo*, or *Sum*, as follows:

Quid hoc hŏmine făcias, *What are you to do with this man?* Cic. Quid te (*or* de te) fŭtūrum est, *What will become of you?* Cic.

The Dative occurs in nearly the same sense:

Quid huic hŏmini făcias, *What are you to do with* (or *to*) *this man?* Cic.

3. *A*, *ab*, *abs*, *e*, *ex*.—*A* and *e* are used only before consonants, *ab* and *ex* either before vowels or consonants. *Abs* is antiquated, except before *te*.

4. *Tĕnus* follows its case:

Collo tĕnus, *up to the neck*. Ov.

5. *Cum* with the Abl. of a Pers. Pronoun is appended to it: *mēcum*, *tēcum*, etc., generally also with a relative: *quōcum*, *quĭbuscum*.

435. The Accusative or Ablative is used with

In, sub, subter, sŭper:

In Asiam prŏfŭgit, *He fled into Asia*. Cic. Hannibal in Itălia fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy*. Nep. Sub montem, *toward the mountain*. Caes. Sub monte, *at the foot of the mountain*. Liv. Subter tŏgam, *under the toga*. Liv. Subter testūdine, *under a tortoise* or *shed*. Virg. Sŭper Nŭmidiam, *beyond Numidia*. Sall. Hac sŭper re scrībam, *I will write on this subject*. Cic.

1. *In* and *Sub* take the Accusative in answer to the question *whither?* the Ablative in answer to *where?* In Asiam (whither?), *into Asia;* In Itălia (where?), *in Italy*.

2. *Subter* and *Sŭper* generally take the Accusative, but *sŭper* with the force of—*concerning*, *of*, *on* (of a subject of discourse), takes the Ablative; see examples.

436. Prepositions as Adverbs.—The prepositions were originally adverbs, and many of them are sometimes so used in classical authors.

437. Adverbs as Prepositions.—Conversely several adverbs are sometimes used as prepositions with an oblique case, though in most instances a preposition could readily be supplied. Such are

1. With Accusative: *prŏpius*, *proxime*, *prīdie*, *postrīdie*, *usque*, *dēsŭper:*

Prŏpius pĕrīcŭlum (ad), *nearer to danger*. Liv. Prīdie Idus (ante), *the day before the Ides*. Cic. Usque pĕdes (ad), *even to the feet*. Curt.

2. With Ablative: *pălam*, *prŏcul*, *sĭmul* (poetic):

Pălam pŏpŭlo, *in the presence of the people*. Liv. Prŏcul castris, *at a distance from the camp*. Tac. Sĭmul his, *with these*. Hor.

3. With Accusative or Ablative: *clam*, *insŭper:*

Clam patrem, *without the father's knowledge*. Plaut. Clam vōbis, *without your knowledge*. Caes.

CHAPTER III.

SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.

RULE XXXIII.—Agreement of Adjectives.

438. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE:

Fortūna caeca est, *Fortune is blind.* Cic. Vērae ămīcĭtiae, *true friendships.* Cic. Măgister optĭmus, *the best teacher.* Cic.

1. This Rule includes Adjectives, Adjective Pronouns, and Participles.

2. ATTRIBUTIVE AND PREDICATE ADJECTIVES.—An adjective is called *attributive,* unless it unites with the verb (generally *sum*), to form the *predicate;* it is then called a *predicate-adjective:* as *caeca est,* above.

3. AGREEMENT WITH CLAUSE, ETC.—An adjective may agree with any word or words used substantively, as a *pronoun, clause, infinitive,* etc.:

Quis clārior, *Who is more illustrious?* Cic. Certum est lībĕros ămāri, *It is certain that children are loved.* Quint. See 42, III.

An adjective agreeing with a clause is sometimes plural, as in Greek.

4. NEUTER WITH MASCULINE.—Sometimes the Predicate Adjective is neuter, when the subject is *Masc.* or *Fem.*:

Mors est extrēmum, *Death is the last* (thing). Cic.

5. NEUTER WITH GENITIVE.—A neuter adjective with a genitive is often used instead of an adjective with its noun:

Multum ŏpĕrae (for *multa ŏpĕra*), *much service* (much of service). Cic. Id tempŏris, *that time.* Cic. Vāna rērum (for *vānae res*), *vain things.* Hor.

6. CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.—Sometimes the adjective or participle conforms to the *real meaning* of its noun, without regard to grammatical gender or number:

Pars certāre părāti, *a part* (some), *prepared to contend.* Virg. Nōbis (for *me,* 446, 2), praesente, *we* (I) *being present.* Plaut. Dēmosthĕnes cum cētĕris ĕrant expŭlsi, *Demosthenes with the others had been banished.* Nep.

7. AGREEMENT WITH PREDICATE NOUN OR APPOSITIVE.—See 462.

8. AGREEMENT WITH ONE NOUN FOR ANOTHER.—When a noun governs another in the Genitive, an adjective belonging in sense to one of the two nouns, sometimes agrees with the other:

Majōra (for *majōrum*) ĭnĭtia rērum, *the beginnings of greater things.* Liv. Cursus justi (*justus*) amnis, *the regular course of the river.* Liv.

439. WITH TWO OR MORE NOUNS.—An adjective or participle, belonging to two or more nouns, may agree with them all conjointly, or may agree with one and be understood with the others:

Castor et Pollux vīsi sunt, *Castor and Pollux were seen.* Cic. Tĕmĕrĭtas ignōrătioque vĭtiōsa est, *Rashness and ignorance are bad.* Cic.

1. The ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVE generally agrees with the nearest noun: Agri omnes et măria, *all lands and seas.* Cic.

2. DIFFERENT GENDERS.—When the nouns are of different genders, they may denote

1) *Persons:* then the adjective or participle agreeing with them conjointly is masculine: Păter et māter mortui sunt, *Father and mother are dead.* Ter.

2) *Persons* and *Things:* then the adjective generally takes the gender of the person: Rex rēgiăque classis prŏfecti sunt, *The king and the royal fleet set out.* Liv.

3) *Things:* then the adjective is generally neuter: Hŏnōres, victōriae fortuĭta sunt, *Honors and victories are accidental* (things). Cic.

3. NEUTER WITH MASCULINE OR FEMININE.—With masculine or feminine nouns denoting inanimate objects, the adjective is often neuter:

Lăbor et dŏlor sunt fīnĭtĭma, *Labor and pain are kindred* (things). Cic. Nox atque praeda hostes rĕmŏrāta sunt, *Night and plunder detained the enemy.* Sall.

4. TWO OR MORE ADJECTIVES.—Two or more adjectives in the singular may belong to a plural noun:

Prīma et vīcēsĭma lĕgiōnes, *the first and the twentieth legions.* Tac.

So in proper names: Cnaeus et Publius Scīpiōnes, *Cnaeus and Publius Scipio.* Cic.

440. USE OF ADJECTIVES.—The Adjective in Latin corresponds in its general use to the Adjective in English.

1. An adjective may qualify the complex idea formed by a noun and an adjective: *aes ălĭēnum grande*, a great debt. Here *grande* qualifies not *aes* alone, but *aes aliēnum.* In such cases no connective is used between the adjectives.

But the Latin uses the conjunction after *multi* even where the English omits it: *multae et magnae tempestātes*, many great emergencies.

441. Adjectives are often used substantively: *docti*, the learned; *multi*, many persons; *multa*, many things.

1. In the Plural, Masculine Adjectives often designate persons, and Neuter Adjectives things: *fortes*, the brave; *dīvites*, the rich; *paupĕres*, the poor; *multi*, many: *pauci*, few; *omnes*, all; *mei*, my friends; *utilia*, useful things; *mea*, *nostra*, my, our things; *omnia*, all things; *haec*, *illa*, these, those things.

2. In the Singular, Adjectives are occasionally used substantively, especially in the Neuter with an abstract sense: *doctus*, a learned man;

vērum, a true thing, the truth; *nihil sincēri*, nothing of sincerity, nothing sincere.

3. NOUN UNDERSTOOD.—Many adjectives become substantives, by the omission of their nouns: *patria* (terra), native country; *dextra* (manus), right hand; *fĕra* (bestia), wild beast; *hīberna* (castra), winter-quarters.

4. WITH RES.—Adjectives with *res* are used with great freedom: *res adversae*, adversity; *res sĕcundae*, prosperity; *res publĭca*, republic.

5. FROM PROPER NAMES.—Adjectives from proper names are often equivalent to the English objective with *of*: pugna Mărăthōnia, *the battle of Marathon;* Diāna Ephĕsia, *Diana of Ephesus;* Hercŭles Xĕnŏphontīus, *the Hercules of Xenophon.*

6. DESIGNATING A PART.—A few adjectives sometimes designate a particular part of an object: *prīmus, mĕdius, ultĭmus, extrēmus, postrēmus, intĭmus, summus, infĭmus, īmus, suprēmus, relĭquus, cētĕra*, etc.: *prīma nox*, the first part of the night; *summus mons*, the highest part of the mountain.

In Livy and late writers, the neuter of these adjectives with a genitive sometimes occurs:

Ad ultimum inŏpiae, *for* ad ultĭmam inŏpiam, *to extreme destitution.* Liv.

442. EQUIVALENT TO A CLAUSE.—Adjectives, like nouns in apposition, are sometimes equivalent to clauses:

Nēmo saltat sobrius, *No one dances when he is sober*, or *when sober.* Cic. Hortensium vīvum ămāvi, *I loved Hortensius, while he was alive.* Cic. Hŏmo nunquam sobrius, *a man, who is never sober.* Cic.

1. *Prior, prīmus, ultĭmus, postrēmus*, are often best rendered by a relative clause:

Prīmus mōrem solvit, *He was the first who broke the custom.* Liv.

With the adverb *prīmum*, the thought would be, *he first broke the custom*, and then did something else.

443. INSTEAD OF ADVERBS.—Adjectives are sometimes used where our idiom employs adverbs:

Socrătes vĕnēnum *laetus* hausit, *Socrates cheerfully drank the poison.* Sen. Sĕnātus *frĕquens* convēnit, *The senate assembled in great numbers.* Cic. Roscius ĕrat Rōmae frĕquens, *Roscius was frequently at Rome.* Cic.

Adjectives thus used are: (1) Those expressive of *joy, knowledge*, and their opposites: *laetus, lĭbens, invītus, tristis, sciens, insciens, prūdens, imprūdens*, etc. (2) *Nullus, sōlus, tōtus, ūnus; prior, prīmus, prŏpior, proxĭmus*, etc. (3) In the Poets several adjectives of *time* and *place:*

Dŏmesticus ōtior, *I idle about home.* Hor. Vespertīnus pĕte tectum, *At evening seek your abode.* Hor. See Examples above; also 335. 4.

444. COMPARISON.—A comparison between two objects requires the comparative degree; between more than two, the superlative:

Prior hōrum, *the former of these* (two). Nep. Gallōrum fortissĭmi, *the bravest of the Gauls.* Caes.

1. With the Force of Too or Very.—The comparative sometimes has the force of *too*, *unusually*, *somewhat*, and the superlative, the force of *very*: *doctior*, too learned, or somewhat learned; *doctissimus*, very learned.

2. Comparative after Quam.—When an object is said to possess one quality in a higher degree than another, both adjectives are put in the comparative; but when it is said to possess one quality rather than another, both are in the positive, the former with *măgis* or *pŏtius*:

Clārior quam grātior, *more illustrious than pleasing*. Liv. Dĭsertus măgis quam săpiens, *fluent rather than wise*. Cic.

In the first case the positive is sometimes used in one or both members; and in the second case *măgis* is sometimes omitted, and occasionally the adjective before *quam* is in the comparative.

3. Strengthening Words.—Comparatives and Superlatives are often strengthened by a Prep. with its case, *ante*, *prae*, *praeter*, *supra* (417. 2. 3), *ūnus*, *ūnus omnium*, alone, alone of all, far, by far; Comparatives also by *etiam*, even, still; *multo*, much, and Superlatives by *longe*, *multo*, by far, much, *quam*, *quantus*, as possible:

Multo maxima pars, *by far the largest part*. Cic. Res ūna omnium difficillima, *a thing by far the most difficult of all*. Cic. Quam maximae cōpiae, *forces as large as possible*. Sall. Quanta maxima vastĭtas, *the greatest possible devastation*. Liv.

4. Comparison in Adverbs has the same force as in adjectives:

Quam saepissĭme, *as often as possible*. Cic. Fortius quam fēlĭcius, *with more bravery than success*. Liv.

CHAPTER IV.

SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

RULE XXXIV.—Agreement of Pronouns.

445. A Pronoun agrees with its antecedent in GENDER, NUMBER, and PERSON:

Anĭmal quod sanguĭnem hăbet, *an animal which has blood*. Cic. Ego, qui te confirmo, *I who encourage you*. Cic. Vis est in virtūtĭbus; eas excĭta, *There is strength in virtues, arouse them*. Cic.

1. Application of Rule.—This rule applies to all Pronouns when used as *nouns*. Pronouns used as *adjectives* conform to the rule for adjectives. See 438.

The *Antecedent* is the word or words to which the pronoun refers, and whose place it supplies. Thus, in the examples under the rule, *anĭmal* is the antecedent of *quod*, and *virtūtĭbus* the antecedent of *eas*.

2. Agreement with Personal Pronoun.—When the antecedent is a Demonstrative in agreement with a Personal pronoun, the relative agrees with the latter:

Tu es is qui me ornasti, *You are the one who commended me.* Cic.

3. With two Antecedents.—When a relative or other pronoun, refers to two or more antecedents, it generally agrees with them conjointly, but it sometimes agrees with the nearest:

Puĕri mŭliĕresque, qui, *boys and women, who.* Caes. Peccātum ac culpa, quae, *error and fault, which.* Cic.

1) With antecedents of different genders, the pronoun conforms in gender to the rule for adjectives (439. 2 and 3); hence *puĕri mulieresque qui*, above.

2) With antecedents of different persons, the pronoun prefers the first person to the second, and the second to the third, conforming to the rule for verbs. See 463. 1.

4. With Predicate Noun or Appositive.—A pronoun sometimes agrees with a Predicate-Noun or an Appositive instead of the antecedent:

Anĭmal quem (for *quod*) vŏcāmus hŏmĭnem, *the animal which we call man.* Cic. Thēbae, quod (*quae*) căput est, *Thebes which is the capital.* Liv. Ea (*id*) ĕrat confessio, *That* (i. e., the action referred to) *was a confession.* Liv. Flūmen Rhēnus, qui, *the river Rhine, which.* Caes.

In the last example, *qui* agrees with the appositive Rhenus; in the other examples, the pronouns *quem*, *quod*, and *ea*, are *attracted* to agree with their predicate nouns *homĭnem*, *caput*, and *confessio*.

5. Construction according to Sense.—Sometimes the pronoun is construed according to the *real meaning* of the antecedent, without regard to grammatical form; and sometimes it refers to the *class of objects* to which the antecedent belongs:

Equĭtātŭs, qui vīdērunt, *the cavalry who saw.* Caes. Eārum rērum utrumque, *each of these things.* Cic. Dēmŏcrĭtum ŏmittāmus; ăpud istos; *let us omit Democritus; with such* (i. e., as he). Cic.

6. Antecedent Omitted.—The antecedent of the relative is often omitted when it is indefinite, is the pronoun *is*, or is implied in a possessive:

Sunt qui censeant, *There are some who think.* Cic. Terra reddit quod accēpit, *The earth returns what it has received.* Cic. Vestra, qui cum integrĭtāte vixistis, hoc intĕrest, *This interests you who have lived with integrity.* Cic. Here the antecedent is *vos*, implied in *vestra*.

7. Clause as Antecedent.—When the antecedent is a sentence or clause, the pronoun, unless attracted (445. 4), is in the Neuter Singular, but the relative generally adds *id* as an appositive to such antecedent:

Nos, id quod dēbet, patria dĕlectat, *Our country delights us, as it ought* (lit. *that which it owes*). Cic.

8. Relative Attracted.—The relative is sometimes attracted into the case of the antecedent, and sometimes agrees with the antecedent repeated:

Jūdĭce quo (for *quem*) nosti, *the judge whom you know.* Hor. Dies in-

stat, quo die, *The day is at hand, on which day.* Caes. Cūmae, quam urbem tĕnēbant, *Cumae, which city they held.* Liv.

9. Antecedent Attracted.—In Poetry, rarely in prose, the antecedent is sometimes attracted into the case of the relative; and sometimes incorporated in the relative clause in the same case as the relative:

Urbem quam stătuo, vestra est, *The city which I am building is yours.* Virg. Mălārum, quas ămor cūras hăbet, oblīvisci (for *malārum curārum quas*), *to forget the wretched cares which love has.* Hor.

I. Personal and Possessive Pronouns.

446. The Nominative of Personal Pronouns is used only for emphasis or contrast:

Signĭfĭcāmus, quid sentiāmus, *We show what we think.* Cic. Ego rēges ejēci, vos tyrannos intrōdūcĭtis, *I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants.* Cic.

1. With *quĭdem* the pronoun is usually expressed, and then the third person is supplied by *hic*, *is*, *ille*, which are then often redundant: *tu quĭdem*, you indeed, *ille quĭdem*, he indeed. *Quĭdem* adds emphasis; *ĕquĭdem* = ĕgo quidem.

2. The writer sometimes speaks of himself in the plural, using *nos* for *ego*, *noster* for *meus*, and the plural verb for the singular.

3. For *Nostrum* and *Vestrum*, see 396. 1.

447. Possessive Pronouns, when not emphatic, are seldom expressed, if they can be supplied from the context:

Mănus lăva, *Wash your hands.* Cic. Mihi mea vīta căra est, *My life is dear to me.* Plaut.

For Possessive with Genitive in the sense of own, see 397. 3.

Reflexive use of Pronouns.

448. *Sui* and *Suus* have a reflexive sense (*himself*, etc.); sometimes also the other Personal and Possessive pronouns, together with *Is*, *Ille*, and *Ipse:*

Se dīlĭgit, *He loves himself.* Cic. Sua vi mŏvētur, *He is moved by his own power.* Cic. Me consōlor, *I console myself.* Cic. Persuādent Tulingis ūti cum iis prŏfĭciscantur, *They persuade the Tulingi to depart with them.* Caes.

1. *Inter nos*, *inter vos*, *inter se*, have a reciprocal force, *each other*, *one another*, *together;* but instead of *inter se*, the noun may be repeated in an oblique case:

Collŏquĭmur inter nos, *We converse together.* Cic. Amant inter se, *They love one another.* Cic. Hŏmines hŏmĭnĭbus ūtiles sunt, *Men are useful to men*, i. e., to each other. Cic.

449. *Sui* and *Suus* generally refer to the Subject of the clause in which they stand:

Se dīlĭgit, *He loves himself*. Cic. Justĭtia propter sēse cŏlenda est, *Justice should be cultivated for its own sake*. Cic. Annŭlum suum dĕdit, *He gave his ring*. Nep.

1. In Subordinate Clauses expressing the sentiment of the principal subject, *Sui* and *Suus* generally refer to that subject:

Sentit ănĭmus se vi sua mŏvēri, *The mind perceives that it is moved by its own power*. Cic. A me pĕtīvit ut sēcum essem, *He asked* (from) *me to be with him* (that I would be). Cic. Pervestīgat quid sui cīves cōgĭtent, *He tries to ascertain what his fellow citizens think*. Cic.

1) As *Sui* and *Suus* thus refer to subjects, the demonstratives, *Is*, *Ille*, etc., generally refer either to other words, or to subjects, which do not admit *sui* and *suus*.

Deum agnoscis ex ejus ŏpĕrĭbus, *You recognize a god by* (from) *his works*. Cic. Obligat cīvĭtātem nihil eos mūtātūros, *He binds the state not to change anything* (that they will). Just.

2) In some subordinate clauses the writer may at pleasure use either the Reflexive or the Demonstrative, according as he wishes to present the thought as that of the principal subject, or as his own. Thus in the last example under 448, *cum iis* is the proper language for the *writer* without reference to the sentiment of the principal subject; *sēcum*, which would be equally proper, would present the thought as the sentiment of that subject.

3) Sometimes the Reflexive occurs where we should expect the Demonstrative, and the Demonstrative where we should expect the Reflexive.

2. Suus = His own, etc.—Suus in the sense of *his own, fitting*, etc., may refer to subject or object:

Justĭtia suum cuique trĭbuit, *Justice gives to every man his due* (his own). Cic.

3. Construction according to Sense.—When the subject of the verb is not the real agent of the action, *sui* and *suus* refer to the latter:

A Caesăre invītor sĭbi ut sim lēgātus, *I am invited by Caesar* (real agent) *to be his lieutenant*. Cic.

4. Suus Substantively.—The Plural of *Suus* used substantively—*his, their friends, possessions*, etc.—is used with great freedom, often referring to oblique cases:

Fuit hoc luctuōsum suis, *This was afflicting to his friends*. Cic. Here *suis* refers to an oblique case in the preceding sentence.

5. Sui and Suus sometimes refer to an omitted subject:

Dēforme est de se praedĭcāre, *To boast of one's self is disgusting*. Cic.

6. Reflexives referring to different Subjects.—Sometimes a clause has one reflexive referring to the principal subject, and another referring to the subordinate subject:

Respondit nēmĭnem sēcum sĭne sua pernĭcie contendisse, *He replied that no one had contended with him without* (his) *destruction*. Caes.

Here *se* refers to the subject of *respondit* and *sua* to *nēmĭnem*, the subject of the subordinate clause.

II. Demonstrative Pronouns.

450. *Hic*, *Iste*, *Ille*, are often called respectively demonstratives of the First, Second, and Third Persons, as *hic* designates that which is near the speaker; *iste*, that which is near the person addressed, and *ille*, that which is remote from both, and near only to some third person.

Custos hujus urbis, *the guardian of this city.* Cic. Mūta istam mentem, *Change that purpose of yours.* Cic. Si illos neglĭgis, *if you disregard those.* Cic.

1. Hic and Ille in Contrasts.—*Hic* designates an object conceived as near, and *ille* as remote, whether in space or time:

Non antīquo illo mōre, sed hoc nostro fuit ērŭdītus, *He was educated, not in that ancient, but in this our modern way.* Cic.

2. Hic and Ille, former and latter.—In reference to two objects previously mentioned, (1) *Hic* generally follows *Ille* and refers to the latter object, while *Ille* refers to the former; but (2) *Hic* refers to the more important object, and *Ille* to the less important:

Ignāvia, lăbor: illa, hic; *Indolence, labor: the former, the latter.* Cels. Pax, victōria: haec (*pax*) in tua, illa in deōrum pŏtestāte est; *Peace, victory: the former is in your power, the latter in the power of the gods.* Liv.

3. *Hic* and *Ille* are often used of what immediately follows in discourse, and *Iste* sometimes indicates contempt: *haec verba*, these words, i. e., the following words; *iste*, that man, such a one.

4. *Ille* is often used of what is well known, famous:

Mēdēa illa, *that well-known Medea.* Cic.

1) *Hic* with or without *hŏmo*, is sometimes equivalent to *ĕgo*. Alone it is sometimes equivalent to *meus* or *noster*.

2) *Hic*, *ille*, and *is* are sometimes redundant, especially with *quĭdem*: Scīpio non multum ille quidem dicēbat, *Scipio did not indeed say much.* Cic. See 446. 1.

3) A Demonstrative or Relative is sometimes equivalent to a Genitive or a Prep. with its case: *hic dŏlor* = dŏlor hujus rei, grief on account of this; *haec cūra* = cura de hoc, care concerning this.

451. *Is* and *Idem* refer to preceding nouns, or are the antecedents of relatives:

Diŏnȳsius aufūgit: is est in prōvincia, *Dionysius has fled: he is in the province.* Cic. Is qui sătis hăbet, *he who has enough.* Cic. Eădem audīre mālunt, *They prefer to hear the same things.* Liv.

1. *Is* is often omitted, especially before a relative or a genitive:

Flēbat păter de fīlii morte, de patris fīlius, *The father wept over the death of the son, the son over* (that) *of the father.* Cic. See also 445. 6.

2. *Is* or *Ipse with a Conjunction* is often used for emphasis, like the English *and that too, and that indeed:*

Unam rem explicābo eamque maximam, *One thing I will explain and that too a most important one.* Cic.

Id thus used often refers to a clause or to the general thought, and *et ipse* is often best rendered, *too* or *also:* Audīre Crătippum, idque Athēnis, *to hear Cratippus, and that too at Athens.* Cic.

3. *Idem* is sometimes best rendered, *also, yet:*

Nihil ūtile, quod non idem hŏnestum, *Nothing useful, which is not also honorable.* Cic. Quum dīcat—nĕgat idem, *Though he asserts—he yet denies* (the same denies). Cic.

4. *Is—qui* = he—who, such—as, such—that:

Ii sŭmus, qui esse dēbēmus, *We are such as we ought to be.* Cic. Ea est gens quae nesciat, *The race is such that it knows not.* Liv.

5. *Idem—qui; idem—ac, atque, quam, quăsi, ut, cum* with Abl. = the same—who, the same—as:

Iidem mōres, qui, *The same manners which* or *as.* Cic. Est idem ac fuit, *He is the same as he was.* Ter.

6. *Is Reflexive.* See 448.

452. *Ipse* adds emphasis, generally rendered *self:*

Ipse Caesar, *Caesar himself.* Cic. Fac ut te ipsum custŏdias, *See that you guard yourself.* Cic.

1. Ipse with Subject.—*Ipse* belongs to the emphatic word, whether subject or object, but with a preference for the subject:

Me ipse consōlor, *I myself* (not another) *console myself.* Cic.

2. Ipse, Very.—*Ipse* is often best rendered by *very:*

Ipse ille Gorgias, *that very Gorgias.* Cic.

3. With Numerals *Ipse* has the force of—*just so many, just:*

Triginta dies ipsi, *just thirty days.* Cic.

4. *Ipse* in the Genitive with possessives has the force of *own, one's own:*

Nostra ipsōrum ămicitia, *Our own friendship.* Cic. See 397. 3.

5. *Ipse Reflexive,* sometimes supplies the place of an emphatic *sui* or *suus:*

Lēgātos misit qui ipsi vītam pĕtĕrent, *He sent messengers to ask life for himself.* Sall.

III. Relative Pronouns.

453. The relative is often used where the English idiom requires a demonstrative or personal pronoun; sometimes even at the beginning of a sentence:

Res lŏquĭtur ipsa; quae semper vălet; *The fact itself speaks, and this* (which) *ever has weight.* Cic. Qui proelium committunt, *They engage battle.* Caes. Quae quum ita sint, *since these things are so.* Cic.

1. Relative with Demonstrative.—Relatives and Demonstratives are often correlatives to each other: *hic—qui, iste—qui,* etc. These combinations generally retain the ordinary force of the separate words, but see *is—qui, idem—qui,* 451. 4 and 5.

1) *Quicunque* and *Quisquis,* whoever, whatever, sometimes have the force of *every* by the ellipsis of fiĕri pŏtest: *quăcunque rătiōne,* in every way, *i. e.,* in whatever way it is possible.

2. A Demonstrative may supply the place of a Relative when otherwise two relative clauses would be brought together:

Quae nec hăbērēmus nec his ūtĕrēmur, *Which we should neither have nor use.* Cic.

1) A Relative Clause with *is* is often equivalent to a substantive: *ii qui audiunt* = audītores, *hearers.*

3. Two Relatives sometimes occur in the same clause:

Artes quas qui tĕnent, *arts, whose possessors* (which, who possess). Cic.

4. A Relative Clause is sometimes equivalent to *Pro* with the Abl.:

Quae tua prūdentia est = qua es prūdentia = pro tua prūdentia = *such is your prudence,* or *you are of such prudence,* or *in accordance with your prudence,* etc.: Spēro, quae tua prūdentia est, te vălēre, *I hope you are well, such is your prudence* (which is, etc.).

5. Relative with Adjective.—Adjectives belonging in sense to the antecedent, sometimes stand in the relative clause in agreement with the relative, especially comparatives, superlatives, and numerals:

Văsa, quae pulcherrĭma vīdĕrat, *the most beautiful vessels which he had seen* (vessels, which the most beautiful he had seen). Cic. De servis suis, quem hăbuit fīdēlissĭmum, mīsit, *He sent the most faithful of the slaves which he had.* Nep.

6. *Quod Expletive,* or apparently so, often stands at the beginning of a sentence, especially before *ni, nisi, etsi,* and sometimes before *quia, quŏniam, ŭtĭnam,* etc. In translating it is sometimes omitted, and sometimes rendered by *now, but, and:*

Quod si cĕcidĕrint, *if* or *but if they should fall.* Cic.

7. *Qui dīcitur, qui vŏcātur,* or the corresponding active *quem dīcunt, quem vŏcant,* are often used in the sense of *so called, the so called, what they* or *you call,* etc.:

Vestra quae dīcitur vīta, mors est, *Your so called life* (lit. *your, which is called life*) *is death.* Cic. Lex ista quam vŏcas non est lex, *That law as you call it, is not a law.* Cic.

IV. Interrogative Pronouns.

454. The Interrogative *quis,* is used substantively; *qui,* adjectively:

Quis ĕgo sum, *Who am I?* Cic. Quĭd făciet, *What will he do?* Cic. Qui vir fuit, *What kind of a man was he?* Cic.

1. Quis and Qui.—Occasionally *quis* is used adjectively and *qui* substantively:

Quis rex unquam fuit, *What king was there ever?* Cic. Qui sis, consĭdĕra, *Consider who you are.* Cic.

2. Quid, *why, how is it that,* etc., is often used adverbially (380. 2), or stands apparently unconnected, by the ellipsis of *propter* or a verb: *Quid ĕnim,* why then? what indeed (*est* or *dīcam*)? *Quid quod,* what of the fact that?

3. Two Interrogatives sometimes occur in the same clause:

Quis quem fraudāvit, *who defrauded, and whom did he defraud* (lit. *who defrauded whom*)? Cic.

4. Attraction.—The interrogative often agrees with the predicate noun:

Quam (for *quid*) dīcam vŏluptātem vidētis, *You see what I call pleasure.* Cic.

V. Indefinite Pronouns.

455. *Aliquis*, *quis*, *qui*, and *quispiam*, are all indefinite, *some one*, *any one*:

Est ălĭquis, *there is some one.* Liv. Dixit quis, *some one said.* Cic. Si quis rex, *if any king.* Cic. Alia res quaepiam, *any other thing.* Cic.

1. *Aliquis* is less indefinite than *quis*, *qui*, and *quispiam*.

2. *Quis* and *qui* are used chiefly after *si*, *nisi*, *ne*, and *num*. *Quis* is generally used substantively and *qui* adjectively. *Aliquis* after *si*, etc., is emphatic.

456. *Quīdam*, a certain one, is less indefinite than *aliquis*:

Quīdam rhētor antīquus, *a certain ancient rhetorician.* Cic. Accurrit quīdam, *A certain one runs up.* Hor.

1. *Quīdam* with an Adjective is sometimes used to qualify or soften the statement:

Justitia mīrĭfica quaedam vidētur, *Justice seems somewhat wonderful.* Cic.

2. *Quīdam* with *quăsi* and sometimes without it, has the force of *a certain*, *a kind of*, *as it were*:

Quăsi ălumna quaedam, *a certain foster child as it were.* Cic.

457. *Quisquam* and *ullus* are used chiefly in negative and conditional sentences, and in interrogative sentences implying a negative:

Neque me quisquam agnōvit, *Nor did any one recognize me.* Cic. Si quisquam, *if any one.* Cic. Num censes ullum ănĭmal esse, *do you think there is any animal?* Cic.

1. *Nēmo* is the negative of *quisquam*, and like *quisquam* is generally used substantively, rarely adjectively:

Nēmĭnem laesit, *He harmed no one.* Cic. Nēmo poēta, *no poet.* Cic.

2. *Nullus* is the negative of *ullus*, and is generally used adjectively, but it sometimes supplies the Gen. and Abl. of *nēmo*, which generally wants those cases:

Nullum ănĭmal, *no animal.* Cic. Nullīus aures, *the ears of no one.* Cic.

3. *Nullus* for *non.*—*Nullus* and *nihil* are sometimes used for an emphatic *non*.

Nullus vēnit, *He did not come.* Cic. Mortui nulli sunt, *The dead are not.* Cic.

458. *Quīvis*, *Quīlĭbet*, any one whatever, and *Quisque*, every one, each one, are general indefinites (191):

Quaelĭbet res, *any thing.* Cic. Tuōrum quisque nĕcessāriōrum, *each one of your friends.* Cic.

1. *Quisque* with Superlatives and Ordinals is generally best rendered by *all* or by *ever*, *always*, with *prīmus* by *very*, *possible*:

Epicūrēos doctissimus quisque contemnit, *All the most learned despise the Epicureans*, or *the most learned ever despise*, etc. Cic. Prīmo quōque die, *the earliest day possible*, *the very first.* Cic.

2. *Ut Quisque—ĭta* with the superlative in both clauses is often best rendered, *the more—the more*:

Ut quisque sĭbi plūrimum confīdit, ĭta maxime excellit, *The more one confides in himself, the more he excels.* Cic.

459. *Alius* and *Alter* are often repeated: *ălius—ălius*, one—another; *alii—alii*, some—others; *alter—alter*, the one—the other; *altĕri—altĕri*, the one party—the other:

Alii glōriae serviunt, ălii pĕcūniae, *Some are slaves to glory, others to money.* Cic. Altĕri dīmĭcant, altĕri tĭment, *One party contends, the other fears.* Cic.

1. *Alius* repeated in different cases often involves an ellipsis:

Alius ălia via cīvitātem auxērunt, *They advanced the state, one in one way, another in another.* Liv. So also with *ălias* or *ălĭter*: Aliter ălii vīvunt, *Some live in one way, others in another.* Cic.

2. After *Alius*, *Alter*, and the like, *atque*, *ac*, and *et* often mean *than*:

Non ălius essem atque sum, *I would not be other than I am.* Cic.

3. *Alter* means *the one*, *the other* (of two), *the second*; ălius, *another*, *other*. When *alter—alter* refers to objects previously mentioned, the first *alter* usually refers to the latter object, but may refer to either:

Inimīcus, compĕtītor, cum altĕro—cum altĕro, *an enemy, a rival, with the latter—with the former.* Cic.

4. *Uterque* means *both*, *each of two*, and in the Plu. *both*, *each of two parties*.

CHAPTER V.

SYNTAX OF VERBS.

SECTION I.

AGREEMENT OF VERBS.

RULE XXXV.—Verb with Subject.

460. A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON:

Deus mundum aedĭfĭcāvit, *God made the world.* Cic. Ego rēges ejēci, vos tўrannos intrōdūcĭtis, *I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants.* Cic.

1. PARTICIPLES IN COMPOUND TENSES agree with the subject according to 438. See also 301. 2 and 3:

Thēbāni accūsāti sunt, *The Thebans were accused.* Cic.

1) In the Infinitive, the Participle in *um* sometimes occurs without any reference to the gender or number of the subject:

Diffīdentia fūtūrum quae impĕrāvisset, *from doubt that those things which he had commanded would take place.* Sall.

2. Subject Omitted. See 367. 2.

1) An Indefinite Subject is often denoted by the Second Pers. Sing., or by the First or Third Plur.: *dīcas*, you (any one) may say; *dīcĭmus*, we (people) say; *dīcunt*, they say.

3. Verb Omitted.—See 367. 3.

461. Construction according to Sense.—Sometimes the Predicate is construed according to the *real meaning* of the subject without regard to grammatical gender or number. Thus

1. With Collective Nouns, *pars*, *multĭtūdo*, and the like:

Multĭtūdo ăbeunt, *The multitude depart.* Liv. Pars per agros dīlapsi, *a part* (some) *dispersed through the fields.* Liv.

1) Here *multĭtūdo* and *pars*, though Sing. and Fem. in form, are Plur. and Masc. in sense. See also 438. 6.

2) Conversely the Imperative Singular may be used in addressing a multitude individually: Adde dēfectiōnem Sicĭliae, *Add* (to this, soldiers,) *the revolt of Sicily.* Liv.

3) Of two verbs with the same collective noun, the former is often *Sing.*, and the latter *Plur.*: Jŭventus ruit certantque, *The youth rush forth and contend.* Virg.

2. With *Millia*, often masculine in sense:

Caesi sunt tria millia, *Three thousand men were slain.* Liv.

3. With *Quisque*, *Uterque*, *Alius—Alium*, *Alter—Altĕrum*, and the like:

Uterque ēdūcunt, *they each lead out.* Caes. Alter altĕrum vĭdēmus, *We see each other.* Cic.

4. With Singular Subjects accompanied by an Ablative with *cum*:

Dux cum prīncĭpĭbus căpiuntur, *The leader with his chiefs is taken.* Liv. See 438. 6.

5. With *Partim—Partim* in the sense of *pars—pars*:

Bŏnōrum partim nĕcessāria, partim non nĕcessāria sunt, *Of good things some are necessary, others are not necessary.* Cic.

462. Agreement with Appositive or Predicate Noun.—Sometimes the verb agrees, not with its subject, but with an Appositive or Predicate Noun:

Volsĭnii, oppĭdum Tuscōrum, concrĕmātum est, *Volsinii, a town of the Tuscans, was burned.* Plin. Non omnis error stultĭtia est dīcenda, *Not every error should be called folly.* Cic.

1. The Verb regularly agrees with the appositive when that is *urbs*, *oppĭdum*, or *cīvĭtas*, in apposition with plural names of places, as in the first example.

1) The verb sometimes agrees with a noun in a subordinate clause after *quam*, *nisi*, etc.: Nihil ălĭud nisi pax quaesīta est (not *quaesītum*), *Nothing but peace was sought.* Cic.

2. The verb agrees with the predicate noun, when that is nearer or more emphatic than the subject, as in the second example.

463. Agreement with Compound Subject.—**With two or more subjects the verb agrees—**

I. With one subject and is understood with the others:

Aut mōres spectāri aut fortūna sŏlet, *Either character or fortune is wont to be regarded.* Cic. Hŏmērus fuit et Hēsiŏdus ante Rōmam condĭtam, *Homer and Hesiod lived* (were) *before the founding of Rome.* Cic.

II. With all the subjects conjointly, and is accordingly in the Plural Number:

Lentŭlus, Scīpio pĕriērunt, *Lentulus and Scipio perished.* Cic. Ego et Cĭcĕro vălēmus, *Cicero and I are well.* Cic. Tu et Tullia vălētis, *You and Tullia are well.* Cic.

1. Person.—With subjects differing in Person, the verb takes the First Person rather than the Second, and the Second rather than the Third, as in the examples just given.

2. Participles.—See 439.

3. Two Subjects as a Unit.—Two singular subjects forming in sense a unit or whole, admit a singular verb:

Sĕnātus pŏpŭlusque intellĭgit, *The senate and people* (i. e., the state as a unit) *understand.* Cic. Tempus nĕcessĭtasque postŭlat, *Time and necessity* (i. e., the crisis) *demand.* Cic.

4. Subjects with Aut or Nec.—With singular subjects connected by *aut, vel, nec, nĕque* or *seu*, the verb generally agrees with the nearest subject, but with subjects differing in person, it is generally Plur.:

Aut Brūtus aut Cassius jūdĭcāvit, *Either Brutus or Cassius judged.* Cic. Haec nĕque ĕgo nĕque tu fēcĭmus, *Neither you nor I have done these things.* Ter.

SECTION II.

USE OF VOICES.

464. In a transitive verb, the Active voice represents the subject as acting upon some object, the Passive, as acted upon by some other person or thing:

Deus mundum aedĭfĭcāvit, *God made the world.* Cic. A Deo omnia facta sunt, *All things were made by God.* Cic.

465. Active and Passive Construction.—**With transitive verbs, a thought may at the pleasure of the writer be expressed either actively or passively. But**

I. That which in the active construction would be the object must be the subject in the passive; and

II. That which in the active would be the subject must be put in the ablative with *a* or *ab*, for persons, without it for things: (371.6):

Deus omnia constĭtuit, *God ordained all things,* or: A Deo omnia constĭtūta sunt, *All things were ordained by God.* Cic. Dei prōvĭdentia mundum admĭnistrat, *The providence of God rules the world,* or: Dei prōvĭdentia mundus admĭnistrātur, *The world is ruled by the providence of God.* Cic.

1. The Passive Voice is sometimes equivalent to the Act. with a reflexive pronoun, like the Greek Middle:

Lăvantur in flūmĭnĭbus, *They bathe* (wash themselves) *in the rivers.* Caes.

2. Intransitive Verbs (193) have regularly only the active voice, but they are sometimes used impersonally in the passive:

Currĭtur ad praetōrium, *They run to the praetorium* (it is run to). Cic.

3. Deponent Verbs, though Passive in form, are in signification transitive or intransitive:

Illud mīrābar, *I admired that.* Cic. Ab urbe prŏfĭcisci, *to set out from the city.* Caes.

4. Semi-Deponents (271, 3) have some of the Active forms and some of the Passive, without change of meaning.

SECTION III.

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

I. Present Indicative.

466. The Present Indicative represents the action of the verb as taking place at the present time:

Ego et Cĭcĕro vălēmus, *Cicero and I are well.* Cic. Hoc te rŏgo, *I ask you for this.* Cic.

467. Hence the Present Tense is used,

I. Of actions and events which are actually taking place at the present time, as in the above examples.

II. Of actions and events which, as belonging to all time, belong of course to the present, as *general truths* and *customs:*

Nihil est ămābĭlius virtūte, *Nothing is more lovely than virtue.* Cic. Fortes fortūna adjŭvat, *Fortune helps the brave.* Ter.

III. Of past actions and events which the writer wishes, for effect, to picture before the reader as present. The Present, when so used, is called the Historical Present:

Jŭgurtha vallo moenia circumdat, *Jugurtha surrounds the city with a rampart.* Sall.

1. Historical Present.—The historical present may sometimes be best rendered by the English Imperfect, and sometimes by the English Present, as that has a similar historical use.

2. Present with Jamdiu, Jamdudum.—The Present is often used of a *present* action which has been going on for some time, rendered *have*, especially after *jamdiu, jamdūdum*, etc.

Jamdiu ignōro quid ăgas, *I have not known for a long time what you are doing.* Cic.

1) The Imperfect is used in the same way of a *past* action which had been going on for some time. Thus in the example above, *Jamdiu ignōrābam*, would mean, *I had not known for a long time.*

2) The Present in the Infinitive and Participle is used in the same way of an action which has been or had been going on for some time.

3. Present applied to Authors.—The Present in Latin, as in English, may be used of authors whose works are extant:

Xĕnŏphon făcit Socrătem dispŭtantem, *Xenophon represents Socrates discussing.* Cic.

4. Present with Dum.—With *dum*, in the sense of *while*, the Present is generally used, even of past actions:

Dum ea părant, Săguntum oppugnābātur, *While they were* (are) *making these preparations, Saguntum was attacked.* Liv.

5. Present for Future.—The Present is sometimes used of an action really future, especially in conditions:

Si vincĭmus, omnia tūta ĕrunt, *If we conquer, all things will be safe.* Sall.

II. Imperfect Indicative.

468. The Imperfect Indicative represents the action as taking place in past time:

Stābant nōbĭlissĭmi jŭvĕnes, *There stood* (were standing) *most noble youths.* Liv. Colles oppĭdum cingēbant, *Hills encompassed the town.* Caes.

469. Hence the Imperfect is used especially

I. In *lively description*, whether of scenes or events:

Ante oppĭdum plānĭties pătēbat, *Before the town extended a plain.* Caes. Fulgentes glădios vĭdēbant, *They saw* (were seeing) *the gleaming swords.* Cic.

II. Of *customary* or *repeated* actions and events, often rendered by *was wont*, etc.:

Pausănias ĕpŭlābātur mōre Persārum, *Pausanias was wont to banquet in the Persian style.* Nep.

1. Imperfect of Attempted Action.—The Imperfect is sometimes used of an attempted or intended action:

Sēdābant tŭmultus, *They attempted to quell the seditions.* Liv.

2. Imperfect in Letters.—See 472. 1.

III. Future Indicative.

470. The Future Indicative represents the action as one which will take place in future time:

Scrībam ad te, *I will write to you.* Cic. Nunquam ăberrābĭmus, *We shall never go astray.* Cic.

1. Future with Imperative Force.—In Latin as in English, the Future Indicative sometimes has the force of an Imperative:

Cūrābis et scrībes, *You will take care and write.* Cic.

2. Latin Future for English Present.—Actions which really belong to future time are almost invariably expressed by the Future Tense, though sometimes put in the present in English:

Nātūram si sĕquēmur, nunquam ăberrābĭmus, *If we follow nature, we shall never go astray.* Cic.

3. Future Indicative with Melius.—With *mĕlius* the Future Indicative has often the force of the Subjunctive:

Mĕlius pĕrībĭmus, *We would perish rather*, or *it would be better for us to perish.* Liv.

IV. Perfect Indicative.

471. The Perfect Indicative has two distinct uses:

I. As the Present Perfect or Perfect Definite, it represents the action as at present completed, and is rendered by our Perfect with *have:*

De gĕnĕre belli dixi, *I have spoken of the character of the war.* Cic.

II. As the Historical Perfect or Perfect Indefinite, it represents the action as a simple historical fact:

Miltiădes est accūsātus, *Miltiades was accused.* Nep.

1. Perfect of what has ceased to be.—The Perfect is sometimes used where the emphasis rests particularly on the *completion* of the action, implying that what was true of the past, is not true of the present:

Hăbuit, non hăbet, *He had, but has not.* Cic. Fuit Ilium, *Ilium was.* Virg.

2. Perfect Indicative with Paene, Prope.—The Perfect Indicative with *paene, prŏpe*, may often be rendered by *might, would*, or by the Pluperfect Indicative:

Brūtum non mĭnus ămo, *paene dixi*, quam te, *I love Brutus not less, I might almost say*, or *I had almost said, than I do you.* Cic.

3. Perfect for English Present.—The Latin sometimes employs the Perfect and Pluperfect where the English uses the Present and Imperfect, especially in repeated actions, and in verbs which want the Present (297).

Mĕmĭnit praetĕrĭtōrum, *He remembers the past.* Cic. Quum ad villam vĕni, hoc me dēlectat, *When I come* (have come) *to a villa, this pleases me.* Cic. Mĕmĭnĕram Paulum, *I remembered Paulus.* Cic.

4. Perfect with Postquam.—*Postquam, ut, ut primum*, etc., in the sense of *as soon as*, are usually followed by the Perfect; sometimes by the Imperfect or Historical Present. But the Pluperfect is generally used of repeated actions; also after *postquam* when a long or definite interval intervenes:

Postquam cĕcĭdit Ilium, *after* (as soon as) *Ilium fell.* Virg. Anno tertio postquam prŏfūgĕrat, *in the third year after he had fled.* Nep.

1) As a Rare Exception the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive occur after *postquam* (posteāquam): Posteāquam aedificasset classes, *after he had built fleets.* Cic.

V. Pluperfect Indicative.

472. The Pluperfect Indicative represents the action as completed at some definite past time:

Cōpias quas pro castris collŏcāvĕrat, rĕduxit, *He led back the forces which he had stationed before the camp.* Caes.

1. Tenses.—In letters the writer often adapts the tense to the time of the reader, using the Imperfect or Perfect for the Present, and the Pluperfect for the Imperfect or Perfect:

Nihil hăbēbam quod scrībĕrem: ad tuas omnes ĕpistŏlas rescripsĕram, *I have* (had) *nothing to write: I have already replied to all your letters* (I had replied, i. e., before writing this). Cic.

1) The Perfect is sometimes used of Future actions, as events which happen *after* the writing of the letter but *before* the receipt of it will be *Future* to the writer but *Past* to the reader.

2. Pluperfect for English Imperfect.—See 471. 3.

3. Pluperfect to denote Rapidity.—The Pluperfect sometimes denotes rapidity or completeness af action:

Urbem luctu complēvĕrant, *They* (had) *filled the city with mourning.* Curt.

VI. Future Perfect Indicative.

473. The Future Perfect Indicative represents the action as one which will be completed at some future time:

Rōmam quum vēnĕro, scrībam ad te, *When I shall have reached Rome, I will write to you.* Cic. Dum tu haec lĕges, ĕgo illum fortasse convēnĕro, *When you read this, I shall perhaps have already met him.* Cic.

1. Future Perfect to denote Certainty.—The Future Perfect is sometimes used to denote the *speedy* or *complete* accomplishment of the work:

Ego meum officium praestĭtĕro, *I will surely discharge my duty.* Caes.

2. The Future Perfect for English Present or Future is rare, but occurs in conditional clauses:

Si interprĕtāri pŏtuĕro, his verbis ūtĭtur, *If I can* (shall have been able to) *understand him, he uses these words.* Cic.

SECTION IV.

USE OF THE INDICATIVE.

RULE XXXVI.—Indicative.

474. The Indicative is used in treating of facts:

Deus mundum aedĭfĭcāvit, *God made the world.* Cic. Nonne expulsus est patria, *Was he not banished from his country?* Cic. Hoc fēci, dum lĭcuit, *I did this as long as it was permitted.* Cic.

475. Special Uses.—The Indicative is sometimes used where our idiom would suggest the Subjunctive:

1. The *Indicative* of the *Periphrastic Conjugations* is often so used in the historical tenses, especially in conditional sentences (512. 2):

Haec condĭtio non accĭpienda fuit, *This condition should not have been accepted.* Cic.

2. The *Historical Tenses* of the *Indicative*, particularly the *Pluperfect*, are sometimes used for *Effect*, to represent as an actual fact something which is shown by the context never to have become fully so:

Vīcĕrāmus, nĭsi rĕcĕpisset Antōnium, *We should have* (*lit.* had) *conquered, had he not received Antony.* Cic. See 511. 2.

3. *Pronouns* and *Relative Adverbs*, made general by being doubled or by assuming the suffix *cunque* (187. 4), take the Indicative:

Quisquis est, is est săpiens, *Whoever he is, he is wise.* Cic. Hoc ultĭmum, utcunque inĭtum est, proelium fuit, *This, however it was commenced, was the last battle.* Liv.

4. *In Expressions of Duty, Necessity, Ability*, and the like, the Latin often uses the Indicative where the English does not:

Tardius quam dēbuĕrat, *more slowly than he should have done.* Cic.

1) So also in *sum* with *aequum, par, justum, mĕlius, ūtĭlius, longum, diffĭcĭle*, and the like: Longum est persĕqui ūtĭlitātes, *It would be tedious* (is a long task) *to enumerate the uses.* Cic.

SECTION V.

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

476. Tense in the Subjunctive does not designate the time of the action as definitely as in the Indicative, but it marks with great exactness its continuance or completion.

477. The Present and Imperfect express *Incomplete* action:

Văleant cīves, *May the citizens be well.* Cic. Ŭtĭnam vēra invĕnīre possem, *O that I were able to find the truth.* Cic.

478. The Perfect and Pluperfect express *Completed* action:

Oblītus es quid dixĕrim, *You have forgotten what I said.* Cic. Thĕmistocles, quum Graeciam lībĕrasset, expulsus est, *Themistocles was banished, though he had liberated Greece.* Cic.

479. The Future Tenses are wanting in the Subjunctive: the mood itself—used only of that which is merely *conceived* and *uncertain*—is so nearly related to the Future, that those tenses are seldom needed. Their place is however supplied, when necessary, by the periphrastic forms in *rus* (481. III. 1).

480. Sequence of Tenses.—The Subjunctive Tenses in their use conform to the following

RULE XXXVII.—Sequence of Tenses.

Principal tenses depend upon Principal tenses: Historical upon Historical:

Nītĭtur ut vincat, *He strives to conquer.* Cic. Nēmo ĕrit qui censeat, *There will be no one who will think.* Cic. Quaesiĕras nonne pŭtārem, *You had asked, whether I did not think.* Cic.

481. Application of the Rule.—In accordance with this rule,

I. The Subjunctive dependent upon a Principal tense—*present, present perfect, future, future perfect*—is put,

1. In the Present for Incomplete Action:

Vĭdeo quid ăgas,	*I see what you are doing.*
Vīdi quid agas,	*I have seen what you are doing.*
Vĭdēbo quid agas,	*I shall see what you do.*
Vīdĕro quid agas,	*I shall have seen what you do.*

2. In the Perfect for Completed Action:

Vĭdeo quid ēgĕris,	*I see what you have done.*
Vīdi quid egeris,	*I have seen what you have done.*
Vĭdēbo quid egeris,	*I shall see what you have done.*
Vīdĕro quid egeris,	*I shall have seen what you have done.*

II. The Subjunctive dependent upon a Historical tense—*imperfect, historical perfect, pluperfect*—is put,

1. In the Imperfect for Incomplete Action:

Vĭdēbam quid ăgĕres,	*I saw what you were doing.*
Vīdi quid ageres,	*I saw what you were doing.*
Vīdĕram quid ageres,	*I had seen what you were doing.*

2. In the Pluperfect for Completed Action:

Vĭdēbam quid ēgisses,	*I saw what you had done.*
Vīdi quid egisses,	*I saw what you had done.*
Vīdĕram quid egisses,	*I had seen what you had done.*

III. The Periphrastic Forms in *rus* conform to the rule:

Vĭdeo quid actūrus sis,	*I see what you are going to do.*
Vĭdēbam quid actūrus esses,	*I saw what you were going to do.*

1. Future Supplied.—The Future is supplied when necessary (479), (1) by the Present[1] or Imperfect Subjunctive of the periphrastic forms in *rus*, or (2) by *fŭtūrum sit ut*,[2] with the regular Present, and *fŭtūrum esset ut*, with the regular Imperfect. The first method is confined to the Active, the second occurs in both voices:

Incertum est quam longa vīta fŭtūra sit, *It is uncertain how long life will continue.* Cic. Incertum ĕrat quo missūri classem fŏrent, *It was uncertain whither they would send the fleet.* Liv.

2. Future Perfect Supplied.—The Future Perfect is supplied, when necessary, by *fŭtūrum sit ut*, with the Perfect, and *fŭtūrum esset ut*, with the Pluperfect. But this circumlocution is rarely necessary. In the Passive it is sometimes abridged to *fŭtūrus sim* and *fŭtūrus essem*, with the Perfect participle:

Non dŭbĭto quin confecta jam res fŭtūra sit, *I do not doubt that the thing will have been already accomplished.* Cic.

IV. The Historical Present is treated sometimes as a Principal tense, as it really is in Form, and sometimes as a Historical tense, as it really is in Sense:

1. As Principal tense according to its Form:
Ubii ōrant, ut sĭbi parcat, *The Ubii implore him to spare them.* Caes.
2. As Historical tense according to its Sense:
Persuādet Castĭco ut regnum occŭpāret, *He persuaded Casticus to seize the government.* Caes.

V. The Imperfect Subjunctive often refers to *present* time, especially in conditional sentences (510. 1); accordingly, when thus used, it is treated as a Principal tense:

---

[1] The Present, of course, after Principal tenses, and the Imperfect after Historical tenses, according to 480.

[2] *Futūrum sit*, etc., after Principal tenses, and *futūrum esset*, etc., after Historical tenses.

Mĕmŏrāre possem quibus in lŏcis hostes fūdĕrit, *I might* (now) *state in what places he routed the enemy*. Sall.

VI. The PRESENT AND FUTURE INFINITIVES, Present and Future PARTICIPLES, as also GERUNDS and SUPINES, share the tense of the verb on which they depend, as they express only *relative* time (540. 571):

Spēro fŏre[1] ut contingat, *I hope it will happen* (I hope it will be that it may happen). Cic. Non spērāvĕrat fŏre ut ad se dēfĭcĕrent, *He had not hoped that they would revolt to him.* Liv.

482. PECULIARITIES IN SEQUENCE.—The following peculiarities in the sequence of tenses deserve notice:

1. AFTER PERFECT TENSE.—The Latin Perfect is sometimes treated as a Historical tense, even when rendered with *have*, and thus admits the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect:*

Quŏniam quae subsĭdia hăbēres expŏsui,[2] nunc dīcam, *Since I have shown what aids you have* (or *had*), *I will now speak*. Cic.

2. AFTER HISTORICAL TENSES.—Conversely Historical tenses, when followed by clauses denoting *consequence* or *result*, often conform to the law of sequence for Principal tenses, and thus admit the *Present* or *Perfect:*

Epămīnondas fĭde sic ūsus est, ut possit jūdĭcāri, *Epaminondas used such fidelity that it may be judged.* Nep. Adeo excellēbat Aristīdes abstīnentia, ut Justus sit appellātus, *Aristides so excelled in self-control, that he has been called the Just.* Nep.

This peculiarity arises from the fact that the *Result* of a *past* action may itself be *present* and may thus be expressed by a Principal tense. When the result belongs to the present time, the Present is used: *possit jūdĭcāri*, may be judged now; when it is represented as at present completed, the Perfect is used: *sit appellātus*, has been called i. e. even to the present day; but when it is represented as simultaneous with the action on which it depends, the Imperfect is used in accordance with the general rule of sequence (480).

3. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE, ORATIO OBLIQUA.—In indirect discourse (528. and 533. 1) dependent upon a Historical tense, the narrator often uses the Principal tenses to give a lively effect to his narrative; occasionally also in direct discourse:

Exĭtus fuit ōrātiōnis: Nĕque ullos văcāre agros, qui dări possint; *The close of the oration was, that there were* (are) *not any lands unoccupied which could* (can) *be given.* Caes.

---

[1] Here *fŏre* shares the tense of *spēro*, and is accordingly followed by the Present *contingat*, but below it shares the tense of *spērāvĕrat*, and is accordingly followed by the Imperfect *dĕfĭcĕrent.*

[2] *Expŏsui*, though best rendered by our Perf. Def. with *have*, is in the Latin treated as the Historical Perf. The thought is as follows: *Since in the preceding topics I set forth the aids which you had, I will now speak*, &c.

SECTION VI.

USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

483. The Subjunctive represents the action of the verb, not as an actual fact, but as something supposed or conceived. It may denote that the action is conceived,

1. As Possible, Potential.
2. As Desirable.
3. As a Purpose or Result.
4. As a Condition.
5. As a Concession.
6. As a Cause or Reason.
7. As an Indirect Question.
8. As dependent upon another subordinate action: (1) By Attraction after another Subjunctive, (2) In Indirect Discourse.

484. Varieties.—The Subjunctive in its various uses may accordingly be characterized as follows:

I. The Potential Subjunctive.
II. The Subjunctive of Desire.
III. The Subjunctive of Purpose or Result
IV. The Subjunctive of Condition.
V. The Subjunctive of Concession.
VI. The Subjunctive of Cause or Reason.
VII. The Subjunctive in Indirect Questions.
VIII. The Subjunctive by Attraction.
IX. The Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse.

I. The Potential Subjunctive.

Rule XXXVIII.—Potential Subjunctive.

485. The Potential Subjunctive represents the action not as real, but as *possible:*

Forsĭtan quaerātis, *Perhaps you may inquire.* Cic. Hoc nēmo dixĕrit, *No one would say this.* Cic. Huic cēdāmus, hujus condĭtiōnes audiāmus, *Shall we yield to him, shall we listen to his terms?* Cic. Quis dŭbĭtet (= nēmo dŭbĭtat), *Who would doubt,* or *who doubts* (= no one doubts)? Cic. Quid făcĕrem, *What was I to do,* or *what should I have done?* Virg.

486. Application of the Rule.—In the Potential sense, the Subjunctive is used,

I. In *Declarative Sentences*, to express an affirmation *doubtfully* or *conditionally*, as in the first and second examples.

II. In *Questions of Appeal*,[1] to ask not what is, but what *may be* or *should be*, generally implying a negative answer, as in the last example under the rule.

III. In *Subordinate Clauses*, whatever the connective, to represent the action as *possible* rather than *real:*

Quamquam ĕpŭlis cărеat sĕnectus, *though old age may be without its feasts.* Cic. Quŏniam non possent, *since they would not be able.* Caes. Ubi res poscĕret, *whenever the case might demand.* Liv.

Here the Subjunctive after *quamquam*, *quŏniam*, and *ŭbi*, is entirely independent of those conjunctions. In this way many conjunctions which do not require the Subjunctive, admit that mood whenever the thought requires it.

1. Use of the Potential Subjunctive.—This Subjunctive, it will be observed, has a wide application, and is used in almost all kinds of sentences and clauses, whether declarative or interrogative, principal or subordinate, whether introduced by conjunctions or relatives.

2. *How rendered.*—The Potential Subjunctive is generally best rendered by our Potential signs—*may*, *can*, *must*, *might*, etc., or by *shall* or *will*.

3. Inclination.—The Subjunctive sometimes denotes inclination:

Ego censeam, *I should think*, or *I am inclined to think.* Liv.

4. Imperfect for Pluperfect.—In the Potential sense, the Imperfect is often used where we should expect the Pluperfect: *dīcĕres*, you would have said; *crēdĕres*, *pŭtāres*, you would have thought; *vidĕres*, *cernĕres*, you would have seen:

Moesti, *crēdĕres* victos, rĕdeunt in castra, *Sad, vanquished you would have thought them, they returned to the camp.* Liv.

5. Subjunctive of Repeated Action.—Subordinate clauses in narration sometimes take the Subjunctive to denote that the action is *often* or *indefinitely repeated.* Thus with *ŭbi*, whenever, *quŏties*, as often as, *quīcunque*, whoever, *ut quisque*, as each one, and the like:

Id fētiālis ŭbi dixisset, hastam mittēbat, *The fetial priest was wont to hurl a spear whenever* (i. e., every time) *he had said this.* Liv.

6. Present and Perfect.—In the Potential Subjunctive the Perfect often has nearly the same force as the Present:

Tu Plătōnem laudāvĕris, *You would praise Plato.* Cic.

1) The Perfect with the force of the Present occurs also in some of the other uses of the Subjunctive.

7. Conditional Sentences.—The Subjunctive in the conclusion of conditional sentences is the Potential Subjunctive, but conditional sentences will be best treated by themselves. See 502.

---

[1] These are also variously called *Deliberative*, *Doubting*, or *Rhetorical Questions.*

II. The Subjunctive of Desire.

RULE XXXIX.—Desire, Command.

487. The Subjunctive of Desire represents the action not as real, but as *desired:*

Vălеant cīves, *May the citizens be well.* Cic. Amēmus patriam, *Let us love our country.* Cic. Rōbŏre ūtāre, *Use your strength.* Cic. Scrībĕre ne pigrēre, *Do not neglect to write.* Cic.

488. Application of the Rule.—The Subjunctive of Desire is used,

I. To express a wish, as in *prayers*, *exhortations*, and *entreaties*, as in the first and second examples.

II. To express a command mildly, as in *admonitions*, *precepts*, and *warnings*, as in the third and fourth examples.

1. With Utinam.—The Subjunctive of *Desire* is often accompanied by *ŭtĭnam*, and sometimes—especially in the poets, by *ut*, *si*, *o si:*

Utĭnam cōnāta effĭcĕre possim, *May I be able to accomplish my endeavors.* Cic.

2. Force of Tenses.—The Present and Perfect imply that the wish may be fulfilled; the Imperfect and Pluperfect, that it cannot be fulfilled:

Sint beāti, *May they be happy.* Cic. Ne transiĕris Ibērum, *Do not cross the Ebro.* Liv. Utĭnam possem, ŭtĭnam pŏtuissem, *Would that I were able, would that I had been able.* Cic. See also 486. 6. 1).

The Imperfect and Pluperfect may often be best rendered, *should have been, ought to have been:*

Hoc dīcĕret, *He should have said this.* Cic. Mortem oppĕtiisses, *You should have met death.* Cic.

3. Negative Ne.—With this Subjunctive the negative is *ne*, rarely *non:*

Ne audeant, *Let them not dare.* Cic. Non rĕcēdāmus, *Let us not recede.* Cic.

4. In Asseverations.—The first person of the subjunctive is often found in earnest or solemn affirmations or asseverations:

Mŏriar, si pŭto, *May I die, if I think.* Cic. Ne sim salvus, si scrībo, *May I not be safe, if I write.* Cic.

So with *ita* and *sic:* Sollĭcĭtat, ĭta vīvam, *As I live, it troubles me.* Cic.

Here *ita vivam* means literally, *may I so live*, i. e., may I live only in case this is true.

5. In Relative Clauses.—The Subjunctive of desire is sometimes used in relative clauses:

Quod faustum sit, rēgem creāte, *Elect a king, and may it be an auspicious event* (may which be auspicious). Liv. Sĕnectus, ad quam ŭtĭnam pervĕniātis, *old age, to which may you attain.* Cic.

III. Subjunctive of Purpose or Result.

RULE XL.—Purpose or Result.

489. The Subjunctive of Purpose or Result is used,

I. **With ut, ne, quo, quin, quōmĭnus:**

Purpose.—Enītĭtur ut vincat, *He strives that he may conquer.* Cic. Pūnit ne peccētur, *He punishes that crime may not be committed.* Sen.

Result.—Ita vixit ut Athēniensĭbus esset cārissĭmus, *He so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians.* Nep.

II. **With qui = ut is, ut ĕgo, tu, etc.:**

Purpose.—Missi sunt, qui (*ut ii*) consŭlĕrent Apollĭnem, *They were sent to consult Apollo* (who should *or* that they should). Nep.

Result.—Non is sum qui (*ut ego*) his ūtar, *I am not such an one as to use these things.* Cic.

1. *Ut* with the Subjunctive sometimes forms with *făcio*, or *ăgo*, rarely with *est* a circumlocution for the Indicative: *făcio ut dīcam* = dīco; *făcio ut scrībam* = scrībo: Invītus făcio ut rĕcorder, *I unwillingly recall.* Cic.

Conjunctions of Purpose or Result.

490. Ut and Ne.—*Ut* and *ne* are the regular conjunctions in clauses denoting Purpose or Result. *Ut* and *ne* denote Purpose; *ut* and *ut non*, Result.

1. With connective *ne* becomes *nēve, neu*, rarely *nĕque*. Nēve, neu, = *aut ne* or *et ne:* Lēgem tŭlit nēquis accūsārētur nēve multārētur, *He proposed a law that no one should be accused or punished.* Nep.

491. Pure Purpose.—Ut and ne—*that, in order that, that not, in order that not, lest*, etc.—are used after verbs of a great variety of significations to express simply the Purpose of the action. A correlative—*ĭdeo, idcirco*, etc. —may or may not precede:

Lēgum idcirco servi sŭmus, ut lībĕri esse possīmus, *We are servants of the law for this reason, that we may be free.* Cic. See also the examples under the Rule.

492. Mixed Purpose.—In their less obvious applications, *ut* and *ne* are used to denote a *Purpose* which partakes more or less of the character of a *Direct Object*, sometimes of a *Subject, Predicate* or *Appositive*—Mixed Purpose. Thus with verbs and expressions denoting

1. Effort.—striving for a purpose; attaining a purpose:

nītor, contendo, stŭdeo,—cūro, id ăgo, ŏpĕram do, etc., făcio, effĭcio, impetro, consĕquor, etc.:

Contendit, ut vincat, *He strives to conquer.* Cic. Cūrāvi ut bĕne vīvĕrem, *I took care to lead a good life.* Sen. Effĕcit ut impĕrātor mittĕrētur, *He caused a commander to be sent* (attained his purpose). Nep. But see 495.

2. Exhortation, Impulse—urging one to effort:

admŏneo, mŏneo, hortor,—cōgo, impello, mŏveo,—ōro, rŏgo,—impĕro, praecĭpio, etc.:

Te hortor ut lĕgas, *I exhort you to read.* Cic. Mŏvēmur ut bŏni sīmus, *We are influenced to be good.* Cic. Te rŏgo ut eum jŭves, *I ask you to aid him.* Cic. See also 551. II. 1 and 2; 558. VI.

3. Desire and its Expression: hence *decision, decree,* etc.:

ŏpto, postŭlo,—censeo, dēcerno, stătuo, constĭtuo, etc.—rarely vŏlo, nōlo, mālo:

Opto ut id audiātis, *I desire* (pray) *that you may hear this.* Cic. Sĕnātus censuĕrat, ŭti Aeduos dēfendĕret, *The senate had decreed that he should defend the Aedui.* Caes. See 551. II. and 558. II. and VI.

4. Fear, Danger:

mĕtuo, tĭmeo, vĕreor,—pĕrīcŭlum est, cūra est, etc.:

Tĭmeo, ut sustĭneas, *I fear you will not endure them.* Cic. Vĕreor ne lăbōrem augeam, *I fear that I shall increase the labor.* Cic.

1) By a Difference of Idiom *ut* must here be rendered *that not*, and *ne* by *that* or *lest.* The Latin treats the clause as a wish, a desired purpose.

2) After verbs of fearing *ne non* is sometimes used for *ut*, regularly so after negative clauses: Vĕreor ne non possit, *I fear that he will not be able.* Cic.

3) After verbs of fearing, especially *vĕreor*, the infinitive is sometimes used: Vĕreor laudāre, *I fear* (hesitate) *to praise.* Cic.

493. Peculiarities.—Expressions of Purpose present the following peculiarities:

1. *Ut ne*, rarely *ut non*, is sometimes used for *ne:*

Praedixit, ut ne lēgātos dīmittĕrent, *He charged them not to* (that they should not) *release the delegates.* Nep. Ut plūra non dīcam, *not to say more,* i. e., that I may not. Cic.

2. *Ut* is sometimes omitted, especially with *vŏlo, nōlo, mālo, făcio,* and verbs of directing, urging, etc. *Ne* is often omitted with *căve:*

Tu vĕlim sis, *I desire that you may be.* Cic. Fac hăbeas, *see* (make) *that you have.* Cic. Sĕnātus decrēvit, dărent ŏpĕram consŭles, *The senate decreed that the consuls should see to it.* Sall. See also 535. 1, 2).

3. Clauses with *Ut* and *Ne* may depend upon a noun or upon a verb omitted:

Fēcit pācem his condĭtiōnĭbus, ne qui affĭcĕrentur exsĭlio, *He made peace on these terms, that none should be punished with exile.* Nep. Ut ĭta dīcam, *so to speak* (that I may speak thus). Cic. This is often inserted in a sentence, like the English *so to speak.*

4. *Nēdum* and *Ne* in the sense of *much less, not to say*, are used with the Subjunctive:

Vix in tectis frīgus vītātur, nēdum in māri sit făcĭle, *The cold is avoided with difficulty in our houses, much less is it easy* (*to avoid it*) *on the sea.* Cic.

494. Pure Result.—Ut and ut non—*so that, so that not*—are often used with the Subjunctive, to express simply a *Result* or a *Consequence:*

Ita vixit ut Athēniensĭbus esset cārissĭmus, *He so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians.* Nep. Ita laudo, ut non pertĭmescam, *I so praise as not to fear.* Cic.

A correlative—*ita* in these examples—generally precedes: thus, *ĭta, sic, tam, ădeo, tantŏpĕre,—tālis, tantus, ejusmŏdi.*

495. Mixed Result.—In their less obvious applications, *ut* and *ut non* are used with the Subjunctive to denote a *Result* which partakes of the character of a *Direct Object, Subject, Predicate,* or *Appositive:* Thus

1. Clauses as Object and Result occur with *făcio, effĭcio,* of the action of irrational forces:

Sol effĭcit ut omnia flōreant, *The sun causes all things to bloom,* i. e., produces that result. Cic. See 492. 1.

2. Clauses as Subject and Result occur with impersonal verbs signifying *it happens, remains, follows, is distant,* etc.:

accĭdit, contingit, ēvĕnit, fit, restat,—sĕquĭtur,—ăbest, etc.

Fit ut quisque dēlectētur, *The result is* (it happens) *that every one is delighted.* Cic. Sĕquĭtur ut falsum sit, *It follows that it is false.* Cic.

1) The Subjunctive is sometimes, though rarely, used when the predicate is a Noun or Adjective with the copula *sum:*

Mos est ut nōlint, *It is their custom not to be willing* (that they are unwilling). Cic. Proxĭmum est, ut dŏceam, *The next point is, that I show.* Cic. See 556. I. 1 and 2.

2) Subjunctive Clauses with *ut,* in the form of questions expressive of surprise, sometimes stand alone, by the omission of some predicate, as *crēdendum est, vērisimĭle est,* is it to be credited, is it probable?

Tu ut unquam te corrĭgas, *that you should ever reform?* i. e., Is it to be supposed that you will ever reform? Cic.

3) See also 556 with its subdivisions.

3. Clauses as Appositive and Result, or Predicate and Result, occur with Demonstratives and a few Nouns:

Hăbet hoc virtus ut dēlectet, *Virtue has this advantage, that it delights.* Cic. Est hoc vĭtium, ut invĭdia glōriae cŏmes sit, *There is this fault, that envy is the companion of glory.* Nep.

496. PECULIARITIES.—Expressions of Result present the following peculiarities:

1. *Ut* is sometimes omitted, regularly so with *ŏportet*, generally with *ŏpus est* and *nĕcesse est:*

Te ŏportet virtus trăhat, *It is necessary that virtue should attract you.* Cic. Causam hăbeat nĕcesse est, *It is necessary that it should have a cause.* Cic.

2. The Subjunctive occurs with *Quam*—with or without *ut:*

Lībĕrālius quam ut posset, *too freely to be able* (more freely than so as to be able). Nep. Imponēbat amplius quam ferre possent, *He imposed more than they were able to bear.*

3. *Tantum ăbest.*—After *tantum ăbest ut*, denoting result, a second *ut* of result sometimes occurs:

Phĭlŏsŏphia, tantum ăbest, ut laudētur ut ĕtiam vĭtŭpĕrētur, *So far is it from the truth* (so much is wanting), *that philosophy is praised that it is even censured.* Cic.

497. QUO.—Quo, *by which, that*, is sometimes used for *ut*, especially with comparatives:

Mĕdĭco dăre quo sit stŭdiōsior, *to give to the physician, that* (by this means) *he may be more attentive.* Cic.

For *non quo* of Cause, see 520. 3.

498. QUIN.—Quin (quî and ne), *by which not, that not*, is often used to introduce a Purpose or Result after negatives and interrogatives implying a negative. Thus

1. *Quin* is often used in the ordinary sense of *ne* and *ut non:*

Rĕtĭnēri non pŏtĕrant, quin tēla conjĭcĕrent, *They could not be restrained from hurling* (that they might not) *their weapons.* Caes. Nihil est tam diffĭcĭle quin (*ut non*) investĭgāri possit, *Nothing is so difficult that it may not be investigated.* Ter.

After verbs of *hindering, opposing*, and the like, *quin* has the force of *ne*.

2. *Quin* is often used after *Nemo, Nullus, Nihil, Quis?*

Adest nēmo, quin vĭdeat, *There is no one present who does not see.* Cic. Quis est quin cernat, *Who is there who does not perceive?* Cic.

Is or *id* is sometimes expressed after *quin:*

Nihil est quin id intĕreat, *There is nothing which does not perish.* Cic.

3. *Quin* is often used in the sense of *that, but that, without* with a participial noun, especially after negative expressions, implying *doubt, uncertainty, omission*, and the like:

Non est dŭbium quin bĕnĕfĭcium sit, *There is no doubt that it is a benefit.* Sen. Nullum intĕrmĭsi diem quin ălĭquid dărem, *I allowed no day to*

pass, without giving something. Cic. Făcĕre non possum quin littĕras mittam, *I cannot but send a letter.* Cic.

1) Such expressions are: non dŭbĭto, non dŭbium est—non multum ăbest, paulum ăbest, nihil ăbest, quid ăbest?—non, vix, aegre abstĭneo; mihi non tempĕro; non, nihil praetermitto—făcĕre non possum, fĭĕri non pŏtest.

2) The Infinitive, for *Quin* with the Subjunctive, occurs with verbs of doubting: Quis dŭbĭtat pătēre Eurōpam, *Who doubts that Europe is exposed?* Curt.

3) *Non Quin* of Cause. See 520. 3.

4) *Quin* is used in questions in the sense of *why not?* and with the Imperative in the sense of *well, but:* Quin ăgite, *but come.* Virg. It occasionally means *nay, even, rather.*

499. Quominus.—Quōmĭnus (quo and mĭnus), *that thus the less, that not,* is sometimes used for *ne* and *ut non,* after verbs of hindering, opposing, and the like:

Non dēterret săpientem mors quōmĭnus reipublĭcae consŭlat, *Death does not deter a wise man from deliberating for the republic.* Cic. Non rĕcūsāvit, quomĭnus poenam sŭbīret, *He did not refuse to submit to punishment.* Nep. Per eum stĕtit quōmĭnus dīmĭcārētur, *It was owing to him* (stood through him), *that the engagement was not made.* Caes.

1. Expressions of *hindering,* etc., are: dēterreo, impĕdio, prŏhĭbeo,—obsto, obsisto, officio,—rĕcūso, per me stat, etc.

2. Verbs of *hindering* admit a variety of constructions: the Infinitive, the Subjunctive with *ut, ne, quo, quin,* or *quōmĭnus.*

Relative of Purpose or Result.

500. A Relative Clause denoting a Purpose or a Result is equivalent to a clause with *ut,* denoting purpose or result, and takes the Subjunctive for the same reason. The relative is then equivalent to *ut* with a pronoun: *qui* = *ut ĕgo, ut tu, ut is,* etc.:

Purpose.—Missi sunt qui (ut ii) consŭlĕrent Apollĭnem, *They were sent to consult Apollo* (who should, *or* that they should). Nep. Missi sunt dēlecti qui Thermŏpȳlas occŭpārent, *Picked men were sent to take possession of Thermopylae.* Nep.

Result.—Non is sum qui (= *ut ĕgo*) his ūtar, *I am not such a one as to use these things.* Cic. Innŏcentia est affectio tālis ănĭmi, quae (= *ut ea*) nŏceat nēmĭni, *Innocence is such a state of mind as injures no one,* or *as to injure no one.* Cic.

1. Relative Particles.—The subjunctive is used in the same way in clauses introduced by *relative particles; ŭbi, unde,* etc.:

Dŏmum ŭbi hăbĭtāret, lēgit, *He selected a house that he might dwell in it* (where he might dwell). Cic.

2. Purpose and Result.—Relative clauses denoting purpose are readily recognized; those denoting result are used, in their more obvious applications, after such words as *tam*, so; *tālis*, *is*, *ejusmŏdi*, such, as in the above examples; but see also 501.

3. Indicative after Talis, etc.—In a relative clause after *tālis*, *is*, etc., the Indicative is sometimes used to give prominence to the *fact:*

Mihi causa tālis oblāta est, in qua ōrātio deesse nēmini pŏtest, *Such a cause has been offered me,* (one) *in which no one can fail of an oration.* Cic.

501. Relative clauses of Result, in their less obvious applications, include,

I. Relative clauses after *Indefinite* and *General antecedents.* Here *tam*, *tālis*, or some such word, may often be supplied:

Nunc dīcis ălĭquid (*ejusmŏdi*, or *tāle*) quod ad rem pertĭneat, *Now you state something which belongs to the subject* (i. e., something of such a character as to belong, etc.). Cic. Sunt qui pŭtent, *there are some who think.* Cic. Nĕmo est qui non cŭpiat, *there is no one who does not desire,* i. e., such as not to desire. Cic.

1. In the same way *quod*, or a relative particle, *ŭbi*, *unde*, *quo*, *cur*, etc., with the *Subjunctive*, is used after *est*, there is reason, *non est*, *nihil est*, there is no reason, *quid est*, what reason is there? *non hăbeo*, *nihil hăbeo*, I have no reason:

Est quod gaudeas, *There is reason why you should rejoice*, or *so that you may.* Plaut. Non est quod crēdas, *There is no reason why you should believe.* Sen. Nihil hăbeo, quod incūsem sĕnectūtem, *I have no reason why I should accuse old age.* Cic.

2. Indicative after Indefinite Antecedent.—A Relative clause after an indefinite antecedent also takes the Indicative, when the fact itself is to be made prominent:

Sunt qui non audent dīcĕre, *There are some who* (actually) *do not dare to speak.* Cic. Multa sunt, quae dīci possunt, *There are many things which may be said.* Cic. So also clauses with Rel. particles. See 1 above.

In poetry and late prose the Indicative often follows *sunt qui:*

Sunt quos jŭvat, *there are some whom it delights.* Hor.

3. Restrictive Clauses with *quod*, as *quod sciam*, as far as I know; *quod mĕmĭnĕrim*, as far as I remember, etc., take the subjunctive.

II. Relative clauses after *Unus*, *Sōlus*, and the like, take the subjunctive:

Săpientia est ūna, quae moestĭtiam pellat, *Wisdom is the only thing which dispels sadness* (such as to dispel). Cic. Sōli centum ĕrant qui creāri possent, *There were only one hundred who could be appointed* (such that they could be). Liv.

III. Relative clauses after *Dignus*, *Indignus*, *Idōneus*, and *Aptus* take the subjunctive:

Fābŭlae dignae sunt, quae lĕgantur, *The fables are worthy to be read* (that they should be read). Cic. Rūfum Caesar Idōneum jūdĭcāvĕrat quem mittĕret, *Caesar had judged Rufus a suitable person to send* (whom he might send). Caes.

IV. Relative clauses after Comparatives with *Quam* take the subjunctive:

Damna majōra sunt quam quae (= *ut ea*) aestĭmāri possint, *The losses are too great to be estimated* (greater than so that they can be). Liv.

IV. Subjunctive of Condition.

502. Every conditional sentence consists of two distinct parts, expressed or understood,—the *Condition* and the *Conclusion:*

Si nĕgem, mentiar, *If I should deny it, I should speak falsely.* Cic. Here *si negem* is the condition, and *mentiar*, the conclusion.

RULE XLI.—Subjunctive of Condition.

503. The Subjunctive of Condition is used,

I. With **dum, mŏdo, dummŏdo:**

Mănent ingĕnia, mŏdo permăneat industria, *Mental powers remain, if only industry remains.* Cic.

II. With **ac si, ut si, quăsi, quam si, tanquam, tanquam si, vĕlut, vĕlut si:**

Crūdēlĭtātem, vĕlut si ădesset, horrēbant, *They shuddered at his cruelty, as if he were present.* Caes.

III. Sometimes with **si, nisi, ni, sin, qui = si is, si quis:**

Dies dēfĭciat, si vĕlim nŭmĕrāre, *The day would fail me, if I should wish to recount.* Cic. Imprŏbe fēcĕris, nĭsi mŏnuĕris, *You would do wrong, if you should not give warning.* Cic. Si vŏluisset, dīmĭcasset, *If he had wished, he would have fought.* Nep.

1. Si Omitted.—Two clauses without any conjunction sometimes have the force of a conditional sentence:

Nĕgat quis, nĕgo, *Does any one deny, I deny.* Ter. Rŏges me, nihil respondeam, *Should you ask me, I should make no reply.* Cic. See also *Imperative*, 535. 2.

2. Condition Supplied.—The condition may be supplied,

1) By *Participles:* Non pŏtestis, vŏluptāte omnia dīrĭgentes (*si dīrĭgītis*), rĕtĭnēre virtūtem, *You cannot retain your manhood, if you arrange all things with reference to pleasure.* Cic.

2) By *Oblique Cases:* Nēmo sĭne spe (*nisi spem hăbēret*) se offerret ad mortem, *No one without a hope* (if he had not a hope) *would expose himself to death.* Cic.

3. Irony.—The condition is sometimes ironical, especially with *nisi vēro, nisi forte* with the Indicative, and with *quăsi, quăsi vēro* with the Present or Perfect Subjunctive:

Nĭsi forte insānit, *unless perhaps he is insane*. Cic. Quăsi vēro nĕcesse sit, *as if indeed it were necessary*. Caes.

4. Ita—si, etc.—*Ita—si*, so—if, means *only—if*. *Si quidem*, if indeed, sometimes has nearly the force of *since*.

5. Et omitted.—See 587. I. 6.

504. Force of Tenses.—In conditional sentences the Present and Perfect tenses represent the supposition as not at all improbable, the Imperfect and Pluperfect represent it as contrary to the fact. See examples above. See also 476 to 478.

1. Present for Imperfect.—The Present Subjunctive is sometimes used for the Imperfect, when a condition, in itself contrary to reality, is still conceived of as possible:

Tu si hic sis, ălĭter sentias, *If you were the one* (or, *should be*), *you would think differently*. Ter.

2. Imperfect for Pluperfect.—The Imperfect Subjunctive is sometimes used for the Pluperfect, with the nice distinction that it contemplates the supposed action as *going on*, not as completed:

Num Opīmium, si tum esses, tĕmĕrārium cīvem pŭtāres? *Would you think Opimius an audacious citizen, if you were living at that time* (Pluperf. would you have thought—if you had lived)? Cic.

505. Dum, Mŏdo, Dummŏdo.—Dum, mŏdo, and dummŏdo, in conditions, have the force of—*if only, provided that*, or with ne, *if only not, provided that not:*

Dum res măneant, verba fingant, *Let them make words, if only the facts remain*. Cic. Mŏdo permăneat industria, *if only industry remains*. Cic. Dummŏdo rĕpellat pĕrīcŭlum, *provided he may avert danger*. Cic. Mŏdo ne laudārent, *if only they did not praise*. Cic.

When not used in conditions, these conjunctions often admit the indicative:

Dum lēges vigēbant, *while the laws were in force*. Cic.

506. Ac si, Ut si, Quăsi, etc.—Ac si, ut si, quam si, quăsi, tanquam, tanquam si, vĕlut, vĕlut si, involve an ellipsis of the real conclusion:

Mĭsĕrior es, quam si ŏcŭlos non hăbēres, *You are more unhappy than* (esses, you would be) *if you had not eyes*. Cic. Crūdēlĭtātem, vĕlut si adesset, horrēbant, *They shuddered at his cruelty as* (they would) *if he were present*. Caes. Ut si in suam rem ăliēna convertant, *as if they should appropriate others' possessions to their own use*. Cic. Tanquam audiant, *as if they may hear*. Sen.

Ceu and *Sicŭti* are sometimes used in the same way:

Ceu bella fŏrent, *as if there were wars*. Virg. Sīcŭti audīri possent, *as if they could be heard*. Sall.

507. Si, Nĭsi, Ni, Sin, Qui.—The Latin distinguishes three distinct forms of the conditional sentence with *si*, *nĭsi*, *ni*, *sin:*

I. Indicative in both Clauses.
II. Subjunctive, Present or Perfect, in both Clauses.
III. Subjunctive, Imperfect or Pluperfect, in both Clauses.

508. **First Form.**—*Indicative in both Clauses.*—This form assumes the supposed case as *real*, basing upon it any statement which would be admissible, if it were a known fact:

Si haec cīvĭtas est, cīvis sum ĕgo, *If this is a state, I am a citizen.* Cic. Si non lĭcēbat, non nĕcesse ĕrat, *If it was not lawful, it was not necessary.* Cic. Dŏlōrem si non pŏtĕro frangĕre, occultābo, *If I shall not be able to overcome sorrow, I will conceal it.* Cic. Parvi sunt fŏris arma, nĭsi est consĭlium dŏmi, *Arms are of little value abroad, unless there is wisdom at home.* Cic.

1. Condition.—The condition is introduced, when affirmative, by *si*, with or without other particles, as *quĭdem*, *mŏdo*, etc., and when negative, by *si non*, *nisi*, *ni*. The *time* may be either *present*, *past*, or *future*. See examples above.

2. Conclusion.—The conclusion may take the form of a command:

Si peccāvi, ignosce, *If I have erred, pardon me.* Cic.

3. Si non, Nĭsi.—*Si non* and *nisi* are often used without any perceptible difference of meaning; but strictly *si non* introduces the negative *condition* on which the conclusion depends, while *nisi* introduces a *qualification* or an *exception*. Thus in the second example above the meaning is, *If it was not lawful*, it follows that *it was not necessary*, while in the fourth the meaning is, *Arms are of little value abroad, except when there is wisdom at home.*

509. **Second Form.**—*Subjunctive Present or Perfect in both Clauses.*—This form assumes the condition as *possible:*

Haec si tēcum patria lŏquātur, nonne impetrāre dēbeat, *If your country should speak thus with you, ought she not to obtain her request?* Cic. Imprŏbe fēcĕris, nĭsi mŏnuĕris, *You would do wrong, if you should not give warning.* Cic. See also examples under the Rule, 503; also 486. 7.

1. When dependent upon a Historical tense, the Present and Perfect are of course generally changed to the Imperfect and Pluperfect, by the law for Sequence of tenses (480).

Mĕtuit ne, si īret, retrăhĕrētur, *He feared lest if he should go, he might be brought back.* Liv.

510. Third Form.—*Subjunctive Imperfect or Pluperfect in both Clauses.*—This form assumes the supposed case as *contrary to the reality*, and simply states what would have been the result, if the condition had been fulfilled:

Săpientia non expĕtĕrētur, si nihil effĭcĕret, *Wisdom would not be sought* (as it is), *if it accomplished nothing.* Cic. Si optĭma tĕnēre possēmus, haud sāne consĭlio ĕgērēmus, *If we were able to secure the highest good, we should not indeed need counsel.* Cic. Si vŏluisset, dīmĭcasset, *If he had wished, he would have fought.* Nep. Nunquam ăbisset, nĭsi sĭbi viam mūnīvisset, *He would never have gone, if he had not prepared for himself a way.* Cic. See also 486. 7.

1. Here the *Imperfect* relates to Present time, as in the first and second examples: the *Pluperfect* to Past time, as in the third and fourth examples.

2. In the Periphrastic forms in *rus* and *dus* and in expressions of *Duty, Necessity*, and *Ability*, the *Perfect* and *Imperfect Indicative* sometimes occur in the conclusion.

Quid fŭtūrum fuit, si plebs ăgĭtāri coepta esset, *What would have been the result, if the plebeians had begun to be agitated?* Liv. See also 512. 2.

1) When the context, irrespective of the condition, requires the Subjunctive, the tense remains unchanged without reference to the tense of the principal verb:

Adeo est inŏpia coactus ut, nisi timuisset, Galliam rĕpĕtītūrus fuĕrit, *He was so pressed by want that if he had not feared, he would have returned to Gaul.* Liv.

Here *rĕpĕtītūrus fuĕrit* is in the Subj. not because it is in a conditional sentence, but because it is the Subj. of Result with *ut;* but it is in the Perfect, because, if it were not dependent, the Perfect Indicative would have been used.

511. Mixed Forms.—The Latin sometimes unites a condition belonging to one of the three regular forms with a conclusion belonging to another, thus producing certain Mixed Forms.

I. The Indicative sometimes occurs in the Condition with the Subjunctive in the Conclusion, but here the Subjunctive is generally dependent not upon the condition, but upon the very nature of the thought:

Pĕream, si pŏtĕrunt, *May I perish* (subj. of desire, 487), *if they shall be able.* Cic. Quid tĭmeam, si beātus fŭtūrus sum, *Why should I fear* (486. II.), *if I am to be happy?* Cic.

II. The Subjunctive sometimes occurs in the Condition with the Indicative in the Conclusion. Here the Indicative often gives the effect of reality to the conclusion, even though in fact dependent upon contingencies; but see also 512:

Dies dēfĭciet, si vĕlim causam dēfendĕre, *The day would* (will) *fail me, if I should wish to defend the cause.* Cic. Vīcĕrāmus nĭsi rĕcēpisset Antōnium, *We had conquered, had he not received Antony.* Cic.

1. The *Future Indicative* is often thus used in consequence of its near relationship in force to the Subjunctive, as whatever is Future is more or less contingent. See first example.

2. The *Historical tenses*, especially the *Pluperfect*, are sometimes used, for *effect*, to represent as an actual fact something which is shown by the context never to have become fully so, as in the last example.

3. Conditional sentences made up partly of the *second form* (509) and partly of the *third* are rare.

512. SUBJUNCTIVE AND INDICATIVE.—The combination of the Subjunctive in the Condition with the Indicative in the Conclusion is often only apparent. Thus

1. When the truth of the conclusion is not in reality affected by the condition, as when *si* has the force of *even if*, *although:*

Si hoc plăceat, tămen vŏlunt, *Even if* (although) *this pleases them, they still wish.* Cic.

2. When that which stands as the conclusion is such only in appearance, the real conclusion being understood. This occurs

1) With the Indicative of *Dēbeo*, *Possum*, and the like:

Quem, si ulla in te piĕtas esset, cŏlĕre dēbēbas, *Whom you ought to have honored* (and would have honored), *if there were any filial affection in you.* Cic. Dēlēri exercĭtus pŏtuit, si persĕcūti victōres essent, *The army might have been destroyed* (and would have been), *if the victors had pursued.* Liv.

2) With the Imperfect and Perfect Indicative of other verbs, especially if in a periphrastic conjugation or accompanied by *Paene* or *Prŏpe:*

Rĕlictūri agros ĕrant, nĭsi littĕras mīsisset, *They were about to leave their lands* (and would have done so), *had he not sent a letter.* Cic. Pons ĭter paene hostĭbus dĕdit, ni ūnus vir fuisset, *The bridge almost furnished a passage to the enemy* (and would have done so), *had there not been one man.* Liv.

513. RELATIVE INVOLVING CONDITION.—The relative takes the subjunctive when it is equivalent to *si* or *dum* with the subjunctive:

Errat longe, qui crēdat, etc., *He greatly errs who supposes*, etc., i. e., if *or* provided any one supposes, he greatly errs. Ter. Haec qui vĭdeat, cōgātur, *If any one should see these things, he would be compelled.* Cic.

V. SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONCESSIONS.

514. A concessive clause is one which concedes or admits something, generally introduced in English by *though* or *although:*

Quamquam intellĭgunt, *though they understand.* Cic.

RULE XLII.—Subjunctive of Concession.

515. The Subjunctive of Concession is used,

I. With **lĭcet, quamvis, quantumvis,—ut, ne, quum** (although):

Lĭcet irrīdeat, plus tămen rătio vălēbit, *Though he may deride, reason will yet avail more.* Cic. Ut dēsint vīres, tămen est laudanda vŏluntas, *Though the strength fails, still the will should be approved.* Ovid.

II. With **qui = quum** (lĭcet) **is, quum ĕgo,** etc., though he:

Absolvĭte Verrem, qui (*quum is*) se făteātur pĕcūnias cēpisse, *Acquit Verres, though he confesses* (who may confess) *that he has accepted money.* Cic.

III. Generally with **etsi, tămetsi, ĕtiamsi:**

Quod sentiunt, etsi optĭmum sit, tămen non audent dīcĕre, *They do not dare to state what they think, even if* (though) *it be most excellent.* Cic.

516. Concessive Clauses may be divided into three classes:

I. Concessive Clauses with *quamquam* in the best prose generally take the Indicative:

Quamquam intellĭgunt, tămen nunquam dīcunt, *Though they understand, they never speak.* Cic.

1. The *Subjunctive* may of course follow *quamquam*, whenever the thought itself, irrespective of the concessive character of the clause, requires that mood (485).

2. The *Subjunctive*, even in the best prose, sometimes occurs with *quamquam* where we should expect the Indicative: Quamquam ne id quĭdem suspīciōnem hăbuĕrit, *Though not even that gave rise to any suspicion.* Cic.

3. In poetry and some of the later prose, the subjunctive with *quamquam* is not uncommon. In Tacitus it is the prevailing construction.

4. *Quamquam* and *etsi* sometimes have the force of *yet, but yet, and yet:* Quamquam quid lŏquor, *And yet what do I say?* Cic.

II. Concessive Clauses with *lĭcet, quamvis, quantumvis,—ut, ne, quum* (although);—*qui = quum* (or *lĭcet*) *is, ego, tu,* etc., take the Subjunctive:

Non tu possis, quantumvis excellas, *You would not be able, however much* (although) *you excel.* Cic. Ne sit summum mălum dŏlor, mălum certe est, *Though pain may not be the greatest evil, it is certainly an evil.* Cic. See 518.

1. Ut and Ne.—This concessive use of *ut* and *ne* may readily be explained by supplying some verb like *fac* or *sĭne:* thus, *ut dēsint vīres* (515. I.) = *fac* or *sĭne ut dēsint vīres*, make *or* grant that strength fails. See 489.

The *Concessive Particle* is sometimes omitted:

Sed hăbeat, tămen, *But grant that it has it, yet.* Cic.

Ut—sic or ita, *as—so, though—yet,* does not require the subjunctive.

2. Quamvis and Quantumvis.—These are strictly adverbs, in the sense of *however much*, but they generally give to the clause the force of a concession. When used with their simple adverbial force to qualify adjectives, they do not affect the mood of the clause: *quamvis multi*, however many.

3. Mood with Quamvis.—In Cicero and the best prose, *quamvis* takes the Subjunctive almost without exception, generally also in Livy and Nepos; but in the poets and later prose writers it often admits the Indicative:

Erat dignĭtāte rēgia, quamvis cărēbat nōmĭne, *He was of royal dignity, though he was without the name.* Nep.

4. Relative in Concessions.—The relative denoting concession is equivalent to *lĭcet*, or *quum*, in the sense of *though*, with a Demonstrative or Personal pronoun, and takes the Subjunctive for the same reason: *qui* = *lĭcet* (quum) *is*, *lĭcet ĕgo*, *tu*, etc. See examples under the Rule, 515.

III. Concessive Clauses with the compounds of si: *etsi*, *ĕtiamsi*, *tămetsi* in the use of Moods and Tenses conform to the rule for conditional clauses with *si*:

Etsi nihil hăbeat in se glōria, tămen virtūtem sĕquĭtur, *Though glory may not possess anything in itself, yet it follows virtue.* Cic. Etiamsi mors oppĕtenda esset, *even if death ought to be met.* Cic.

VI. Subjunctive of Cause and Time.

RULE XLIII.—Subjunctive of Cause.

517. The Subjunctive of Cause or Reason is used,

I. With **quum** (cum), since; **qui** = **quum is**, etc.:

Quum vīta mĕtus plēna sit, *since life is full of fear.* Cic. Quae quum ĭta sint, perge, *Since these things are so, proceed.* Cic. O vis vērĭtātis, quae (*quum ea*) se dēfendat, *O the force of truth, since it defends itself.* Cic.

II. With **quod, quia, quŏniam, quando,** to introduce a reason on another's authority:

Socrătes accūsătus est, quod corrumpĕret jŭventūtem, *Socrates was accused, because* (on the alleged ground that) *he corrupted the youth.* Quint.

Causal Clauses with Quum and Qui.

518. Quum.—*Quum* takes the Subjunctive when it denotes,

I. Cause or Concession:

Quum sint in nōbis rătio, prūdentia, *since there is in us reason and prudence.* Cic. Phōcion fuit pauper, quum dīvĭtissĭmus esse posset, *Phocion was poor, though he might have been very rich.* Nep. See also 515.

II. Time with the accessory notion of Cause or Concession:

Quum dīmicāret, occīsus est, *When he engaged battle, he was slain.* Nep. Zēnōnem, quum Athēnis essem, audiēbam frĕquenter, *I often heard Zeno, when I was at Athens.* Cic.

1. Quum in Narration.—*Quum* with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive is very frequent in narration even in temporal clauses. See examples under II. above.

This use of *Quum* with the Subjunctive may in most instances be readily explained by the fact that it involves *Cause* as well as *Time.* Thus *quum dīmicāret,* in the first example, not only states the *time* of the action—*occīsus est,* but also its *cause* or *occasion:* the engagement was the *occasion* of his death. So with *quum essem,* as presence in Athens was an indispensable condition of hearing Zeno. But in some instances the notion of *Cause* or *Concession* is not at all apparent.

2. Quum with Tempus, etc.—*Quum* with the Subjunctive is sometimes used to characterize a period:

Id saecŭlum quum plēna Graecia poētārum esset, *that age when* (such that) *Greece was full of poets.* Cic. Erit tempus, quum dēsīdēres, *the time will come, when you will desire.* Cic. So without *tempus,* etc.: Fuit quum arbitrārer, *there was* (a time) *when I thought.* Cic.

3. Quum with Indicative.—*Quum* denoting time merely, with perhaps a few exceptions in narration, takes the Indicative:

Quum quiescunt, prŏbant, *While they are quiet, they approve.* Cic. Pāruit, quum nĕcesse ĕrat, *He obeyed when it was necessary.* Cic.

519. Qui, Cause or Reason.—A Relative clause denoting cause or reason, is equivalent to a Causal clause with Quum, and takes the Subjunctive for the same reason:

O fortūnāte ădŏlescens, qui (*quum tu*) tuae virtūtis Hŏmērum praecōnem invēnĕris, *O fortunate youth, since you* (lit. who) *have obtained Homer as the herald of your valor.* Cic.

1. Equivalents.—In such clauses, *qui* is equivalent to *quum ĕgo, quum tu, quum is,* etc.

2. Indicative.—When the statement is to be viewed as a *fact* rather than as a *reason,* the Indicative is used:

Hăbeo sĕnectūti grātiam, quae mihi sermōnis ăvĭdĭtātem auxit, *I cherish gratitude to old age, which has increased my love of conversation.* Cic.

3. Qui with Conjunctions.—When a conjunction accompanies the relative, the mood varies with the conjunction. Thus,

1) The Subjunctive is generally used with *quum, quippe, ut, utpŏte:*

Quae quum ĭta sint, *since these things are so.* Cic. Quippe qui blandiātur, *since he flatters.* Cic. Ut qui cŏlōni essent, *since they were colonists.* Cic.

But the Indicative is sometimes used to give prominence to the *fact.*

2) The Indicative is generally used with *quia, quŏniam:*

Quae quia certa esse non possunt, *since these things cannot be sure.* Cic. Qui quŏniam intellĭgi nōluit, *since he did not wish to be understood.* Cic.

Causal Clauses with Quod, Quia, Quoniam, Quando.

520. *Quod*, *quia*, *quŏniam*, and *quando* generally take,

I. The INDICATIVE to assign a reason *positively on one's own authority:*

Quŏniam supplĭcātio decrēta est, *since a thanksgiving has been decreed.* Cic. Gaude quod spectant te, *Rejoice that* (because) *they behold you.* Hor.

II. The SUBJUNCTIVE to assign a reason *doubtfully*, or *on another's authority:*

Aristīdes nonne expulsus est patria, quod justus esset, *Was not Aristides banished because* (on the alleged ground that) *he was just?* Cic.

1. QUOD WITH DICO, ETC.—*Dīco* and *pŭto* are often in the Subjunctive instead of the verb depending upon them:

Quod se bellum gestūros dīcĕrent = quod bellum gestūri essent, ut dīcēbant, *because they were about, as they said, to wage war.* Caes.

2. CLAUSES WITH QUOD UNCONNECTED. See 554. IV.

3. NON QUO, ETC.—*Non quo, non quod, non quin*, rarely *non quia*, also *quam quod*, etc., are used with the Subjunctive to denote that something was *not* the true reason:

Non quo hăbērem quod scrībĕrem, *not because* (that) *I had anything to write.* Cic. Non quod dŏleant, *not because they are pained.* Cic. Quia nĕquīvĕrat quam quod ignōrāret, *because he had been unable, rather than because he did not know.* Liv.

4. POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE. See 485 and 486.

RULE XLIV.—Time with Cause.

521. The Subjunctive of Time with the accessory notion of Cause or Purpose is used,

I. With **dum, dōnec, quoad,** until:

Exspectas dum dīcat, *You are waiting till he speaks*, i. e., that he may speak. Cic. Ea contĭnēbis quoad te vĭdeam, *You will keep them till I see you.* Cic.

II. With **antĕquam, priusquam,** before, before that:

Antĕquam de re pūblĭca dīcam, expōnam consĭlium, *I will set forth my plan before I* (can) *speak of the republic*, i. e., preparatory to speaking of the republic. Cic. Priusquam incĭpias, *before you begin.* Sall.

1. EXPLANATION.—Here the temporal clause involves *purpose* as well as *time: dum dīcat* is nearly equivalent to *ut dīcat*, which is also often used after *exspecto*. *Antĕquam dīcam* is nearly equivalent to *ut postea dīcam:* I will set forth my views, that I may afterwards speak of the republic.

2. WITH OTHER CONJUNCTIONS.—The Subjunctive may of course be used in any temporal clause, when the thought, irrespective of the temporal particle, requires that mood; see 486. III.

Ubi res poscĕret, *whenever the case might require.* Liv.

522. DUM, DONEC, and QUOAD take

I. The *Indicative*,—(1) in the sense of *while, as long as*, and (2) in the sense of *until*, if the action is viewed as an *actual fact:*

Dum lēges vĭgēbant, *as long as the laws were in force.* Cic. Quoad rĕnuntiātum est, *until it was* (actually) *announced.* Nep.

II. The *Subjunctive*, when the action is viewed not so much as a fact as something *desired* or *proposed:*

Diffĕrant, dum dēfervescat īra, *Let them defer it, till their anger cools*, i. e., that it may cool. Cic. See also examples under the rule.

1. DONEC, IN TACITUS, generally takes the Subjunctive:

Rhēnus servat viŏlentiam cursus, dōnec Oceăno misceātur, *The Rhine preserves the rapidity of its current, till it mingles with the ocean.* Tac.

2. DONEC, IN LIVY, occurs with the Subjunctive even in the sense of *while*, but with the accessory notion of *cause:*

Nihil trĕpĭdābant dōnec ponte ăgĕrentur, *They did not fear at all while* (and because) *they were driven on the bridge.* Liv.

523. ANTEQUAM and PRIUSQUAM generally take,

I. The *Indicative*, when they denote mere priority of time:

Priusquam lūcet, adsunt, *They are present before it is light.* Cic. Antĕquam in Sĭcĭliam vēni, *before I came into Sicily.* Cic.

II. The *Subjunctive*, when they denote a dependence of one event upon another. Thus,

1. In *any Tense*, when the accessory notion of *purpose* or *cause* is involved:

Priusquam incĭpias, consulto ŏpus est, *Before you begin there is need of deliberation*, i. e., as preparatory to your beginning. Sall. Tempestas mĭnātur, antĕquam surgat, *The tempest threatens, before it rises*, i. e., the threatening of the tempest naturally precedes its rising. Sen.

2. In the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect*, as the regular construction *in narration*, because the one event is generally treated as the occasion or natural antecedent of the other. See also 471. 4.

Antĕquam urbem căpĕrent, *before they took the city.* Liv. Priusquam de meo adventu audīre pŏtuissent, in Măcĕdŏniam perrexi, *Before they were able to hear of my approach, I went into Macedonia.* Cic.

3. *Prīdie quam* takes the same moods as *Priusquam.*

1) Indicative or Subjunctive.—With *antĕquam* and *priusquam*, the Indicative and Subjunctive are sometimes used without any apparent difference of meaning, but the Subjunctive probably denotes a closer connection between the two events:

Ante de incommŏdis dīco, pauca dīcenda, *Before I* (actually) *speak of disadvantages, a few things should be mentioned.* Cic. Antĕquam de re pūblica dīcam, expōnam consilium, *Before I speak of the republic, I will set forth my plan.* Cic.

2) Ante—quam, Prius—quam.—The two parts of which *antĕquam, priusquam,* and *postquam* are compounded are often separated, so that *ante, prius,* or *post* stands in the principal clause and *quam* in the subordinate clause:

Paucis ante diēbus, quam Syrăcūsae căpĕrentur, *a few days before Syracuse was taken.* Liv. See *Tmesis,* 704. IV. 3.

VII. Subjunctive in Indirect Questions.

524. A clause which involves a question without directly asking it, is called an indirect or dependent question.

RULE XLV.—Indirect Questions.

525. The Subjunctive is used in Indirect Questions:

Quid dies fĕrat incertum est, *What a day may bring forth is uncertain.* Cic. Quaerĭtur, cur doctissĭmi hŏmĭnes dissentiant, *It is a question, why the most learned men disagree.* Cic. Quaesiĕras, nonne pŭtārem, *you had asked whether I did not think.* Cic. Quālis sit ănĭmus, ănĭmus nescit, *The soul knows not what the soul is.* Cic.

1. With Interrogatives.—*Indirect* or *Dependent* questions, like those not dependent, are introduced by interrogative words: *quid, cur, nonne, quālis,* etc.; rarely by *si, sīve, seu,* whether; *ut,* how. See examples above.

2. Substantive Force.—*Indirect* questions are used *substantively,* and generally, though not always, supply the place of subjects or objects of verbs. But an Accusative, referring to the same person or thing as the subject of the question, is sometimes inserted after the leading verb.

Ego illum nescio qui fuĕrit, *I do not know* (him), *who he was.* Ter.

3. Direct and Indirect.—An *indirect* question may be readily changed to a *direct* or *independent* question.

Thus the direct question involved in the first example is: *Quid dies fĕret,* What will a day bring forth? So in the second: *Cur doctissĭmi hŏmĭnes dissentiunt,* Why do the most learned men disagree?

4. Subjunctive Omitted.—After *nescio quis,* I know not who = *quĭdam,* some one; *nescio quŏmŏdo,* I know not how, etc., as also after *mīrum quantum,* it is wonderful how much = wonderfully much, very much, there is an ellipsis of the Subjunctive:

Nescio quid ănĭmus praesāgit, *The mind forebodes, I know not what* (it forebodes, *praesāgiat,* understood). Ter. Id mīrum quantum prōfuit, *This profited, it is wonderful how much,* i. e., it wonderfully profited. Liv.

5. Indirect Questions Distinguished.—Indirect Questions must be carefully distinguished from certain similar forms. Thus,

1) *From Relative Clauses.*—Clauses introduced by Relative Pronouns or Relative Adverbs always have an antecedent or correlative expressed or understood, and are never, as a whole, the subject or object of a verb, while Indirect Questions are generally so used:

Dīcam quod sentio (*rel. clause*). *I will tell that which* (id quod) *I think.* Cic. Dīcam quid intellĭgam (*indirect question*), *I will tell what I know.* Cic. Quaerāmus ŭbi mălĕfĭcium est, *Let us seek there* (ĭbi) *where the crime is.* Cic.

In the first and third examples, *quod sentio* and *ŭbi—est* are not questions, but relative clauses; *id* is understood as the antecedent of *quod*, and *ĭbi* as the antecedent or correlative of *ŭbi*; but in the second example, *quid intellĭgam* is an indirect question and the object of *dīcam*: *I will tell* (what?) *what I know*, i. e., will answer that question.

2) From Direct Questions and Exclamations:

Quid ăgendum est? Nescio, *What is to be done? I know not.* Cic. Vĭde! quam conversa res est, *See! how changed is the case.* Cic.

6. Indicative in Indirect Questions.—The Indicative in Indirect Questions is sometimes used in the poets; especially in *Plautus* and *Terence:*

Si mĕmŏrāre vĕlim, quam fĭdēli ănĭmo fui, possum, *If I wish to mention how much fidelity I showed, I am able.* Ter.

7. Questions in the Oratio Obliqua. See 530. II. 2.

526. Single and Double Questions.—Indirect questions, like those which are direct (346. II.), may be either single or double.

I. An Indirect Single Question is generally introduced by some interrogative word—either a pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the particles *ne*, *nonne*, *num*. Here *num* does not imply negation:

Rŏgĭtat qui vir esset (481. IV.), *He asked who he was.* Liv. Epămīnondas quaesīvit, salvusne esset clĭpeus, *Epaminondas inquired whether his shield was safe.* Cic. Dŭbĭto num dēbeam, *I doubt whether I ought.* Plin. See also the examples under the Rule, 525.

II. An Indirect Double Question (*whether—or*) admits of two constructions:

1. It generally takes *utrum* or *ne* in the first member, and *an* in the second:

Quaerĭtur, virtus suamne propter dignĭtātem, an propter fructus ălĭquos expĕtātur, *It is asked whether virtue is sought for its own worth, or for certain advantages.* Cic.

2. But sometimes it omits the particle in the first member, and takes *an* or *ne* in the second. Other forms are rare:

Quaerĭtur, nātūra an doctrīna possit effĭci virtus, *It is asked whether virtue can be secured by nature or by education.* Cic. See also 346. 1. 1).

1) In the second member, *necne*, sometimes *an non*, is used in the sense of *or not*:

Săpientia beātos efficiat necne, quaestio est, *Whether or not wisdom makes men happy, is a question.* Cic.

2) *An*, in the sense of *whether not*, implying an affirmative, is used after verbs and expressions of doubt and uncertainty: *dŭbito an*, *nescio an*, *haud scio an*, I doubt whether not, I know not whether not = I am inclined to think; *dŭbium est an*, *incertum est an*, it is uncertain whether not = it is probable:

Dŭbito an Thrăsȳbūlum prīmum omnium pōnam, *I doubt whether I should not place Thrasybulus first of all*, i. e., I am inclined to think I should. Nep.

3) *An* sometimes has the force of *aut*, perhaps by the omission of *incertum est*, as used above:

Sĭmōnides an quis ălius, *Simonides or some other one.* Cic.

VIII. Subjunctive by Attraction.

RULE XLVI.—Attraction.

527. The Subjunctive by Attraction is often used in clauses dependent upon the Subjunctive:

Vĕreor, ne, dum mĭnuĕre vĕlim lăbōrem, augeam, *I fear I shall increase the labor, while I wish to diminish it.* Cic. Tempus est hujusmŏdi, ut, ŭbi quisque sit, ĭbi esse mĭnĭme vĕlit, *The time is of such a character that every one wishes to be least of all where he is.* Cic. Mos est, ut dīcat sententiam, qui vĕlit, *The custom is that he who wishes expresses his opinion.* Cic.

1. Application.—This rule is applicable to clauses introduced by conjunctions, adverbs, or relatives. Thus, in the examples, the clauses introduced by *dum*, *ubi*, and *qui*, take the subjunctive, because they are dependent upon clauses which have the subjunctive.

2. Indicative or Subjunctive.—Such clauses generally take,

1) The *Indicative*, when they are in a measure *parenthetical* or give special prominence to the *fact* stated:

Mīlĭtes mīsit, ut eos qui fūgĕrant persĕquĕrentur, *He sent soldiers to pursue those who had fled*, i. e., the fugitives. Caes. Tanta vis prŏbĭtātis est, ut eam, vel in iis quos nunquam vīdĭmus, dīlĭgāmus, *Such is the force of integrity that we love it even in those whom we have never seen.* Cic.

The Indicative with *dum* is very common, especially in the poets and historians:

Fuĕre qui, dum dŭbĭtat Scaevīnus, hortārentur Pīsōnem, *There were those who exhorted Piso, while Scaevinus hesitated.* Tac. See also 467. 4.

2) The *Subjunctive*, when the clauses are essential to the general thought of the sentence, as in the examples under the rule.

3. After Infinitive Clauses.—The principle just stated (2) applies also to the use of Moods in clauses dependent upon the Infinitive. This

often explains the Subjunctive in a condition belonging to an Infinitive, especially with *non possum:*

Nec bŏnĭtas esse pŏtest, si non per se expĕtātur, *Nor can goodness exist* (= it is not possible that), *if it is not sought for itself.* Cic.

But clauses dependent upon the Infinitive are found most frequently in the *Oratio Oblīqua* and are accordingly provided for by 529.

IX. Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse,— *Oratio Oblīqua.*

528. When a writer or speaker expresses thoughts, whether his own or those of another, in any other form than in the original words of the author, he is said to use the Indirect Discourse—*Oratio Oblīqua:*

Plătōnem fĕrunt in Ităliam vēnisse, *They say that Plato came into Italy.* Cic. Respondeo te dŏlōrem ferre mŏdĕrāte, *I reply that you bear the affliction with moderation.* Cic. Utĭlem arbitror esse scientiam, *I think that knowledge is useful.* Cic.

1. Direct and Indirect.—In distinction from the Indirect Discourse—*Oratio Oblīqua*, the original words of the author are said to be in the Direct Discourse—*Oratio Recta.* Thus in the first example, *Plătōnem in Ităliam vēnisse* is in the indirect discourse; in the direct, i. e., in the original words of those who made the statement, it would be: *Plăto in Ităliam vēnit.*

2. Quotation.—Words quoted without change belong of course to the Direct Discourse:

Rex "duumvĭros" inquit "sĕcundum lēgem făcio," *The king said, "I appoint duumvirs according to law."* Liv.

RULE XLVII.—Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse.

529. The Subjunctive is generally used in the Interrogative, Imperative, and Subordinate clauses of the Oratio Oblīqua:

Ad postŭlāta Caesăris respondit, cur vĕnīret (*direct:* cur vĕnis ?), *To the demands of Caesar he replied, why did he come.* Caes. Scrībit Lăbiēno cum lĕgiōne vĕniat (*direct:* cum lĕgiōne vĕni), *He writes to Labienus to come* (that he should come) *with a legion.* Caes. Hippias glōriātus est, annŭlum quem hăbēret (*direct:* hăbeo) se sua mănu confēcisse, *Hippias boasted that he had made with his own hand the ring which he wore.* Cic.

Note.—For convenience of reference the following outline of the use of Moods, Tenses, Pronouns, etc. in the Oratio Oblīqua is here inserted.

530. Moods in Principal Clauses.—The Principal clauses of the Direct discourse, on becoming Indirect, undergo the following changes of Mood:

I. When *Declarative*, they take the Infinitive (551):

Dīcēbat ănĭmos esse dīvīnos (direct: *ănĭmi sunt dīvīni*), *He was wont to say that souls were divine.* Cic. Plătōnem Tărentum vēnisse rĕpĕrio (*Plăto Tărentum vēnit*), *I find that Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic. Căto mīrāri se (*mīror*) āiēbat, *Cato was wont to say that he wondered.* Cic.

II. When *Interrogative* or *Imperative*, they generally take the Subjunctive according to Rule XLVII.

1. Verb Omitted.—The verb on which the Infinitive depends is often omitted, or only implied in some preceding verb or expression; especially after the Subjunctive of Purpose:

Pȳthia praecēpit ut Miltiădem impĕrātōrem sūmĕrent; incepta prospĕra fŭtūra, *Pythia commanded that they should take Miltiades as their commander*, (telling them) *that their efforts would be successful.* Nep.

2. Rhetorical Questions.—Questions which are such only in form, requiring no answer, are generally construed, according to sense, in the Infinitive. They are sometimes called Rhetorical questions, as they are often used for Rhetorical effect instead of assertions: thus *num possit*, can he? for *non pŏtest*, he can not; *quid sit turpius*, what is more base? for *nihil est turpius*, nothing is more base.

Here belong many questions which in the direct form have the verb in the first or third person:

Respondit num mĕmŏriam dēpōnĕre posse, *He replied, could he lay aside the recollection.* Caes. Here the direct question would be: Num mĕmŏriam dēpōnĕre possim?

3. Imperative Clauses with the Infinitive. See 551. II. 1.

531. Moods in Subordinate Clauses.—The Subordinate clauses of the Direct discourse, on becoming Indirect, put their finite verbs in the Subjunctive:

Orābant, ut sĭbi auxĭlium ferret quod prĕmĕrentur (*direct:* nōbis auxĭlium fer, quod prĕmĭmur), *They prayed that he would bring them help, because they were oppressed.* Caes.

1. Infinitive in Relative Clauses.—It must be remembered (453), that Relative clauses, though subordinate in form, sometimes have the force of Principal clauses. When thus used in the Oratio Oblĭqua, they may be construed with the Infinitive:

Ad eum dēfertur, esse cīvem Rōmānum qui quĕrĕrētur: quem (= *et eum*) asservātum esse, *It was reported to him that there was a Roman citizen who made a complaint, and that he had been placed under guard.* Cic. So also comparisons: Te suspĭcor iisdem, quĭbus me ipsum, commŏvēri, *I suspect that you are moved by the same things as I am.* Cic.

2. Infinitive after certain Conjunctions.—The Infinitive occurs, especially in Livy and Tacitus, even in clauses after *quia*, *quum*, *quamquam*, and some other conjunctions:

Dīcit, se moenĭbus inclūsos tĕnēre eos; quia per agros văgāri, *He says that he keeps them shut up within the walls, because* (otherwise) *they would wander through the fields.* Liv. See also 551. I. 5 and 6.

3. Indicative in Parenthetical Clauses.—Clauses may be introduced parenthetically in the oratio obliqua without strictly forming a part of it, and may accordingly take the Indicative:

Rĕfĕrunt silvam esse, quae appellātur Băcēnis, *They report that there is a forest which is called Bacenis.* Caes.

4. Indicative in Clauses not Parenthetical.—Sometimes clauses not parenthetical take the Indicative to give prominence to the *fact* stated. This occurs most frequently in Relative clauses:

Certior factus est ex ea parte vīci, quam Gallis concessĕrat, omnes discessisse, *He was informed that all had withdrawn from that part of the village which he had assigned to the Gauls.* Caes.

532. Tenses.—Tenses in the Oratio Obliqua generally conform to the ordinary rules for Infinitive and Subjunctive Tenses (480, 540), but the law of Sequence of Tenses admits of certain qualifications:

1. The Present and Perfect may be used even after a Historical tense, to impart a more lively effect to the narrative:

Caesar respondit, si obsīdes sĭbi dentur, sēse pācem esse factūrum, *Caesar replied, that if hostages should be given him, he would make peace.* Caes.

2. In Conditional sentences of the third form (510),

1) The condition retains the Imperfect or Pluperfect without reference to the tense of the Principal verb;

2) The Conclusion changes the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive into the Periphrastic Infinitive in *rus* (or *dus*) *esse* or *fuisse:*

Censes Pompēium laetātūrum fuisse, si scīret, *Do you think Pompey would have rejoiced, if he had known?* Cic. Clāmĭtābat, si ille ădesset, ventūros esse, *He cried out that they would come, if he were present.* Caes.

But the Regular Infinitive, instead of the periphrastic forms, sometimes occurs in this construction, especially in expressions of *Duty*, etc. (475. 4).

3. In Conditional Sentences of the second form (509), the Condition generally conforms to the Rule for Sequence of Tenses (480), but the Conclusion changes the Subjunctive to the Future Infinitive:

Respondit, si Aeduis sătisfăciant, sēsē cum iis pācem esse factūrum, *He replied that if they would satisfy the Aeduans, he would make peace with them.* Caes. Lēgātos mittit, si ĭta fēcisset, ămīcĭtiam fŭtūram, *He sent messengers saying that, if he would do thus, there would be friendship.* Caes.

Here *mittit* is the Historical Present. See 467. III.

4. The Future Perfect in a Subordinate clause of the Direct discourse is changed in the Indirect into the Perfect Subjunctive after a Principal tense, and into the Pluperfect Subjunctive after a Historical tense:

Agunt ut dīmīcent; ībi impĕrium fŏre, unde victōria fuĕrit, *They arrange that they shall fight; that the sovereignty shall be on the side which shall win the victory* (whence the victory may have been). Liv. Appārēbat regnātūrum, qui vīcisset, *It was evident that he would be king who should conquer*. Liv.

533. Pronouns, Adverbs, etc.—Pronouns and adverbs, as also the persons of the verbs, are often changed in passing from the *Direct* discourse to the *Indirect*:

Glōriātus est annŭlum se sua mănu confēcisse (*direct:* annŭlum egō mea mănu confēci), *He boasted that he had made the ring with his own hand*. Cic.

1. Pronouns of first and second persons are often changed to the third. Thus above *ĕgo* in the direct discourse becomes *se*, and *mea* becomes *sua*. In the same way *hic* and *iste* are often changed to *ille*.

2. Adverbs meaning *here* or *now* are often changed to those meaning *there* or *then*; *nunc* to *tum*; *hic* to *illic*.

3. In the use of pronouns observe

1) That references to the Speaker whose words are reported are made, if of the 1st Pers. by *ĕgo, meus, noster*, etc., if of the 2d Pers. by *tu, tuus*, etc., and if of the 3d Pers. by *sui, suus, ipse*, etc., though sometimes by *hic, is, ille*.

2) That references to the Reporter, or Author, are made by *ĕgo, meus*, etc.

3) That references to the Person Addressed by the reporter are made by *tu, tuus*, etc.

Ariovistus respondit nos esse īnīquos qui se interpellārēmus (*direct:* vos estis īnīqui qui me, etc.), *Ariovistus replied that we were unjust who interrupted him*. Caes.

Here *nos* refers to the *Reporter*, Caesar, *we Romans*. *Se* refers to the *Speaker*, Ariovistus. In the second example under 528, *te* refers to the *Person Addressed*.

SECTION VII.

IMPERATIVE.

I. Tenses of the Imperative.

534. The Imperative has but two Tenses:

I. The Present has only the Second person, and corresponds to the English Imperative:

Justĭtiam cŏle, *Practise justice*. Cic. Perge, Cătĭlīna, *Go, Catiline*. Cic.

II. The Future has the Second and Third persons, and corresponds to the imperative use of the English Future with *shall*, or to the Imperative *let:*

Ii consŭles appellantor, *They shall be called consuls*, or *let them be called consuls*. Cic. Quod dixĕro, făcĭtōte, *You shall do what I say* (shall have said). Ter.

1. Future for Present.—The Future Imperative is sometimes used where we should expect the Present:

Quŏniam supplĭcātio decrēta est, cĕlebrātōte illos dies, *Since a thanksgiving has been decreed, celebrate those days.* Cic.

This is particularly common in certain verbs: thus *scio* has only the forms of the Future in common use.

2. Present for Future.—The Imperative Present is often used in poetry, and sometimes in prose, of an action which belongs entirely to the future:

Ubi ăciem vĭdĕris, tum ordĭnes dissĭpa, *When you shall see the line of battle, then scatter the ranks.* Liv.

II. Use of the Imperative.

RULE XLVIII.—Imperative.

535. The Imperative is used in commands, exhortations, and entreaties:

Justĭtiam cŏle, *Practise justice.* Cic. Tu ne cēde mălis, *Do not yield to misfortunes.* Virg. Si quid in te peccāvi, ignosce, *If I have sinned against you, pardon me.* Cic.

1. Circumlocutions.—Instead of the simple Imperative, several circumlocutions are common:

1) *Cūra ut, fac ut, fac*, each with the Subjunctive:

Cūra ut vĕnias, *See that you come.* Cic. See 489.

2) *Fac ne, căve ne, căve*, with the Subjunctive:

Căve făcias, *Beware of doing it*, or *see that you do not do it.* Cic.

3) *Nōli, nōlīte*, with the Infinitive:

Nōli ĭmĭtāri, *do not imitate.* Cic. See 538. 2.

2. Imperative Clause for Condition.—An Imperative clause may be used instead of a Conditional clause:

Lăcesse; jam vĭdēbis fŭrentem, *Provoke him* (i. e., if you provoke him), *you will at once see him frantic.* Cic.

3. Imperative Supplied.—The place of the Imperative may be variously supplied:

1) By the Subjunctive of Desire (487):

Sint beāti, *Let them be happy.* Cic. Impii ne audeant, *Let not the impious dare.* Cic

2) By the Indicative Future:

Quod optĭmum vĭdēbĭtur, făcies, *You will do* (for Imper. do) *what shall seem best.* Cic.

536. The Imperative Present, like the English Imperative, is used in commands, exhortations, and entreaties. See examples under the Rule.

537. The Imperative Future is used,

I. In commands involving future rather than present action:

Rem pendĭtōte, *You shall consider the subject.* Cic. Cras pĕtĭto; dăbĭtur, *Ask to-morrow; it shall be granted.* Plaut.

II. In laws, orders, precepts, etc.:

Consŭles nēmĭni părento, *The consuls shall be subject to no one.* Cic. Sălus pŏpŭli suprēma lex esto, *The safety of the people shall be the supreme law.* Cic.

538. Imperative in Prohibitions.—In prohibitions or negative commands,

1. The negative *ne*, rarely *non*, accompanies the Imperative, and if a connective is required, *nēve*, or *neu*, is generally used, rarely *nĕque:*

Tu ne cēde mălis, *Do not yield to misfortunes.* Virg. Hŏmĭnem mortuum in urbe ne sĕpĕlīto, nēve ūrĭto, *Thou shalt not bury or burn a dead body in the city.* Cic.

2. Instead of *ne* with the Present Imperative, the best prose writers generally use *nōli* and *nōlĭte* with the Infinitive:

Nōlīte pŭtāre (*for* ne pŭtāte), *do not think* (be unwilling to think). Cic.

SECTION VIII.

INFINITIVE.

539. The treatment of the Latin Infinitive embraces four topics:

I. The Tenses of the Infinitive.
II. The Subject of the Infinitive.
III. The Predicate after the Infinitive.
IV. The Construction of the Infinitive.

I. Tenses of the Infinitive.

540. The Infinitive has three tenses, *Present*, *Perfect*, and *Future*. They express however not absolute, but *relative* time, denoting respectively Present, Past, or Future time, relatively to the Principal verb.

1. Peculiarities.—These tenses present the leading peculiarities specified under these tenses in the Indicative. See 467. 2.

541. The Present Infinitive represents the action as taking place at the time denoted by the principal verb:

Cŭpio me esse clēmentem, *I desire to be mild.* Cic. Māluit se dīlĭgi quam mĕtui, *He preferred to be loved rather than feared.* Nep.

1. Real Time.—Hence the real time denoted by the Present Infinitive is the time of the verb on which it depends.

2. Present for Future.—The Present is sometimes used for the Future and sometimes has little or no reference to time:

Cras argentum dăre dixit, *He said he would give the silver to-morrow.* Ter.

3. Present with Debeo, Possum, etc.—After the past tenses of *dēbeo*, *ŏportet*, *possum*, and the like, the Present Infinitive is used where our idiom would lead us to expect the Perfect; sometimes also after *mĕmĭni*, and the like:

Dĕbuit officiōsior esse, *He ought to have been more attentive.* Cic. Id pŏtuit făcĕre, *He might have done this.* Cic.

542. The Perfect Infinitive represents the action as completed at the time denoted by the principal verb:

Plătōnem fĕrunt in Ităliam vēnisse, *They say that Plato came into Italy.* Cic. Conscius mihi ĕram, nihil a me commissum esse, *I was conscious to myself that no offence had been committed by me.* Cic.

1. Real Time.—Hence the real time denoted by the Perfect Infinitive is that of the Perfect tense, if dependent upon the Present, and that of the Pluperfect, if dependent upon a Historical tense, as in the examples.

2. Perfect for Present.—In the poets the Perfect Infinitive is sometimes used for the Present, rarely in prose:

Tĕtĭgisse tĭment poētam, *They fear to touch* (to have touched) *the poet.* Hor.

3. Passive Infinitive.—The Passive Infinitive with *esse* sometimes denotes the *result* of the action: *victus esse*, to have been vanquished, and so, to be a vanquished man. *Fuisse* for *esse* emphasizes the *completeness* of the action: *victus fuisse*, to have been vanquished. See 575. 1.

543. The Future Infinitive represents the action as about to take place in time subsequent to that of the principal verb:

Brūtum vīsum īri a me pŭto, *I think Brutus will be seen by me.* Cic. Orăcŭlum dătum ĕrat victrīces Athēnas fŏre, *An oracle had been given, that Athens would be victorious.* Cic.

Hence after a Principal tense the real time of the Future Infinitive is Future, but after a Historical tense the real time can be determined only by the context.

544. Circumlocution for Future Infinitive.—Instead of the regular Future Infinitive, the circumlocution *fŭtūrum esse ut*, or *fŏre ut*, with the Subjunctive,—Present after a Principal tense, and Imperfect after a Historical tense,—is frequently used:

Spēro fŏre ut contingat id nōbis, *I hope this will fall to our lot* (I hope it will come to pass that this may happen to us). Cic. Non spērāvĕrat Hannĭbal, fŏre ut ad se dēfĭcĕrent, *Hannibal had not hoped that they would revolt to him.* Liv. See 556. II. 1.

1. Circumlocution necessary.—*Fŭtūrum esse ut*, or *fŏre ut*, with the Subjunctive, for the Future Infinitive, is common in the Passive, and is moreover necessary in both voices in all verbs which want the Supine and the Participle in *rus*.

2. Fore ut with Perfect Subjunctive.—Sometimes *fŏre ut* with the Subjunctive, Perfect or Pluperfect, is used with the force of a Future Perfect; and in Passive and Deponent verbs, *fŏre* with the Perfect Participle may be used with the same force:

Dīco me sătis ădeptum fŏre, *I say that I shall have obtained enough.* Cic.

3. Futurum fuisse ut with Subjunctive.—*Fŭtūrum fuisse ut* with the Subjunctive may be used in the conclusion of a conditional sentence of the third form when made dependent:

Nisi nuntii essent allāti, existĭmābant fŭtūrum fuisse, ut oppidum āmittĕrētur, *They thought that the town would have been lost, if tidings had not been brought.* Caes. See 533. 2.

II. Subject of Infinitive.

RULE XLIX.—Subject.

545. The Subject of an Infinitive is put in the Accusative:

Sentīmus călēre ignem, *We perceive that fire is hot.* Cic. Plătōnem Tărentum vēnisse rĕpĕrio, *I find that Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic.

1. Historical Infinitive.—In lively description the Infinitive is sometimes used for the Indicative Imperfect. It is then called the Historical Infinitive, and, like a finite verb, has its subject in the Nominative:

Hostes gaesa conjĭcĕre, *The enemy hurled their javelins.* Caes.

The Historical Infinitive may often be explained by supplying *coepit* or *coepērunt*; but in most instances it is better to treat it simply as an *idiom* of the language.

2. Subject Omitted.—The Subject of an Infinitive may be omitted:

1) When it denotes the same person or thing as the subject of the principal clause, or may be readily supplied from the context:

Magna nĕgōtia vŏlunt ăgĕre, *They wish to accomplish great undertakings.* Cic. Peccāre lĭcet nēmĭni, *It is not lawful for any one to sin.* Cic.

2) When it is indefinite or general:

Dīlīgi jūcundum est, *It is pleasant to be loved.* Cic.

3. INFINITIVE OMITTED.—*Esse* and *fuisse* are often omitted in the compound forms of the Infinitive and with predicate adjectives, other infinitives less frequently (551. 5):

Audīvi sŏlĭtum Fabricium, *I have heard that Fabricius was wont.* Cic. Spērāmus nōbis prōfŭtūros, *We hope to benefit you.* Cic.

III. PREDICATE AFTER INFINITIVE.

546. A Predicate Noun or Adjective after an Infinitive regularly agrees with the Subject, expressed or understood (362.3):

Ego me Phīdiam esse mallem, *I should prefer to be Phidias.* Cic. Trādĭtum est, Hŏmērum caecum fuisse, *It has been handed down by tradition that Homer was blind.* Cic. Jŭgurtha omnĭbus cārus esse (*historical infinitive*), *Jugurtha was dear to all.* Sall.

547. A Predicate Noun or Adjective, after an Infinitive whose Subject is omitted, is often attracted into the Nominative or Dative:

I. It is attracted into the Nominative to agree with the Subject of the principal verb, when the latter is the same person or thing as the omitted Subject:

Nōlo esse laudātor, *I am unwilling to be an eulogist.* Cic. Beātus esse sine virtūte nēmo pŏtest, *No one can be happy without virtue.* Cic.

1. This occurs most frequently (1) after verbs of *duty, ability, courage, custom, desire, beginning, continuing, ending,* and the like—dēbeo, possum, audeo, sŏleo, cŭpio, vŏlo, mālo, nōlo, incĭpio, pergo, dēsĭno, etc., and (2) after various Passive verbs of *saying, thinking, finding, seeming,* and the like—dīcor, trādor, fĕror—crēdor, existĭmor, pŭtor—rĕpĕrior—vīdeor, etc.:

Quis scientior esse dēbuit, *Who ought to have been more learned?* Cic. Părens dīci pŏtest, *He can be called a parent.* Cic. Stoĭcus esse vŏluit, *He wished to be a Stoic.* Cic. Dēsĭnant esse tĭmĭdi, *Let them cease to be timid.* Cic. Inventor esse dīcĭtur, *He is said to be the inventor.* Cic. Prūdens esse pŭtābātur, *He was thought to be prudent.* Cic.

2. Participles in the compound tenses of the Infinitive are also attracted:

Pollĭcĭtus esse dīcĭtur, *He is said to have promised.* Cic.

II. The Predicate Noun or Adjective is sometimes attracted into the Dative to agree with a Dative in the principal clause, when the latter denotes the same person or thing as the omitted Subject:

Patrĭcio trĭbūno plēbis fiĕri non lĭcēbat, *It was not lawful for a patrician to be made tribune of the people.* Cic. Mihi neglĭgenti esse non lĭcuit, *It was not permitted me to be negligent.* Cic.

1. This is rare, but is the regular construction after *licet*, and sometimes occurs after *nĕcesse est*, when used after *licet*, and occasionally in other connections:

Illis tīmidis licet esse, nōbis nĕcesse est fortĭbus viris esse, *It is permitted them to be timid, it is necessary for us to be brave men.* Liv. But,

2. Even with *Licet* the attraction does not always take place:

Ei consŭlem fiĕri licet, *It is lawful for him to be made consul.* Caes.

IV. Construction of the Infinitive.

548. The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, has in general the construction of a Noun in the Nominative or Accusative, and is used,

I. As a Nominative—Subject of a Verb.
II. As an Accusative—Object of a Verb.
III. In Special Constructions.

I. Infinitive as Subject.

549. The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, is often used as a Nominative, and is thus made the Subject of a sentence, according to Rule III.:

With Subject.—Făcĭnus est vincīri cīvem Rōmānum, *That a Roman citizen should be bound is a crime.* Cic. Certum est lībĕros ămāri, *It is certain that children are loved.* Quint. Lēgem brĕvem esse ŏportet, *It is necessary that a law be brief.* Sen.

Without Subject.—Ars est diffĭcĭlis rem publĭcam rĕgĕre, *To rule a state is a difficult art.* Cic. Cārum esse jūcundum est, *It is pleasant to be held dear.* Cic. Haec scīre jŭvat, *To know these things affords pleasure.* Sen. Peccāre lĭcet nēmĭni, *To sin is not lawful for any one.* Cic.

1. Infinitive as Subject.—When the subject is an Infinitive, the Predicate is either (1) a Noun or Adjective with *Sum*, or (2) an Impersonal verb or a verb used Impersonally. See the examples above.

1) *Tempus* = tempestīvum is thus used with the Infinitive:

Tempus est dīcĕre, *It is time to speak.* Cic.

2. Infinitive as Subject of an Infinitive.—The Infinitive may be the subject of another Infinitive:

Intellĭgi nĕcesse est esse deos, *It must be understood that there are gods.* Cic. *Esse deos* is the subject of *intellĭgi*, and *intellĭgi esse deos* of *nĕcesse est.*

3. Infinitive with Demonstrative.—The Infinitive sometimes takes a Demonstrative as an attributive in agreement with it:

Quĭbusdam hoc displĭcet phĭlŏsŏphāri, *This philosophizing* (this to philosophize) *displeases some persons.* Cic. Vīvĕre ipsum turpe est nōbis, *To live is itself ignoble for us.* Cic.

4. Personal construction for Impersonal.—With Passive verbs, instead of the Infinitive with a subject accusative, a Personal construction is

common, by which the Subject Accusative becomes the Subject Nominative of the leading verb:

Aristīdes justissĭmus fuisse trādĭtur (for *Aristīdem justissĭmum fuisse traditur*), *Aristides is said to have been most just.* Cic.

1) The Personal Construction is used, (1) regularly with *videor*, *jŭbeor*, *vĕtor*, and the Simple Tenses of many verbs of saying, thinking, and the like—*dīcor*, *trādor*, *fĕror*, *perhĭbeor*, *pŭtor*, *existĭmor*, etc., also with *coeptus sum* and *dēsĭtus sum* with a Passive Infinitive, and (2) sometimes with other verbs of *saying*, *showing*, *perceiving*, *finding*, and the like.

Sōlem e mundo tollĕre vĭdentur, *They seem to remove the sun from the world.* Cic. Plătōnem audīvisse dīcĭtur, *He is said to have heard Plato.* Cic. Dii beāti esse intellĭguntur, *The gods are understood to be happy.* Cic.

2) In successive clauses the Personal construction is often followed by the Impersonal.

3) *Videor* with or without a Dative often means *to fancy*, *think*: *mihi videor* or *videor*, I fancy; *ut vidēmur*, as we fancy.

II. *Infinitive as Object.*

550. The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, is often used as an Accusative, and is thus made the object of a verb, according to Rule V.:

Te dīcunt esse săpientem, *They say that you are wise.* Cic. Haec vītāre cŭpĭmus, *We desire to avoid these things.* Cic. Mănēre dēcrēvit, *He decided to remain.* Nep.

551. Infinitive with Subject Accusative.—This is used as object with a great variety of verbs. Thus,

I. With Verbs of Perceiving and Declaring,—*Verba Sentiendi et Dēclārandi.*

II. With Verbs of Wishing and Desiring.

III. With Verbs of Emotion and Feeling.

I. With Verbs of Perceiving and Declaring.—Sentīmus călēre ignem, *We perceive that fire is hot.* Cic. Mihi narrāvit te sollĭcĭtum esse, *He told me that you were troubled.* Cic. Scripsērunt Thĕmistŏclem in Asiam transisse, *They wrote that Themistocles had gone over to Asia.* Nep.

1. Verba Sentiendi.—*Verbs of Perceiving* include those which involve (1) the exercise of the senses: *audio*, *video*, *sentio*, etc., and (2) the exercise of the mind: thinking, believing, knowing, *cōgĭto*, *pŭto*, *existĭmo*, *crēdo*, *spēro*,—*intellĭgo*, *scio*, etc.

2. Verba Declarandi.—*Verbs of Declaring* are such as state or communicate facts or thoughts: *dīco*, *narro*, *nuntio*, *dŏceo*, *ostendo*, *prōmitto*, etc.

3. Expressions with the Force of Verbs.—The Infinitive with a subject may be used with expressions equivalent to verbs of perceiving and declaring. Thus:

With *fāma fert*, report says, *testis sum*, I am a witness = I testify; *conscius mihi sum*, I am conscious, I know:

Nullam mihi rĕlātam esse grātiam, tu es testis, *You are a witness* (can testify) *that no grateful return has been made to me.* Cic.

4. Participle for Infinitive.—Verbs of Perceiving take the Accusative with the Present Participle, when the object is to be represented as actually seen, heard, etc., while engaged in a given action:

Cătōnem vīdi in bibliŏthēca sĕdentem, *I saw Cato sitting in the library.* Cic.

5. Subjects Compared.—When two subjects with the same predicate are compared by means of *quam*, *idem—qui*, etc.; if the Accusative with the Infinitive is used in the first clause, the Accusative with its Infinitive omitted may follow in the second:

Plătōnem fĕrunt ĭdem sensisse, quod Pȳthăgŏram, *They say that Plato held the same opinion as Pythagoras.* Cic.

6. Predicates Compared.—When two predicates with the same subject are compared and the Infinitive with a Subject is used in the first clause, the Infinitive with its subject omitted often follows in the second:

Num pŭtātis, dixisse Antōnium mĭnācius quam factūrum fuisse, *Do you think Antony spoke more threateningly than he would have acted?* Cic.

But the second clause may take the subjunctive, with or without *ut*:

Audeo dīcĕre ipsos pŏtius cultōres agrōrum fŏre quam ut cŏli prohibeant, *I dare say that they will themselves become tillers of the fields rather than prevent them from being tilled.* Liv.

II. With Verbs of Wishing and Desiring.—The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is also used with verbs of *Wishing* and *Desiring*:

Te tua frui virtūte cŭpĭmus, *We desire that you should enjoy your virtue.* Cic. Pontem jŭbet rescindi, *He orders the bridge to be broken down* (that the bridge should be broken down). Caes. Lex eum nĕcāri vĕtuit, *The law forbade that he should be put to death.* Liv.

1. Verbs of Wishing.—The Infinitive is thus used not only with verbs which directly express a wish, *cŭpio*, *vŏlo*, *nōlo*, *mālo*, etc., but also with many which involve a wish or command: *pătior*, *sĭno*, to permit; *impĕro*, *jŭbeo*, to command; *prohĭbeo*, *vĕto*, to forbid. See also 558. II.

2. Subjunctive for Infinitive.—Several verbs involving a wish or command admit the Subjunctive:

1) Opto. See 492. 3.

2) Vŏlo, mālo, nōlo, impĕro, and jŭbeo admit the Subjunctive, generally with *ut* or *ne*:

Vŏlo ut respondeas, *I wish you would reply.* Cic. Mālo te hostis mĕtuat, *I prefer that the enemy should fear you.* Cic.

3) *Concēdo*, *permitto*, rarely *pătior* and *sĭno*, admit the Subjunctive with *ut*:

Concēdo ut haec apta sint, *I admit that these things are suitable.* Cic.

III. With Verbs of Emotion or Feeling.—The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is also used with verbs of *Emotion* or *Feeling*:

Gaudeo, te mihi suādēre, *I rejoice that you advise me.* Cic. Mīrāmur, te laetāri, *We wonder that you rejoice.* Cic.

Verbs of emotion are *gaudeo, dŏleo, miror, quĕror*, and the like; also *aegre fĕro, grăviter fĕro*, etc.

552. Infinitive without Subject Accusative.—This is used as Object with many verbs:

Vincĕre scis, *You know how to conquer* (you know to conquer). Liv. Crēdŭli esse coepērunt, *They began to be credulous.* Cic. Haec vītāre cŭpĭmus, *We desire to avoid these things.* Cic. Sŏlent cōgĭtāre, *They are accustomed to think.* Cic. Nēmo mortem effŭgĕre pŏtest, *No one is able to escape death.* Cic.

1. Verbs with the Infinitive.—The Infinitive may depend upon verbs signifying *to dare, desire, determine—begin, continue, end—know, learn, neglect—owe, promise*, etc., also *to be able, be accustomed, be wont*, etc.

2. Infinitive as a Second Object.—With a few verbs—*dŏceo, cōgo, assuefăcio, arguo*, etc.—the Infinitive is used in connection with a direct object; see 374. 4:

Te săpĕre dŏcet, *He teaches you to be wise.* Cic. Nātiōnes pārēre assuefēcit, *He accustomed the nations to obey.* Cic.

In the Passive these verbs of course retain the Infinitive:
Num sum Graece lŏqui dŏcendus, *Must I be taught to speak Greek?* Cic.

3. Infinitive after Adjectives.—By a construction according to sense, the Infinitive is used after adjectives in the sense of participles or verbs with the Infinitive:

Est părātus (*vult*) audīre, *He is prepared to hear* (is willing to hear). Cic. Pēlīdes cēdĕre nescius (= nesciens), *Pelides not knowing how to yield.* Hor. Avĭdi committĕre pugnam, *eager to engage battle.* Ovid.

This construction is rare in good prose, but common in poetry.

4. Infinitive with Prepositions.—The Infinitive regarded as a noun in the accusative, sometimes depends upon a preposition:

Multum intĕrest inter dăre et accĭpĕre, *There is a great difference between giving and receiving.* Sen.

III. Infinitive in Special Constructions.

553. The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, is generally used as the Subject or Object of a verb, but sometimes occurs in other relations. It is thus used,

I. As Predicate; see 362:

Exĭtus fuit ōrātiōnis: sĭbi nullam cum his ămīcĭtiam, *The close of his oration was that he had no friendship with these.* Caes. Vīvĕre est cōgĭtāre, *To live is to think.* Cic.

Here *sibi—ămīcĭtiam* is used substantively, and is the Predicate Nominative after *fuit*, according to Rule I. *Cōgĭtāre* is in the same construction after *est*.

II. As Appositive; see 363:

Orācŭlum dătum ĕrat victrīces Athēnas fŏre, *The oracle that Athens would be victorious had been given.* Cic. Illud sŏleo mīrāri non me accĭpĕre tuas littĕras, *I am accustomed to wonder at this, that I do not receive your letter.* Cic.

1. With Subject.—In this construction the Infinitive takes a subject accusative, as in the examples.

2. Explanation.—In the examples, the clause *victrīces Athēnas fŏre* is in apposition with *ōrācŭlum*, and the clause *non me accĭpĕre tuas littĕras*, in apposition with *illud.*

III. In Exclamations; see 381:

Te sic vexāri, *that you should be thus troubled!* Cic. Mēne incepto dēsistĕre victam, *that I vanquished should abandon my undertaking!* Virg.

1. With Subject.—In this construction the Infinitive takes a Subject, as in the examples.

2. Explanation.—This use of the Infinitive conforms, it will be observed, to the use of Accusative and Nominative in exclamations (381, 381. 3). It may often be explained as an Accus. by supplying some verb, as *dŏleo*, etc., or as a Nom. by supplying *crēdendum est* or *crēdĭbĭle est.* Thus the first example becomes: *I grieve* (dŏleo) *that you*, etc., and the second becomes: *Is it to be supposed* (crēdendum est) *that I vanquished*, etc.

3. Impassioned Questions.—This construction is most frequent in impassioned questions, as in the second example.

IV. As Ablative Absolute. See 431. 4.

V. To express Purpose:

Pĕcus ēgit altos vīsĕre montes, *He drove his herd to visit the lofty mountains.* Hor. Non pŏpŭlāre pĕnātes vēnīmus, *We have not come to lay waste your homes.* Virg.

This construction is confined to poetry.

VI. Poetic Infinitive for Gerund. See 563. 6.

SECTION IX.

SUBJECT AND OBJECT CLAUSES.

554. Subject and Object Clauses, in which, as we have just seen (549 and 550), the Infinitive is so freely used, assume four distinct forms:

I. Indirect Questions.—These represent the Subject or Object as *Interrogative* in character:

Quaerītur, cur dissentiant, *It is asked why they disagree.* Cic. Quid ăgendum sit, nescio, *I do not know what ought to be done.* Cic. See 525.

II. INFINITIVE CLAUSES.—These have simply the force of Nouns, merely supplying the place of the Nominative, or the Accusative:

Antĕcellĕre contĭgit, *It was his good fortune to excel* (to excel happened). Cic. Magna nĕgōtia vŏluit ăgĕre, *He wished to achieve great undertakings.* Cic. See 549, 550.

III. SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES.—These clauses introduced by *ut*, *ne*, etc., are only occasionally used as subject or object, and even then involve Purpose or Result:

Contĭgit ut patriam vindĭcāret, *It was his good fortune to save his country.* Nep. Vŏlo ut mihi respondeas, *I wish you would answer me.* Cic. See 492, 495.

Here *ut—vindĭcāret* is at once subject and result: it was his good fortune to save his country, or his good fortune was such that he saved his country. In the second example, *ut—respondeas* expresses not only the object desired, but also the purpose of the desire.

IV. CLAUSES WITH QUOD.—These again are only occasionally used as subject or object, and even then either give prominence to the fact stated, or present it as a Ground or Reason:

Bĕnĕfĭcium est quod nĕcesse est mŏri, *It is a blessing that it is necessary to die.* Sen. Gaudeo quod te interpellāvi, *I rejoice that* (because) *I have interrupted you.* Cic. See 520.

Clauses with *quod* sometimes stand at the beginning of sentences to announce the subject of remark:

Quod me Agămemnŏnem aemŭlāri pŭtas, fallĕris, *As to the fact that you think I emulate Agamemnon, you are mistaken.* Nep.

I. FORMS OF SUBJECT CLAUSES.

555. INTERROGATIVE.—Subject clauses which are interrogative in character, of course take the form of indirect questions. See 525. 2 and 554. I.

556. NOT INTERROGATIVE.—Subject clauses which are not interrogative, with some predicates take the form of Infinitive clauses, or clauses with *quod*; while with other predicates they take the form of Subjunctive clauses with *ut*, *ne*, etc. Thus,

I. With most impersonal verbs and with predicates consisting of *est* with a Noun or Adjective, the Subject may be supplied (1) by the Infinitive with or without a Subject Accusative, or, (2) if

the fact is to be made prominent or adduced as a reason, by a clause with *quod:*

Me poenĭtet vixisse, *I regret that I have lived.* Cic. Quod te offendi me poenĭtet, *I regret that* (or because) *I have offended you.* Cic.

1. SUBSTANTIVE PREDICATES WITH SUBJUNCTIVE.—Mos est, mōris est, consuētūdo est, consuētūdinis est, *It is a custom,* etc., admit the Subjunctive for the Infinitive:

Mos est hŏminum ut nōlint, *It is a custom of men that they are not willing.* Cic.

2. ADJECTIVE PREDICATES WITH SUBJUNCTIVE.—Rĕliquum est, proxĭmum est, extrēmum est—vērum est, vērisĭmile est, falsum est—glōriōsum est, mīrum est, optimum est, etc., admit the Subjunctive for the Infinitive:

Rĕliquum est ut certēmus, *it remains that we contend.* Cic. Vērum est ut bŏnos dīligant, *It is true that they love the good.* Cic.

II. With Impersonal verbs signifying to *happen*—accĭdit, contingit, ēvĕnit, fit—*ut, ut non,* with the Subjunctive, is generally used (495. 2):

Thrăsȳbūlo contigit, ut patriam vindĭcāret, *It was the good fortune of Thrasybulus* (happened to him) *to deliver his country.* Nep.

1. Here belong *accĕdit ut, est ut; fŭtūrum esse ut,* or *fŏre ut.* See 544.

2. Clauses with *quod* also occur with verbs of happening.

III. With Impersonal verbs signifying *it follows, remains, is distant,* and the like, the Subjunctive clause with *ut* is generally used:

Rĕlinquĭtur, ut quiescāmus, *It remains that we should submit.* Cic. See 495. 2.

IV. Subjunctive clause standing alone. See 495. 2. 2).

II. FORMS OF OBJECT CLAUSES.

557. INTERROGATIVE.—Object clauses which are interrogative in character, of course, take the form of indirect questions. See 554. I.

558. NOT INTERROGATIVE.—Object clauses which are not interrogative in character, supplying the place of direct objects after transitive verbs, sometimes take the form of Infinitive clauses, sometimes of Subjunctive clauses, and sometimes of clauses with *quod.* Thus,

I. Verbs of DECLARING take,

1. Regularly the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. See 551. I.

2. But the Subjunctive with *ut* or *ne,* when they involve a *command:*

Dŏlābellae dixit, ut ad me scrībĕret ut in Itāliam vĕnīrem, *He told Dolabella to write to me to come into Italy.* Cic. See 492. 2.

II. Verbs of DETERMINING, *stătuo*, *constĭtuo*, *dēcerno*, and the like, take,

1. Generally the Infinitive, when the subject is the same as that of the principal verb, rarely the Subjunctive:

Mănēre dēcrēvit, *He determined to remain.* Nep. Stătuērunt, ut lībertātem dēfendĕrent, *They determined to defend liberty.* Cic. See 551. II.

2. The Subjunctive with *ut* or *ne* (expressed or understood), when a new subject is introduced:

Constĭtuĕrat, ut trĭbūnus quĕrĕrētur, *He had arranged that the tribune should enter the complaint.* Sall. Sĕnātus dēcrēvit, dărent ŏpĕram consŭles, *The senate decreed that the consuls should attend to it.* Sall. See 492. 3.

Stătuo, *dēcerno*, etc., when they mean *to think*, *deem*, *suppose*, etc., become *verba sentiendi* (551. I. 1), and of course take the infinitive:

Laudem săpientiae stătuo esse maximam, *I deem it to be the highest praise of wisdom.* Cic.

III. Verbs of STRIVING, ENDEAVORING, take the Subjunctive with *ut* or *ne*. See 492. 1. But *contendo*, *nītor*, *stŭdeo*, and *tento*, generally take the Infinitive when the subject is the same:

Lŏcum oppugnāre contendit, *He proceeds to storm the city.* Caes. Tentābo de hoc dīcĕre, *I will attempt to speak of this.* Quint. See 552.

IV. Verbs of CAUSING, MAKING, ACCOMPLISHING, take the Subjunctive with *ut*, *ne*, *ut non*. See 492, 495.

1. EXAMPLES.—Făcio, effĭcio, perfĭcio—ădĭpiscor, impetro—assĕquor, consĕquor, and sometimes fĕro, are examples of verbs of this class.

2. FACIO AND EFFICIO.—*Făcio* in the sense of *assume*, *suppose*, takes the Infinitive; *effĭcio* in the sense of *prove*, *show*, either the Infinitive or the Subjunctive with *ut*, etc.:

Fac ănĭmos non rĕmănēre post mortem, *Assume that souls do not survive after death.* Cic. Vult effĭcĕre anĭmos esse mortāles, *He wishes to show that souls are mortal.* Cic.

V. Verbs of EMOTION OR FEELING, whether of joy or sorrow, take,

1. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative, to express the Object in view of which the feeling is exercised. See 551. III.

2. Clauses with *quod*, to make more prominent the Reason for the feeling:

Gaudeo quod te interpellāvi, *I rejoice that* (or because) *I have interrupted you.* Cic. Dŏlēbam quod sŏcium āmīsĕram, *I was grieving because I had lost a companion.* Cic. See 520. I.

For VERBS OF DESIRING, see 551. II. 2.

VI. Verbs of ASKING, DEMANDING, ADVISING, WARNING, COM-

MANDING, and the like, take the Subjunctive, generally with *ut* or *ne:*

Oro ut hŏmĭnes mĭsĕros conserves, *I implore that you would preserve the unhappy men.* Cic. Postŭlant ut signum detur, *They demand that the signal be given.* Liv. See 492. 2.

1. EXAMPLES.—Verbs of this class are numerous—the following are examples: ōro, rŏgo, pĕto, prĕcor, obsĕcro—flāgito, postŭlo, praecipio—hortor, mŏneo, suādeo, persuādeo—impello, incito, mŏveo, commŏveo.

2. USED AS VERBA DECLARANDI.—Some of these verbs in particular significations become *verba declārandi* (551. 2), and accordingly take the Infinitive with Subject Accusative: thus *mŏneo*, in the sense of *remind* and *persuādeo* in the sense of *convince.*

3. INFINITIVE.—Even in their ordinary significations some of these verbs, especially *hortor*, *mŏneo*, and *postŭlo*, sometimes take the Infinitive with or without a Subject Accusative:

Postŭlat se absolvi, *He demands that he should be acquitted.* Cic. See 551. II. 1 and 2.

The Infinitive is much more common in poetry than in prose.

SECTION X.

GERUND.

559. The Gerund is a verb in force, but a noun in form and inflection. As a verb it governs oblique cases and takes adverbial modifiers, as a noun it is itself governed.

560. The Gerund has four cases: Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative, governed like nouns in the same situation:

Beāte vīvendi cŭpĭdĭtāte incensi sŭmus, *We are animated with the desire of living happily.* Cic. Charta inūtĭlis scrībendo, *paper unfit for writing.* Plin. Ad ăgendum nātus, *born for action.* Cic. In ăgendo, *in acting.* Cic.

1. ACCUSATIVE.—The Accusative of the Gerund is used only after Prepositions.

2. GERUND AND INFINITIVE.—The gerund and the infinitive are kindred forms, expressing the meaning of the verb in the form of a noun (196. II.). They are also complements of each other, the one supplying the parts which are wanting in the other. Thus the infinitive supplies the nominative and the accusative after verbs (548); the gerund supplies the genitive, dative, and ablative, and the accusative after prepositions.

561. Gerunds with Direct Objects are regularly used only in the Genitive and in the Ablative without a preposition:

Jus vŏcandi sĕnātum, *the right of summoning the senate.* Liv. Injūrias fĕrendo laudem mĕrēbĕris, *You will merit praise by bearing wrongs.* Cic.

562. Gerundive.—The place of the Gerund with a Direct Object is supplied by putting that object in the case of the Gerund and changing the latter into the participle in *-dus* in agreement with it. The participle is then called a *Gerundive:*

Inĭta sunt consĭlia urbis dēlendae = urbem dēlendi, *Plans have been formed for destroying the city* (of the city to be destroyed). Cic. Nŭma săcerdōtĭbus creandis ănĭmum adjēcit, *Numa gave his attention to the appointment of priests.* Liv.

1. Explanation.—With the Gerund, the first example would be: *Inĭta sunt consĭlia urbem dēlendi,* in which *dēlendi* is governed by *consĭlia,* and *urbem* by *dēlendi.* In changing this to the Gerundive construction,

1) *Urbem,* the object, is changed into *urbis,* the case of the gerund, and is governed by *consĭlia.*

2) *Dēlendi,* the gerund, is changed into *dēlendae,* the gerundive, in agreement with *urbis.*

2. Gerundive.—For the sake of brevity, the term *Gerundive* is used not only to designate the *Participle,* but also the *Construction as a whole,* including both the participle and the noun with which it agrees.

3. Use of Gerundive.—The Gerundive may be used for the Gerund with a Direct Object, and is almost invariably so used when the Gerund would be in the Dative or would depend upon a preposition. But see 563. 2.

But in a few instances the Gerund with a Direct Object occurs in the Dative or dependent upon a preposition. See 564. 1; 565. 2; and 566. 2.

4. Gerundives of utor, fruor, etc.—In general only the gerundives of transitive verbs are used with their nouns as equivalents for Gerunds with Direct Objects; but the gerundives of *ūtor, fruor, fungor, pŏtior,* and *vescor,* originally transitive verbs, admit this construction:

Ad mūnus fungendum, *for discharging the duty.* Cic. Spes pŏtiundōrum castrōrum, *the hope of getting possession of the camp.* Caes.

5. Passive Sense.—In a few instances, the Gerund has in appearance a passive sense:

Nĕque hăbent propriam percĭpiendi nŏtam, *Nor have they any proper mark of distinction,* i. e., to distinguish them. Cic.

I. Genitive of Gerunds and Gerundives.

563. The Genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive is used with nouns and adjectives:

Gerund.—Ars vīvendi, *the art of living.* Cic. Stŭdiōsus ĕrat audiendi, *He was desirous of hearing.* Nep. Jus vŏcandi sĕnātum, *the right of summoning the senate.* Liv. Cŭpĭdus te audiendi, *desirous of hearing you.* Cic.

Gerundive.—Lĭbīdo ejus vĭdendi, *the desire of seeing him.* Cic. Plătōnis stŭdiōsus audiendi fuit, *He was fond of hearing Plato.* Cic.

1. The genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive occurs most frequently—

1) With ars, scientia, consuētūdo,—cŭpĭdĭtas, lĭbīdo, stŭdium, consĭlium, vŏluntas, spes,—pŏtestas, făcultas, diffĭcultas, occāsio, tempus,—gĕnus, mŏdus, rătio,—causa, grātia, etc.

2) With adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge, skill, recollection,* and their *opposites:* ăvĭdus, cŭpĭdus, stŭdiōsus—conscius, gnārus, ignārus—pĕrītus, impĕrītus, insuētus, etc.

2. Gerund preferred.—A gerund with a neuter pronoun or adjective as object should not be changed to the participial construction, because the latter could not distinguish the gender:

Artem vēra ac falsa dījūdĭcandi, *the art of distinguishing true things from the false.* Cic.

3. Gerund with Genitive.—The Gerund in the Genitive sometimes assumes so completely the force of a noun as to govern the Genitive instead of the Accusative:

Rejĭciendi jūdĭcum pŏtestas, *the power of challenging* (of) *the judges.* Cic.

Here *rejiciendi* may be governed by *potestas*, and may itself by its substantive force govern *judicum*, the challenging of the judges, etc. But these and similar forms in *di* are sometimes explained not as Gerunds but as Gerundives, like Gerundives with *mei, nostri,* etc. · See 4 below.

4. Participial Construction with mei, nostri, etc.—With the Genitive of personal pronouns—*mei, nostri, tui, vestri, sui*—the participle ends in *di* without reference to Number or Gender:

Cōpia plācandi tui (*of a woman*), *an opportunity of appeasing you.* Ov. Sui conservandi causa, *for the purpose of preserving themselves.* Cic. Vestri adhortandi causa, *for the purpose of exhorting you.* Liv.

This apparent irregularity may be accounted for by the fact that these genitives, though used as Personal Pronouns, are all strictly in form in the neuter singular of the Possessives *meum, tuum, suum,* etc., hence the participle in *di* agrees with them perfectly.

5. Purpose.—The Genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive is sometimes used to express Purpose or Tendency:

Haec trādendae Hannĭbăli victōriae sunt, *These things are for the purpose of giving victory to Hannibal.* Liv. Lēges pellendi clāros vĭros, *laws for driving away illustrious men.* Tac. Prŏfĭciscĭtur cognoscendae antĭquĭtātis, *He sets out for the purpose of studying antiquity.* Tac.

This genitive is sometimes best explained as Predicate Genitive (401), as in the first example; sometimes as dependent upon a noun, as *pellendi* dependent upon *leges* in the second example; and sometimes simply as a Genitive of Cause (398, 409. 4), as in the third example; though in such cases, especially in the second and third, *causa* may be supplied.

6. Infinitive for Gerund.—The Infinitive for the Genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive is often used in the poets with nouns and adjectives, sometimes even in prose:

Cŭpīdo Stўgios innāre lăcus, *the desire to sail upon the Stygian lakes.* Virg. Avĭdus committĕre pugnam, *eager to engage battle.* Ovid.

II. Dative of Gerunds and Gerundives.

564. The Dative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used with a few verbs and adjectives which regularly govern the Dative:

Gerund.—Quum solvendo non essent, *Since they were not able to pay.* Cic. Aqua ūtĭlis est bĭbendo, *Water is useful for drinking.* Plin.

Gerundive.—Lŏcum oppĭdo condendo cēpērunt, *They selected a place for founding a city.* Liv. Tempŏra dēmĕtendis fructĭbus accommŏdāta, *seasons suitable for gathering fruits.* Cic.

1. Gerund.—The Dative of the Gerund is rare and confined mostly to late writers; with an object it is almost without example.

2. Gerundive of Purpose.—In Livy, Tacitus, and late writers, the Dative of the Gerundive often denotes purpose:

Firmandae vălētūdĭni in Campāniam concessit, *He withdrew into Campania to confirm his health.* Tac.

3. Gerundive with Official Names.—The Dative of the Gerundive also stands after certain official names, as *dĕcemvĭri, triumvĭri, comĭtia:*

Dĕcemvĭros lēgĭbus scrībendis creāvĭmus, *We have appointed a committee of ten to prepare laws.* Liv. But the Dative is perhaps best explained as dependent upon the verb.

III. Accusative of Gerunds and Gerundives.

565. The Accusative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used after a few prepositions:

Gerund.—Ad discendum prōpensi sŭmus, *We are inclined to learn* (to learning). Cic. Inter lūdendum, *in* or *during play.* Quint.

Gerundive.—Ad cŏlendos agros, *for cultivating the fields.* Cic. Ante condendam urbem, *before the founding of the city.* Liv.

1. Prepositions.—The Accusative of the gerund or gerundive is used most frequently after **ad**; sometimes after **inter** and **ob**; very rarely after **ante, circa,** and **in.**

2. With Object.—The accusative of a gerund with a direct object sometimes occurs, but is rare:

Ad plācandum deos pertĭnet, *It tends to appease the gods.* Cic.

3. Purpose.—With verbs of *giving, permitting, leaving, taking,* etc., the purpose of the action is sometimes denoted by the Gerund with **ad**, or by the Gerundive in agreement with a noun:

Ad ĭmĭtandum mihi prōpŏsĭtum exemplar illud, *That model has been set before me for imitation.* Cic. Attrĭbuit Ităliam vastandam (for *ad vastandum*) Cătĭlīnae, *He assigned Italy to Catiline to ravage* (to be ravaged). Cic.

IV. Ablative of Gerunds or Gerundives.

566. The Ablative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used,

I. As Ablative of Means or Instrument:

Gerund.—Mens discendo ălĭtur, *The mind is nourished by learning.* Cic. Sălūtem hŏmĭnĭbŭs dando, *by giving safety to men.* Cic.

Gerundive.—Lĕgendis ōrătōrĭbus, *by reading the orators.* Cic.

II. With Prepositions:

Gerund.—Virtūtes cernuntur in ăgendo, *Virtues are seen in action.* Cic. Dēterrēre a scrĭbendo, *to deter from writing.* Cic.

Gerundive.—Brūtus in lībĕranda patria est interfectus, *Brutus was slain in liberating his country.* Cic.

1. Prepositions.—The ablative of the gerund or gerundive is used most frequently after **in**; sometimes after **a** (ab), **de**, **ex** (e); very rarely after **cum** and **pro**.

2. With Object.—After prepositions, the ablative of the gerund with a direct object is exceedingly rare:

In trĭbuendo suum cuīque, *in giving every one his own.* Cic.

3. Without a Preposition, the ablative of the gerund or gerundive denotes in a few instances some other relation than that of means, as *time*, *separation*, etc.:

Incĭpiendo rĕfūgi, *I drew back in the very beginning.* Cic.

SECTION XI.

SUPINE.

567. The Supine, like the Gerund, is a verb in force, but a noun in form and inflection. As a verb it governs oblique cases, as a noun it is itself governed.

568. The Supine has but two cases: the Accusative in *um* and the Ablative in *u*.

RULE L.—Supine in Um.

569. The Supine in *um* is used after verbs of motion to express purpose:

Lēgāti vēnērunt res rĕpĕtītum, *Deputies came to demand restitution.* Liv. Ad Caesărem congrātŭlātum convēnērunt, *They came to Caesar to congratulate him.* Caes.

1. The Supine in *um* occurs in a few instances after verbs which do not directly express motion:

Filiam Agrippae nuptum dĕdit, *He gave his daughter in marriage to Agrippa.* Suet.

2. The Supine in *um* with the verb *eo* is equivalent to the forms of the first Periphrastic Conjugation, and may often be rendered literally:

Bŏnos omnes perditum eunt, *They are going to destroy all the good.* Sall.

But in subordinate clauses the Supine in *um* with the verb *eo* is often used for the simple verb:

Ultum īre, (= ulcisci) injūrias festīnat, *He hastens to avenge the injuries.* Sall.

3. The Supine in *um* with *īri*, the infinitive passive of *eo*, forms, it will be remembered (215, III. 1), the Future Passive Infinitive:

Brūtum vīsum īri a me pŭto, *I think Brutus will be seen by me.* Cic.

4. The Supine in *um* as an expression of purpose is not very common, its place is often supplied even after verbs of motion by other constructions:

1) By *ut* or *qui with the Subjunctive.* See 489.

2) By *Gerunds* or *Gerundives.* See 563. 5; 564. 2; 565. 3.

3) By *Participles.* See 578. V.

570. The Supine in *u* is generally used as an Ablative of Specification (429):

Quid est tam jūcundum audītu, *What is so agreeable to hear* (in hearing)? Cic. Diffĭcile dictu est, *It is difficult to tell.* Cic.

1. The Supine in *u* is used chiefly with—jūcundus, optimus—făcilis, prōclīvis, diffĭcilis—incrēdibilis, mĕmŏrābilis—hŏnestus, turpis, fas, nefas—dignus, indignus—ŏpus est.

2. The Supine in *u* is very rare, and does not occur with an object. The only examples in common use are: *audītu, cognĭtu, dictu, and factu.*

3. As the Supine in *u* is little used, its place is supplied by other constructions:

1) By *ad with the Gerund:* Verba ad audiendum jūcunda, *words agreeable to hear.* Cic.

2) By the *Infinitive:* Făcile est vincĕre, *It is easy to conquer.* Cic.

3) By *a Finite Mood with an adverb:* Non făcile dijūdicātur ămor fictus, *Pretended love is not easy to detect* (is not easily detected). Cic.

SECTION XII.

PARTICIPLES.

I. Tenses of Participles.

571. Participles, like Infinitives, express only relative time, and represent the action as Present, Past, or Future, relatively to the principal verb.

Peculiarities.—Tenses in Participles present the leading peculiarities specified under the corresponding tenses in the Indicative. See 467. 2.

572. Present Participle.—The present participle represents the action as taking place at the time denoted by the principal verb:

Ocŭlus se non vĭdens ălia cernit, *The eye, though it does not see itself* (not

seeing itself), *discerns other things.* Cic. Plăto scrībens mortuus est, *Plato died while writing.* Cic.

573. Future Participle.—The future active participle represents the action as about to take place, in time subsequent to that of the principal verb:

Săpiens bŏna semper plăcĭtūra laudat, *The wise man praises blessings which will always please* (being about to please). Sen.

But the Future Passive generally loses in a great degree its force as a tense, and is often best rendered by a verbal noun. See 562 and 580.

574. Perfect Participle.—The perfect participle represents the action as completed at the time of the principal verb.

Uva mātūrāta dulcescit, *The grape, when it has ripened* (having ripened), *becomes sweet.* Cic.

1. The Perfect Participle, both in Deponent and in Passive verbs, is sometimes used of present time, and sometimes in Passive verbs it loses in a great degree its force as a tense, and is best rendered by a verbal noun. See 580.

2. For the Participle with *hăbeo*, see 388. 1. 2).

II. Use of Participles.

575. Participles are verbs in force, but Adjectives in form and inflection. As verbs they govern oblique cases, as adjectives they agree with nouns:

Anĭmus se non vĭdens ălia cernit, *The mind, though it does not see itself, discerns other things.* Cic.

1. Participles in the Present or Perfect, rarely in the Future, may be used as adjectives or nouns: *scrīpta ĕpistŏla*, a written letter; *mortui*, the dead. Participles with the force of adjectives may be used as predicate adjectives with *sum*: *occŭpāti ĕrant*, they *were* occupied; as a verb, *had been* occupied.

576. Participles are used to abridge or shorten discourse by supplying the place of finite verbs with relatives or conjunctions. They are used with much greater freedom in Latin than in English.

577. Participle for Relative Clause.—In abridged sentences, the Participle often supplies the place of a Relative Clause:

Omnes ăliud ăgentes, ăliud sīmŭlantes imprŏbi sunt, *All who do one thing and pretend another are dishonest.* Cic.

578. For other Subordinate Clauses.—The Participle often supplies the place of a subordinate clause with a conjunction. It may express,

I. Time:

Plăto scrībens mortuus est, *Plato died while writing.* Cic. Itūri in proelium cănunt, *They sing when about to go into battle.* Tac.

II. Cause, Manner, Means:

Sol ŏriens diem confĭcit, *The sun by its rising causes the day.* Cic. Mīlĭtes rĕnuntiant, se perfĭdiam vĕrĭtos rĕvertisse, *The soldiers report that they returned because they feared perfidy* (having feared). Caes.

III. Condition:

Mendăci hŏmĭni ne vērum quĭdem dīcenti crēdĕre non sŏlēmus, *We are not wont to believe a liar, even if he speaks the truth.* Cic. Rĕluctante nātūra, irrĭtus lăbor est, *If nature opposes, effort is vain.* Sen.

IV. Concession:

Scripta tua jam diu exspectans, non audeo tămen flăgĭtāre, *Though I have been long expecting your work, yet I do not dare to ask for it.* Cic.

V. Purpose:

Perseus rĕdiit, belli căsum tentātūrus, *Perseus returned to try* (about to try) *the fortune of war.* Liv. Attrĭbuit nos trŭcīdandos Cĕthēgo, *He assigned us to Cethegus to slaughter.* Cic.

579. Participle for Principal Clause.—The Participle sometimes supplies the place of a principal or coördinate clause, and may accordingly be best rendered by a finite verb with *and* or *but:*

Classem dēvictam cēpit, *He conquered and took the fleet* (took the fleet conquered). Nep. Re consentientes vŏcăbŭlis diffĕrēbant, *They agreed in fact, but differed in words.* Cic.

580. Participle for Verbal Noun.—The Passive Participle is often used in Latin where the English idiom requires a participial noun, or a verbal noun with *of:*

In ămīcis ēlĭgendis, *in selecting friends.* Cic. Hŏmērus fuit ante Rōmam condĭtam, *Homer lived* (was) *before the founding of Rome* (before Rome founded). Cic.

581. Participle with Negative.—The Participle

with a negative, as *non*, *nihil*, is often best rendered by a participial noun and the preposition *without*:

Mĭsĕrum est, nihil prōfĭcientem angi, *It is sad to be troubled without accomplishing anything.* Cic. Non ērŭbescens, *without blushing.* Cic.

CHAPTER VI.

SYNTAX OF PARTICLES.

RULE LI.—Use of Adverbs.

582. Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS:

Săpientes fēlīcĭter vīvunt, *The wise live happily.* Cic. Făcĭle doctissĭmus, *unquestionably the most learned.* Cic. Haud ălĭter, *not otherwise.* Virg.

583. Adverbs are sometimes used with nouns:

1. When the nouns are used with the force of adjectives or participles:

Mĭnĭme largītor dux, *a leader by no means liberal.* Liv. Pŏpŭlus lāte rex, *a people of extensive sway* (ruling extensively). Virg.

2. When in sense a participle or verb may be supplied:

Mărius, plāne vir, *Marius, truly a man.* Cic. Omnes circa pŏpŭli, *all the surrounding peoples.* Liv. See also 353. 2.

584. The Common Negative Particles are: *non*, *ne*, *haud.*

1. *Non* is the usual negative, *ne* is used in prohibitions, wishes and purposes (489), and *haud*, in *haud scio an* and with adjectives and adverbs; *haud mīrābĭle*, not wonderful; *haud ălĭter*, not otherwise. *Ni* for *ne* is rare. *Ne non* after *vide* is often best rendered *whether.*

2. In *non mŏdo non* and in *non sōlum non*, the second *non* is generally omitted before *sed*, or *vērum*, followed by *ne—quĭdem* or *vix* (rarely *ĕtiam*), when the verb of the second clause belongs also to the first:

Assentātio non mŏdo ămīco, sed ne lībĕro quidem digna est. *Flattery is not only not worthy of a friend, but not even of a free man.* Cic.

3. *Minus* often has nearly the force of *non*; si minus = si non. *Sin ălĭter* has nearly the same force as *si minus.*

585. Two Negatives are generally equivalent to an affirmative, as in English:

Nihil non arrŏget, *Let him claim everything.* Hor. Nĕque hoc Zēno non vīdet, *Nor did Zeno overlook this.* Cic.

1. *Non* before a general negative gives it the force of an indefinite affirmative, but after such negative the force of a general affirmative:

Nonnēmo, *some one;* nonnihil, *something;* nonnunquam, *sometimes.*
Nēmo non, *every one;* nihil non, *every thing;* nunquam non, *always.*

2. After a general negative, *ne—quĭdem* gives emphasis to the negation, and *nĕque—nĕque, nēve—nēve*, and the like, repeat the negation distributively:

Non praetĕreundum est ne id quidem, *We must not pass by even this.* Cic. Nēmo unquam nĕque poēta nĕque ōrātor fuit, *No one was ever either a poet or orator.* Cic.

3. *Sic* and *ĭta* mean *so, thus. Ita* has also a limiting sense *in so far* which does not belong to *sic*, as in *ĭta—si* (503. 4). *Adeo*, to such a degree or result; *tam, tantŏpĕre*, so much, *tam* used mostly before adjectives and adverbs, and *tantŏpĕre* before verbs.

586. For the use of Prepositions, see 432 to 437.

587. Coördinate Conjunctions unite similar constructions (309). They comprise five classes:

I. Copulative Conjunctions denote union:

Castor et Pollux, *Castor and Pollux.* Cic. Sĕnātus pŏpŭlusque, *the senate and people.* Cic. Nec ĕrat diffĭcĭle, *Nor was it difficult.* Liv.

1. List. See 310. 1.

2. Difference in Force.—*Et* simply connects; *que* implies a more intimate relationship; *atque* generally gives prominence to what follows, especially at the beginning of a sentence; *ac*, abbreviated from *atque*, has generally the force of *et. Nĕque* and *nec* have the force of *et non. Et* and *ĕtiam* sometimes mean *even.*

Atque and *ac* generally mean *as, than* after adjectives and adverbs of likeness and unlikeness; similis, dissimĭlis, simĭlĭter, par, părĭter, aeque, ălius, ălĭter, sĕcus: *aeque ac*, equally as; *ălĭter atque*, otherwise than. See also 451. 5.

3. Que, ac, atque.—*Que* is an enclitic, i. e., is always appended to some other word. *Ac* in the best prose is used only before consonants; *atque*, either before vowels or consonants.

4. Etiam, quoque, adeo, and the like, are sometimes associated with *et, atque, ac*, and *que*, and sometimes even supply their place. *Quŏque* follows the word which it connects: *is quŏque*, he also. *Etiam*, also, further, even, is more comprehensive than *quŏque* and often adds a new circumstance.

5. Correlatives.—Sometimes two copulatives are used: et (que)—et (que), tum—tum, quum—tum, *both—and;* but *quum—tum* gives prominence to the second word or clause; non sōlum (non mŏdo, *or* non tantum)—sed ĕtiam (vērum ĕtiam), *not only—but also;* nĕque (nec)—nĕque (nec), *neither—nor;* nĕque (nec)—et (que), *not—but* (and); et—nĕque (nec), *(both)—and not.*

6. Omitted.—Between two words connected copulatively the conjunction is generally expressed, though sometimes omitted, especially between the names of two colleagues. Between several words it is in the best prose generally repeated or

omitted altogether, though *que* may be used with the last even when the conjunction is omitted between the others: *pax et tranquillĭtas et concordia*, or *pax, tranquillĭtas, concordia*, or *pax, tranquillĭtas, concordiăque*.

Et is often omitted between conditional clauses, except before *non*.

II. Disjunctive Conjunctions denote separation:

Aut vestra aut sua culpa, *either your fault, or his own.* Liv. Duābus trĭbusve hōris, *in two or three hours.* Cic.

1. List. See 310. 2.

2. Aut, vel, ve.—*Aut* denotes a stronger antithesis than *vel*, and must be used if the one supposition excludes the other: *aut vērum aut falsum*, either true or false. *Vel* implies a difference in the expression rather than in the thing. It is generally corrective and is often followed by *pŏtius*, *ĕtiam* or *dīcam*: *laudātur vel ĕtiam ămātur*, he is praised, or even (rather) loved. It sometimes means *even* and sometimes *for example*. *Vĕlut* often means *for example*. *Ve* for *vel* is appended as an enclitic.

In negative clauses *aut* and *ve* often continue the negation: *non hŏnor aut virtus*, neither (not) honor nor virtue.

3. Sive (*si—ve*) does not imply any real difference or opposition; it often connects different names of the same object: *Pallas sive Minerva*, Pallas or Minerva (another name of the same goddess).

III. Adversative Conjunctions denote opposition or contrast:

Cŭpio me esse clēmentum, sed me inertiae condemno, *I wish to be mild, but I condemn myself for inaction.* Cic.

1. List. See 310. 3.

2. Difference in Force.—*Sed* and *vērum* mark a direct opposition; *autem* and *vēro* only a transition; *at* emphasizes the opposition; *atqui* often introduces an objection; *cētĕrum*, but still, as to the rest; *tămen*, yet.

3. Compounds of tamen are: *attămen*, *sedtămen*, *vēruntămen*, but yet.

4. Autem and vero follow the words which they connect: *hic autem*, *hic vēro*, but this one. They are often omitted, especially before *non*. They are admissible with *qui* only when it is *followed* by its antecedent.

IV. Illative Conjunctions denote inference:

In umbra ĭgĭtur pugnābĭmus, *We shall therefore fight in the shade.* Cic.

1. List. See 310. 4.

2. Other Words.—Certain other words, sometimes classed with adverbs and sometimes with conjunctions, are also illatives: eo, ideo, idcirco, proptĕrea, quamobrem, quāpropter, quāre, quōcirca.

3. Igitur.—This generally follows the word which it connects: *hic ĭgĭtur*, this one therefore. After a digression *ĭgĭtur*, *sed*, *sed tămen*, *vērum*, *vērum tămen*, etc., are often used to resume an interrupted thought or construction. They may often be rendered *I say*: *Sed si quis*; if any one, I say.

V. Causal Conjunctions denote cause:

Diffĭcĭle est consĭlium: sum ĕnim sōlus, *Counsel is difficult, for I am alone.* Cic. Etĕnim jus ămant, *For they love the right.* Cic.

1. List. See 310. 5.

2. ETENIM and NAMQUE denote a closer connection than *ĕnim* and *nam*.
3. ENIM follows its word.

588. Subordinate Conjunctions connect subordinate with principal constructions (309. II.). They comprise eight classes.

I. Temporal Conjunctions denote time:

Pārui quum nĕcesse ĕrat, *He obeyed when it was necessary*. Cic. Dum ĕgo in Sĭcĭlia sum, *while I am in Sicily*. Cic. See also 311. 1; 521–523.

1. DUM added to a negative means *yet; nondum*, not yet; *vixdum*, scarcely yet.

II. Comparative Conjunctions denote comparison:

Ut optasti, ĭta est, *It is as you desired*. Cic. Vĕlut si ădesset, *as if he were present*. Caes. See also 311. 2; 503, 506.

1. CORRELATIVES are often used: Tam—quam, *as, so—as, as much as;* tamquam quod maxime, *as much as possible;* non minus—quam, *not less than;* non măgis—quam, *not more than*.

Tam—quam and *ut—ĭta* with a superlative are sometimes best rendered by *the* with the comparative: *ut maxĭme—ĭta maxĭme*, the more—the more.

III. Conditional Conjunctions denote condition:

Si peccāvi, ignosce, *If I have erred, pardon me*. Cic. Nĭsi est consĭlium dŏmi, *unless there is wisdom at home*. Cic. See also 311. 3; 503. 507.

1. *Nĭsi*, if not, in negative sentences often means *except*, and *nisi quod*, except that, may be used even in affirmative sentences. *Nĭsi* may mean *than*. *Nihil ălĭud nĭsi* = nothing further (more, except); *nihil ălĭud quam* = nothing else (other than).

IV. Concessive Conjunctions denote concession:

Quamquam intellĭgunt, *though they understand*. Cic. Etsi nihil hăbeat, *although he has nothing*. Cic. See also 311. 4; 515. 516.

V. Final Conjunctions denote purpose:

Esse ŏportet, ut vīvas, *It is necessary to eat, that you may live*. Cic. See also 311. 5; 489–499.

VI. Consecutive Conjunctions denote consequence or result:

Attĭcus ĭta vixit, ut Athēniensĭbus esset cārissĭmus, *Atticus so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians*. Nep. See also 311. 6; 489–499.

VII. Causal Conjunctions denote cause:

Quae quum ĭta sint, *Since these things are so*. Cic. See also 311. 7; 517. 518.

VIII. Interrogative Conjunctions or Particles denote inquiry or question:

Quaesiĕras, nonne pŭtārem, *You had asked whether I did not think*. Cic. See also 311. 8; 346. II., 525. 526.

IV. Interjections.

589. Interjections are sometimes used entirely alone, as *eheu*, alas! and sometimes with certain cases of nouns. See 381 and 381. 3.

590. Various parts of speech, and even oaths and imprecations, sometimes have the force of interjections. Thus:

Pax (*peace*), *be still!* mĭsĕrum, mĭsĕrābĭle, *sad, lamentable!* ōro, *pray!* ăge, ăgĭte, *come, well!* mehercŭles, *by Hercules!* per deum fĭdem, *in the name of the gods!* sōdes = si audes (*for* audies), *if you will hear!*

CHAPTER VII.

RULES OF SYNTAX.

591. For convenience of reference, the principal Rules of Syntax are here introduced in a body. The enclosed numerals refer to the various articles in the work where the several topics are more fully discussed.

NOUNS.

Agreement.

I. A Predicate Noun denoting the same person or thing as its Subject, agrees with it in case (362):

Ego sum nuntius, *I am a messenger.* Liv.

II. An Appositive agrees with its Subject in case (363):

Cluilius rex mŏrĭtur, *Cluilius the king dies.* Liv.

Nominative.

III. The Subject of a Finite verb is put in the Nominative (367):

Servius regnāvit, *Servius reigned.* Liv.

Vocative.

IV. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative (369):

Perge, Laeli, *Proceed, Laelius.* Cic.

Accusative.

V. The Direct Object of an action is put in the Accusative (371):

Deus mundum aedĭfĭcāvit, *God made the world.* Cic.

VI. Verbs of making, choosing, calling, regarding, showing, and the like, admit two Accusatives of the same person or thing (373):

Hămilcărem impĕrātōrem fēcērunt, *They made Hamilcar commander.* Nep.

VII. Some verbs of asking, demanding, teaching, and concealing, admit two Accusatives in the Active, and one in the Passive (374):

Me sententiam rŏgāvit, *He asked me my opinion.* Cic.

VIII. Duration of Time and Extent of Space are expressed by the Accusative (378):

Septem et trīginta regnāvit annos, *He reigned thirty-seven years.* Liv. Quinque millia passuum ambŭlāre, *to walk five miles.* Cic.

IX. The Name of a Town used as the Limit of motion is put in the Accusative (379):

Nuntius Rōmam rĕdit, *The messenger returns to Rome.* Liv.

X. A Verb or Adjective may take an Adverbial Accusative to define its application (380):

Căpĭta vēlāmur, *We have our heads veiled.* Virg. Nūbe hŭmĕros ămictus, *with his shoulders enveloped in a cloud.* Hor.

XI. The Accusative, either with or without an Interjection, may be used in Exclamations (381):

Heu me mĭsĕrum, *Ah me unhappy!* Cic.

Dative.

XII. The Indirect Object is put in the Dative (384):

Tempŏri cēdit, *He yields to the time.* Cic.

Dative of Advantage and Disadvantage (385).
Dative with Compounds (386).
Dative of Possessor (387).
Dative of Apparent Agent (388).
Ethical Dative (389).

XIII. Two Datives—the OBJECT TO WHICH and the OBJECT FOR WHICH—occur with a few verbs (390):

Mălo est hŏmĭnĭbus ăvārĭtia, *Avarice is* (for) *an evil to men.* Cic.

XIV. With Adjectives the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative (391):

Omnĭbus cārum est, *It is dear to all.* Cic.

XV. A few Derivative Nouns and Adverbs take the Dative after the analogy of their primitives (392):

Obtempĕrātio lēgĭbus, *obedience to the laws.* Cic. Congruenter nātūrae, *agreeably to nature.* Cic.

Genitive.

XVI. Any noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive (395):

Cătōnis ōrātiōnes, *Cato's orations.* Cic.

XVII. Many Adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning (399):

Avĭdus laudis, *desirous of praise.* Cic.

XVIII. A Predicate Noun denoting a different person or thing from its Subject, is put in the Genitive (401):

Omnia hostium ĕrant, *All things belonged to* (were of) *the enemy.* Liv.

XIX. The Genitive is used (406),

I. With **mĭsĕreor** and **mĭsĕresco**:

Mĭsĕrēre lăbōrum, *pity the labors.* Virg.

II. With **rĕcordor, mĕmĭni, rĕmĭniscor,** and **oblīviscor**:

Mĕmĭnit praetĕrĭtōrum, *He remembers the past.* Cic.

III. With **rēfert** and **intĕrest**:

Intĕrest omnium, *It is the interest of all.* Cic.

XX. A few verbs take the Accusative of the Person and the Genitive of the Thing (410):

I. Verbs of *Reminding, Admonishing:*

Te ămīcĭtiae commŏnĕfăcit, *He reminds you of friendship.* Cic.

II. Verbs of *Accusing, Convicting, Acquitting:*

Vĭros scĕlĕris arguis, *You accuse men of crime.* Cic.

III. *Misĕret, Poenĭtet, Pŭdet, Taedet,* and *Piget:*

Eōrum nos mĭsĕret, *We pity them.* Cic.

For the *Genitive of Place*, see Rule XXVI.

ABLATIVE.

XXI. CAUSE, MANNER, and MEANS are denoted by the Ablative (414):

Ŭtĭlĭtāte laudātur, *It is praised because of its usefulness.* Cic.

XXII. PRICE is generally denoted by the Ablative (416):

Vendĭdit auro patriam, *He sold his country for gold.* Virg.

XXIII. Comparatives without QUAM are followed by the Ablative (417):

Nihil est ămābĭlius virtūte, *Nothing is more lovely than virtue.* Cic.

XXIV. The MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE is denoted by the Ablative (418):

Uno die longior, *longer by one day.* Cic.

XXV. The Ablative is used (419),

I. With **ūtor, fruor, fungor, pŏtior, vescor,** and their compounds:

Plūrĭmis rēbus fruĭmur, *We enjoy very many things.* Cic.

II. With **fīdo, confīdo, nītor, innītor:**

Sălus vērĭtāte nītĭtur, *Safety rests upon truth.* Cic.

III. With VERBS and ADJECTIVES OF PLENTY and WANT:

Non ĕgeo mĕdĭcīna, *I do not need a remedy.* Cic.

IV. With **dignus, indignus, contentus,** and **frētus:**

Digni sunt ămīcĭtia, *They are worthy of friendship.* Cic.

V. With **ŏpus** and **ūsus:**

Auctōrĭtāte tua nōbīs ŏpus est, *We need your authority.* Cic.

XXVI. I. The PLACE IN WHICH and the PLACE FROM WHICH are generally denoted by the Ablative with a Preposition. But

II. NAMES OF TOWNS drop the Preposition, and in the Singular of the First and Second declensions designate the PLACE IN WHICH by the Locative (421):

In Itălia fuit, *He was in Italy.* Nep. Ex Afrĭca, *from Africa.* Liv. Athēnis fuit, *He was at Athens.* Cic. Rōmae fuit, *He was at Rome.* Cic.

XXVII. SOURCE and SEPARATION are denoted by the Ablative, generally with a preposition (425):

Oriundi ab Săbīnis, *descended from the Sabines.* Liv. Caedem a vōbis dēpello, *I ward off slaughter from you.* Cic.

XXVIII. The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ablative (426):

Octōgēsĭmo anno est mortuus, *He died in his eightieth year.* Cic.

XXIX. The Ablative with an adjective may be used to characterize a person or thing (428):

Summa virtūte ădŏlescens, *a youth of the highest virtue.* Caes.

XXX. The Ablative may be used with a word to define its application (429):

Nōmĭne, non pŏtestāte fuit rex, *He was king in name, not in power.* Nep.

XXXI. The Ablative is used as the CASE ABSOLUTE (431):

Servio regnante, *in the reign of Servius* (Servius reigning). Cic.

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

XXXII. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions (432):

Ad ămīcum, *to a friend.* Cic. In Itălia, *in Italy.* Nep.

ADJECTIVES.

XXXIII. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE (438):

Fortūna caeca est, *Fortune is blind.* Cic.

PRONOUNS.

XXXIV. A Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in GENDER, NUMBER, and PERSON (445):

Anĭmal, quod sanguĭnem hăbet, *an animal which has blood.* Cic.

VERBS.

AGREEMENT.

XXXV. A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON (460):

Ego rēges ejēci, *I have banished kings.* Cic.

Indicative Mood.

XXXVI. The Indicative is used in treating of facts (474):

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.* Cic.

Subjunctive Tenses.

XXXVII. Principal tenses depend upon Principal tenses: Historical, upon Historical (480):

Nītĭtur ut vincat, *He strives to conquer.* Cic. Quaesiĕras nonne pŭtārem, *You had asked whether I did not think.* Cic.

Subjunctive Mood.

XXXVIII. The Potential Subjunctive represents the action not as real, but as *possible* (485):

Forsĭtan quaerātis, *perhaps you may inquire.* Cic.

XXXIX. The Subjunctive of Desire represents the action not as real, but as *desired* (487):

Vălеant cīves, *May the citizens be well.* Cic.

XL. The Subjunctive of Purpose or Result is used (489),

I. With **ut, ne, quo, quin, quōmĭnus:**

Enītĭtur ut vincat, *He strives that he may conquer.* Cic.

II. With **qui = ut is, ut ĕgo, tu,** etc.:

Missi sunt, qui (*ut ii*) consŭlĕrent Apollĭnem, *They were sent to consult Apollo.* Nep.

XLI. The Subjunctive of Condition is used (503),

I. With **dum, mŏdo, dummŏdo:**

Mŏdo permăneat industria, *if only industry remains.* Cic.

II. With **ac si, ut si, quăsi, quam si, tanquam, tanquam si, vĕlut, vĕlut si:**

Vĕlut si ădesset, *as if he were present.* Caes.

III. Sometimes with **si, nĭsi, ni, sin, qui = si is, si quis:**

Si vĕlim nŭmĕrāre, *if I should wish to recount.* Cic.

XLII. The Subjunctive of Concession is used (515),

I. With **lĭcet, quamvis, quantumvis, ut, ne, quum,** although:

Lĭcet irrīdeat, *though he may deride.* Cic.

II. With **qui = quum** (lĭcet) **is, quum ĕgo,** etc., though he:

Absolvĭte Verrem, qui (*quum is*) făteătur, *Acquit Verres, though he confesses.* Cic.

III. Generally with **etsi, tămetsi, ĕtiamsi:**

Etsi optĭmum sit, *even if* (though) *it be most excellent.* Cic.

XLIII. The Subjunctive of Cause or Reason is used (517),

I. With **quum** (cum), since; **qui = quum is,** etc.

Quum vīta mĕtus plēna sit, *since life is full of fear.* Cic.

II. With **quod, quia, quŏniam, quando,** to introduce a reason on another's authority:

Quod corrumpĕret jŭventūtem, *because* (on the ground that) *he corrupted the youth.* Quint.

XLIV. The Subjunctive of Time with the accessory notion of Cause or Purpose is used (521),

I. With **dum, dōnec, quoad,** until:

Exspectas, dum dīcat, *You are waiting till he speaks,* i. e., that he may speak. Cic.

II. With **antĕquam, priusquam,** before:

Antĕquam de re pūblĭca dīcam, *before I* (can) *speak of the republic.* Cic.

XLV. The Subjunctive is used in Indirect Questions (525):

Quid dies fĕrat, incertum est, *What a day may bring forth is uncertain.* Cic.

XLVI. The Subjunctive by Attraction is often used in clauses dependent upon the Subjunctive (527):

Vĕreor, ne, dum mĭnuĕre vĕlim lăbōrem, augeam, *I fear I shall increase the labor, while I wish to diminish it.* Cic.

XLVII. The Subjunctive is generally used in the Interrogative, Imperative, and Subordinate clauses of the Oratio Oblīqua (529):

Respondit, cur vĕnīret, *He replied, why did he come.* Caes. Scrībit Lăbiēno vĕniat, *He writes to Labienus to come.* Caes.

Imperative.

XLVIII. The Imperative is used in commands, exhortations, and entreaties (535):

Justĭtiam cŏle, *Practise justice.* Cic.

INFINITIVE.

XLIX. The Subject of an Infinitive is put in the Accusative (545):

Sentĭmus călēre ignem, *We perceive that fire is hot.* Cic.

PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

Participles are construed as adjectives (575), Gerunds and Supines as nouns (559, 567). But

L. The Supine in *um* is used after verbs of motion to express PURPOSE (569):

Vēnērunt res rĕpĕtītum, *They came to demand restitution.* Liv.

PARTICLES.

LI. Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS (582):

Săpientes fēlīcĭter vīvunt, *The wise live happily.* Cic.

1. For PREPOSITIONS, see Rule XXXII.
2. CONJUNCTIONS are mere connectives. See 587 and 588.
3. INTERJECTIONS are expressions of emotion or mere marks of address. See 589.

CHAPTER VIII.

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS AND CLAUSES.

SECTION I.

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

592. The Latin admits of great variety in the arrangement of the different parts of the sentence, thus affording peculiar facilities both for securing proper emphasis and for imparting to its periods that harmonious flow which characterizes the Latin classics. But with all this freedom and variety, there are certain general laws of arrangement which it will be useful to notice.

I. General Rules.

593. The Subject followed by its modifiers occupies the first place in the sentence, and the Predicate preceded by its modifiers the last place:

Sol ŏriens diem confĭcit, *The sun rising makes the day.* Cic. Anĭmus aeger semper errat, *A diseased mind always errs.* Cic. Miltiădes Athēnas lībĕrāvit, *Miltiades liberated Athens.* Nep.

594. Emphasis and euphony often affect the arrangement of words:

I. Beginning.—Any word, except the subject, may be made *emphatic* by being placed at the beginning of the sentence:

Sĭlent lēges inter arma, *Laws are silent in war.* Cic. *Nŭmĭtōri* Rĕmus dēdĭtur, *Remus is delivered to Numitor.* Liv. *Igni* ăger vastābātur, *The field was ravaged with fire.* Sall.

II. End.—Any word, except the predicate, may be rendered *emphatic* by being placed at the end of the sentence:

Nōbis non sătisfăcit ipse *Dēmosthĕnes, Even Demosthenes does not satisfy us.* Cic. Consŭlātum pĕtīvit *nunquam, He never sought the consulship.* Cic. Exsistit quaedam quaestio *subdiffĭcĭlis, There arises a question somewhat difficult.* Cic.

III. Separation.—Two words naturally connected, as a noun and its adjective, or a noun and its genitive, are sometimes made *emphatic* by separation:

Objurgātiōnes nonnunquam incĭdunt *nĕcessāriae, Sometimes necessary reproofs occur.* Cic. Justĭtiae fungātur offĭciis, *Let him discharge the duties of justice.* Cic.

595. Contrasted Groups.—When two groups of words are contrasted, the order of the first is often reversed in the second:

Frăgĭle corpus ănĭmus sempĭternus mŏvet, *The imperishable soul moves the perishable body.* Cic.

596. Kindred Words.—Different forms of the same word, or different words of the same derivation, are generally placed near each other:

Ad sĕnem sĕnex de sĕnectūte scripsi, *I, an old man, wrote to an old man on the subject of old age.* Cic. Inter se ăliis ălii prōsunt, *They mutually benefit each other.* Cic.

597. WORDS WITH A COMMON RELATION.—A word which has a common relation to two other words connected by conjunctions, is placed,

I. Generally before or after both:

Pācis et artes et glōria, *both the arts and the glory of peace.* Liv. Belli pācisque artes, *the arts of war and of peace.* Liv.

A Genitive or Adjective following two nouns may qualify both, but it more frequently qualifies only the latter:

Haec percunctātio ac dēnuntiātio belli, *this inquiry and this declaration of war.* Liv.

II. Sometimes directly after the first before the conjunction:

Hŏnōris certāmen et glōriae, *a struggle for honor and glory.* Cic. Agri omnes et măria, *all lands and seas.* Cic.

II. SPECIAL RULES.

598. MODIFIERS OF NOUNS.—The modifiers of a noun generally follow it. They may be either adjectives or nouns:

Pŏpŭlus Rōmānus dēcrēvit, *The Roman people decreed.* Cic. Hērŏdŏtus, păter histŏriae, *Herodotus, the father of history.* Cic. Līber de offīciis, *the book on duties.* Cic.

1. NOUN.—A noun as modifier of another noun is generally an appositive, a genitive, or a case with a preposition, as in the examples.

2. WITH EMPHASIS.—Modifiers when emphatic are placed before their nouns:

Tuscus āger Rōmāno adjăcet, *The Tuscan territory borders on the Roman.* Liv. *Cătōnis* ōrātiōnes, *Cato's orations.* Cic.

3. ADJECTIVE AND GENITIVE.—When a noun is modified both by an adjective and by a genitive, the usual order is, *adjective—genitive—noun:*

Magna cīvium pēnūria, *a great scarcity of citizens.* Cic.

599. MODIFIERS OF ADJECTIVES.—The modifiers of the adjective generally precede it, but, if not adverbs, they may follow it:

Făcĭle doctissĭmus, *unquestionably the most learned.* Cic. Omni aetāti commūnis, *common to every age.* Cic. Avĭdus laudis, *desirous of praise.* Cic.

600. MODIFIERS OF VERBS.—The modifiers of the verb generally precede it:

Glōria virtūtem sĕquĭtur, *Glory follows virtue.* Cic. Mundus deo pāret, *The world is subject to God.* Cic. Vehĕmenter dixit, *He spoke vehemently.* Cic. Glōria dūcĭtur, *He is led by glory.* Cic.

1. After the Verb.—When the verb is placed for the sake of emphasis at the beginning of the sentence, the modifiers, of course, follow. See first example under 594. I.

2. Emphasis.—An emphatic modifier may of course stand at the beginning or at the end of the sentence (594):

Făcillĭme cognoscuntur ădŏlescentes, *Most easily are the young men recognized.* Cic.

3. Two or more Modifiers.—Of two or more modifiers belonging to the same verb, that which in thought is most intimately connected with the verb stands next to it, while the others are arranged as emphasis and euphony may require:

Rex Scȳthis bellum intŭlit, *The king waged war against the Scythians.* Nep. Mors propter brĕvĭtātem vītae nunquam longe ăbest, *Death is never far distant, in consequence of the shortness of life.* Cic.

601. Modifiers of Adverbs.—The modifiers of the adverb generally precede it, but a Dative often follows it:

Valde vehĕmenter dixit, *He spoke very vehemently.* Cic. Congruenter nātūrae vīvit, *He lives agreeably to nature.* Cic.

602. Special Words.—Some words have a favorite place in the sentence, which they seldom leave. Thus,

I. The *Demonstrative* generally precedes its noun:

Custos hujus urbis, *the guardian of this city.* Cic.

1. *Ille* in the sense of well-known (450. 5) generally follows its noun, if not accompanied by an adjective:

Mēdēa illa, *that well-known Medea.* Cic.

2. *Quisque*, the indefinite pronoun, follows some other word:

Justītia suum cuīque trībuit, *Justice gives to every man his due* (his own). Cic.

II. *Prepositions* generally stand directly before their cases, but *tĕnus* and *versus* follow their cases:

In Asiam prōfūgit, *He fled into Asia.* Cic. Collo tĕnus, *up to the neck.* Ov.

1. After a Pronoun.—The preposition frequently follows the relative, sometimes other pronouns, and sometimes even nouns, especially in poetry:

Res qua de ăgitur, *the subject of which we are treating.* Cic. Ităliam contra, *over against Italy.* Virg.

2. Cum Appended.—See 184, 9 and 187, 3.

3. Intervening Words.—Genitives, adverbs, and a few other words sometimes stand between the preposition and its case. In adjurations *per* is usually separated from its case by the Acc. of the object adjured, or by some other word; and sometimes the verb *ōro* is omitted:

Post Alexandri magni mortem, *after the death of Alexander the Great.* Cic. Ad bĕne vīvendum, *for living well.* Cic. Per te deos ōro, *I pray you in the name of the gods.* Ter. Per ĕgo vos deos = per deos ĕgo vos ōro (*ōro* understood). *I pray you in the name of the gods.* Curt.

III. *Conjunctions* and *Relatives*, when they introduce clauses, generally

stand at the beginning of such clauses; but *autem*, *ĕnim*, *quĭdem*, *quŏque*, *vēro*, and generally *ĭgĭtur*, follow some other word:

Si peccāvi, ignosce, *If I have erred, pardon me.* Cic. Ii qui sŭpĕriōres sunt, *those who are superior.* Cic. Ipse *autem* omnia vĭdēbat, *But he himself saw all things.* Cic.

1. EMPHATIC WORDS and RELATIVES often precede the conjunction.

Id ut audīvit, *as he heard this.* Nep. Quae quum ita sint, *since these things are so.* Cic.

2. NE—QUIDEM takes the emphatic word or words between the two parts:

Ne in oppidis quidem, *not even in the towns.* Cic.

3. *Quidem* often follows *pronouns*, *superlatives*, and *ordinals*:

Ex me quidem nihil audiet, *He will hear nothing from me.* Cic.

4. *Que*, *ve*, *ne*, introducing a clause or phrase, are generally appended to the first word, but if that word is a monosyllabic preposition, they are often appended to the next word: *ad plēbemve*, for *adve*, etc., or to the people; *in fŏrōque* = *inque fŏro*, and in the forum. *Apud quosque*, and before whom, occurs for euphony.

IV. *Non*, when it qualifies some single word, stands directly before that word, but when it is particularly emphatic, or qualifies the entire clause, it generally stands at the beginning of the clause:

Hac villa cărēre non possunt, *They are not able to do without this villa.* Cic. Non fuit Jūpĭter mĕtuendus, *Jupiter was not to be feared.* Cic.

V. *Inquam*, sometimes *Aio*, introducing a quotation, follows one or more of the words quoted. The subject, if expressed, generally follows its verb:

Nihil, inquit Brūtus, quod dīcam, *Nothing which I shall state, said Brutus.* Cic.

VI. The Vocative rarely stands at the beginning of a sentence. It usually follows an emphatic word:

Perge, Laeli, *Proceed, Laelius.* Cic.

SECTION II.

ARRANGEMENT OF CLAUSES.

I. IN COMPLEX SENTENCES.

603. SUBJECT OR PREDICATE.—A clause used as the subject of a complex sentence (357) generally stands at the beginning of the sentence, and a clause used as the predicate at the end:

Quid dies fĕrat incertum est, *What a day may bring forth is uncertain.* Cic. Exĭtus fuit ōrātiōnis: sĭbi nullam cum his ămīcĭtiam esse, *The close of the oration was, that he had no friendship with these men.* Caes.

1. This arrangement is the same as that of the simple sentence. See 593.

2. Emphasis and euphony often have the same effect upon the arrangement of clauses as of words. See 594.

604. Subordinate Elements.—Clauses used as the subordinate elements of complex sentences, admit three different arrangements:

I. They are generally inserted within the principal clause, like the subordinate elements of a simple sentence:

Hostes, ŭbi prīmum nostros ĕquĭtes conspexĕrunt, cĕlĕrĭter nostros perturbāvĕrunt, *The enemy, as soon as they saw our cavalry, quickly put our men to route.* Caes. Sententia, quae tūtissĭma vĭdēbātur, vīcit, *The opinion which seemed the safest prevailed.* Liv.

II. They are often placed before the principal clause:

Quum quiescunt, prŏbant, *While they are quiet, they approve.* Cic. Quālis sit ănĭmus, ănĭmus nescit, *The soul knows not what the soul is.* Cic. Si haec cīvĭtas est, cīvis sum ego, *If this is a state I am a citizen.* Cic.

This arrangement is especially common when the subordinate clause either refers back to the preceding sentence, or is preparatory to the thought of the principal clause. Hence *temporal*, *conditional*, and *concessive* clauses often precede the principal clause. Hence also, in sentences composed of correlative clauses with *is—qui*, *tālis—quālis*, *tantus—quantus*, *tum—quum*, *ĭta—ut*, etc., the relative member, i. e., the clause with *qui*, *quālis*, *quantus*, *quum*, *ut*, etc., generally precedes.

III. They sometimes follow the principal clause:

Enītĭtur ut vincat, *He strives that he may conquer.* Cic. Sol effĭcit ut omnia flōreant, *The sun causes all things to bloom.* Cic.

This arrangement is common when the subordinate clause is either intimately connected in thought with the following sentence or is explanatory of the principal clause. Hence clauses of *Purpose* and *Result* generally follow the principal clause, as in the examples. See also examples under articles 489–499.

605. Latin Period.—A complex sentence in which the subordinate clause is inserted within the principal clause, as under I., is called a Period in the strict sense of the word.

In a freer sense the same term is also applied to any sentence in which the clauses are so arranged as not to make complete sense before the end of the sentence. In this sense the examples under II. are periods.

II. In Compound Sentences.

606. Clauses connected by coördinate conjunctions (587) generally follow each other in the natural order of the thought, as in English:

Sol ruit et montes umbrantur, *The sun descends and the mountains are shaded.* Virg. Gyges a nullo vĭdēbātur, ipse autem omnia vĭdēbat, *Gyges was seen by no one, but he himself saw all things.* Cic.

PART FOURTH.

PROSODY.

607. Prosody treats of Quantity and Versification.

CHAPTER I.

QUANTITY.

608. The time occupied in pronouncing a syllable in poetry is called its quantity. Syllables are accordingly characterized as *long*, *short*, or *common*.[1]

609. The quantity of syllables is determined by poetic usage. But this usage conforms in many cases to general laws, while in other cases it seems somewhat arbitrary.

1. Syllables whose quantity conforms to known rules are said to be long or short by *rule*.
2. Syllables whose quantity does not conform to known rules are said to be long or short by *authority*.
3. The rules for quantity are either *general*, i. e., applicable to most syllables, or *special*, i. e., applicable to particular syllables.

SECTION I.

GENERAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

610. Rule I.—Diphthongs and Contracted syllables are long:

Haec, coena, aura; ălīus *for* ăliius, cōgo *for* coĭgo, occīdo *for* occaedo, nīl *for* nihil.

1. *Prae* in composition is usually short before a vowel: *praĕăcūtus*, *praĕustus*.
2. *Ua*, *ue*, *ui*, *uo*, and *uu*, are not strictly diphthongs, and accordingly do not come under this rule.

[1] Sometimes long and sometimes short.

611. Rule II.—A vowel is LONG BY POSITION before *j*, *x*, *z*, or any two consonants:[1]

Mājor, rēxi, gāza, mēnsa, servus.

1. But one of the consonants at least must belong to the same word as the vowel: *ăb rūpe, pĕr saxa.*

1) A final vowel is not usually affected by consonants at the beginning of the following word, except before *sc, sp, sq*, and *st*, where a short vowel is rare.

2) *H* and *U* must never be treated as consonants under this rule,[2] except in rare instances where *u* is so used by Synaeresis. See 669. II.

2. Before a mute followed by *L* or *R*, a vowel naturally short becomes common: *dŭplex, ăgri, pătres.*

1) In Greek words a vowel is also common before a mute with *M* or *N*: *Tĕcmessa, cy̆cnus.*

2) A mute at the end of the first part of a compound before a liquid at the beginning of the second part makes the preceding vowel long by position: *āb-rumpo, ōb rŏgo.*

3) A vowel naturally long, of course, remains long before a Mute and Liquid: *ācer, ācris.*

3. Compounds of *jŭgum* retain the short vowel before *j*: *bĭjŭgus, quadrĭjŭgus.*

612. Rule III.—A vowel before another vowel, or a diphthong, is SHORT BY POSITION:

Pĭus, pĭae, dŏcĕo, trăho.

No account is taken of the breathing *h*; hence *a* in *traho* is treated as a vowel before another vowel.

Exceptions.—The following are long before a vowel:

1. **A**,—(1) in the genitive ending *āï* of Dec. I.: *aulāi*,—(2) in proper names in *āius*: *Cāius* (Cajus),—(3) before *ia, ie, io, iu*, in the verb *aio.*

2. **E**,—(1) in the ending *ēi* of Dec. V. when preceded by a vowel: *diēi*; and sometimes in *fidĕi, rĕi, spĕi*,—(2) in proper names in *eius*: *Pompēius*,—(3) in *ēheu.*

3. **I**,—(1) in the verb *fīo*, when not followed by *er*: *fīam, fīēbam*, but *fĭĕri*,—(2) in the genitive *ălīus*. In other genitives *i* in *ius* is common in poetry, though long in prose, but the *i* in *altĕrius* is short,—(3) in *dīus, a, um*, for *dīvus, a, um*,—(4) sometimes in *Dīāna.*

4. **O**,—is common in *ŏhe.*

---

[1] Strictly speaking, the syllable, and not the vowel, is lengthened, but the language of convenience refers the quantity of the syllable to the vowel.

[2] *Qu, gu*, and *su*, when *u* has the sound of *w*, are treated as single consonants.

5. In Greek words vowels are often long before a vowel, because long in the original: *āer, Aenēas, Brīsēis, Mĕnĕlāus, Trōes.*

This often occurs in proper names in—*ēa, īa, ēus, īus, āon, īon, āis, ōis, ōius*: Mēdēa, Alexandrīa, Pēnēus, Dārīus, Orīon.

SECTION II.

SPECIAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

I. Quantity of Final Syllables.

I. Monosyllables.

613. Rule IV.—Monosyllables are long:

ā, dā, tē, sē, dē, sī, quī, dō, prō, tū, dōs, pēs, sīs, bōs, sūs, pār, sōl.

Exceptions.—The following are short:

1. Enclitics: *quĕ, vĕ, nĕ, cĕ, tĕ, psĕ, ptĕ.*
2. Monosyllables in b, d, l, m, t: *ăb, ăd, fĕl, sŭm, ĕt;* except *sāl, sōl.*
3. *Ăn, bĭs, cĭs, cŏr, ĕs, făc, fĕr, ĭn, ĭs, nĕc, ŏs* (ossis), *pĕr, tĕr, quă* (indefinite), *quĭs, vĭr;* probably also *văs* (vădis), and sometimes *hĭc* and *hŏc* as Nom. or Acc. forms.

II. Polysyllables.

1. FINAL VOWELS.

614. Rule V.—In words of more than one syllable, the endings **a, e,** and **y** are short; **i** and **u,** long; **o,** common:

Viă, măriă, mărĕ, mĭsȳ; mărī, audī, fructū, cornū; ămō, sermō.

615. **A** *final* is short: *mensă, templă, bŏnă.*

Exceptions.—*A final* is long,

1. In the Ablative: *mensā, bŏnā, illā.*
2. In the Vocative of Greek nouns in *as* (rarely *es*): *Aenēā, Pallā.*
3. In Verbs and Indeclinable words: *ămā, cūrā; circā, juxtā, anteā, frustrā.* Except *ĭtă, quiă, ejă,* and *pŭtă* used adverbially.

616. **E** *final* is short: *servĕ, urbĕ, rēgĕ.*

Exceptions.—*E final* is long,

1. In Dec. I. and V.: *ĕpĭtŏmē, rē, diē.* Hence in the compounds—*hŏdiē, prīdiē, postrīdiē, quārē.*
2. In Greek plurals of Dec. III.: *Tempē, mĕlē.*

3. In the Sing. Imperative Act. of Conj. II.: *mŏnē, dŏcē.* But *e* is sometimes short in *căvĕ.*

4. In *fĕrē, fermē, ohē,* and in Adverbs from adjectives of Dec. II.: *doctē, rectē.* Except *bĕnĕ, mălĕ, infernĕ, internĕ, sŭpernĕ.*

617. **Y** *final* is short: *mīsў̆, mōlў̆, cōtў̆.*

Exceptions.—Contracted endings are, of course, long: *mīsȳ = mīsyī.*

618. **I** *final* is long: *servī, bŏnī, audī.*

Exceptions.—*I final* is,

1. Common in *mihĭ, tĭbĭ, sĭbĭ, ĭbĭ, ŭbĭ.* But

Observe compounds *ĭbīdem, ĭbīque, ŭbīque, ŭbīnam, ŭbīvīs, ŭbīcunque, nĕcŭbĭ, sīcŭbĭ.*

2. Short,—(1) in *nĭsĭ, quăsĭ, cuĭ* (when a dissyllable),—(2) in the Greek ending sĭ of Dat. and Abl. Plur.: *Troăsĭ,*—(3) in the Dat. and Voc. Sing., which end short in the Greek: Alexĭ, Părĭdĭ.

Utī follows the rule, but not the compounds, *ŭtĭnam, ŭtĭque, sīcŭtĭ.*

619. **U** *final* is long: *fructū, cornū, dictū.*

Exceptions.—*Indŭ* for *in,* and *nĕnŭ* for *non.*

620. **O** *final* is common: *ămŏ, sermŏ, virgŏ.*

Exceptions.—*O final* is,

1. Long,—(1) in Datives and Ablatives: *servō, illō, quō,*—(2) in Greek words, when it represents a long Greek vowel: *ēchō, Argō,*—(3) in Adverbs: *falsō, multō, ergō, quandō, omnīnō;* except those mentioned under 2 below.

2. Short in *duŏ, ĕgŏ, octŏ,* and the adverbs *cĭtŏ, illĭcŏ, immŏ, mŏdŏ,* and its compounds, *dummŏdŏ, quōmŏdŏ,* etc.

2. FINAL SYLLABLES IN MUTES OR LIQUIDS,—

C, D, L, M, N, R, T.

621. Rule VI.—In words of more than one syllable,

Final syllables in **c** are long;

Final syllables in **d, l, m, n, r, t,** are short:

ālēc, illūc; illŭd, consŭl, ămĕm, carmĕn, ămŏr, căpŭt.

Exceptions.—The following occur,

1. *Dōnĕc* and *liĕn.*

2. *M final* with the preceding vowel is generally elided before a vowel. See 669. I.

3. In Greek words,—(1) **en** is long; often also *an, in, on, yn*: *Hymēn, Anchīsēn, Tītān, Delphīn, Actaeōn, Phorcȳn*,—(2) **er** is long in *aēr, aethēr, crātēr*, and a few other words with long ending in the original.

4. This rule does not, of course, apply to syllables long by previous rules.

3. FINAL SYLLABLES IN S.

622. Rule VII.—In words of more than one syllable, the endings **as, es,** and **os** are long; **is, us, ys,** short:

ămās, mensās, mŏnēs, nūbēs, hōs, servōs; ăvĭs, urbĭs, bŏnŭs, servŭs, chlămy̆s.

623. **As** *final* is long: *Aeneās, bŏnās, illās.*

Exceptions.—*As final* is short,

1. In *anăs* and in a few Greek nouns in **ăs**: *Arcăs, lampăs.*
2. In Greek Accusatives of Dec. III.: *Arcădăs, hērōăs.*

624. **Es** *final* is long: *nūbēs, mŏnēs.*

Exceptions.—*Es final* is short,

1. In Nominatives Singular of Dec. III., which increase short in the Gen.: *mīlĕs* (ĭtis), *obsĕs* (ĭdis), *interprĕs* (ĕtis). Except *ăbiēs, ăriēs, păriēs, Cĕrēs*, and compounds of *pēs;* as *bĭpēs, trĭpēs*, etc.
2. In *pĕnĕs* and the compounds of *ĕs;* as *ădĕs, pŏtĕs.*
3. In Greek words,—(1) in the plural of those which increase in the Gen.: *Arcădĕs, Trōădes*,—(2) in a few neuters in **es**: *Hippŏmĕnĕs*,—(3) in a few Vocatives singular: *Dēmosthĕnĕs.*

625. **Os** *final* is long: *custōs, virōs.*

Exceptions.—*Os final* is short,

1. In *compŏs, impŏs, exŏs.*
2. In Greek words with the ending short in the Greek: *Dēlŏs, mēlŏs.*

626. **Is** *final* is short: *ăvĭs, cănĭs.*

Exceptions.—*Is final* is long,

1. In Plural Cases: *mensīs, servīs, vōbīs.*

Hence *fŏrīs, grātīs, ingrātīs.*

2. In Nominatives of Dec. III., increasing long in the Gen.: *Quirīs* (ītis), *Sălămīs* (īnis).
3. In the Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. of Conj. IV.: *audīs.*

Māvīs, quīvīs, ŭtervīs follow the quantity of *vīs.*

4. In the Sing. Pres. Subjunct. Act.: *possīs, vĕlīs, nōlīs, mālīs.*
5. Sometimes in the Sing. of the Fut. Perf. and of the Perf. Subj.: *ămāvĕrīs, dŏcuĕrīs.*

627. **Us** *final* is short: *servŭs*, *bŏnŭs*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Us final* is long,

1. In Nominatives of Dec. III. increasing long in the Gen.: *virtūs* (ūtis), *tellūs* (ūris).

But *pălūs* (u short) occurs in Horace. Ars P. 65.

2. In Dec. IV., in the Gen. Sing., and in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. Plur.: *fructūs*.

3. In Greek words ending long in the original: *Panthūs*, *Sapphūs*, *trĭpūs*.

But we have *Oedĭpŭs* and *pŏlÿpŭs*.

628. **Ys** *final* is short: *chlămÿs*, *chĕlÿs*.

EXCEPTIONS.—Contracted endings are of course long: *Erynnÿs* for *Erynnyes*.

II. Quantity in Increments.

629. A word is said to *increase* in declension, when it has in any case more syllables than in the nominative singular, and to have as many *increments of declension* as it has additional syllables: *sermo*, *sermōnis*, *sermōnĭbus*.

Sermōnis, having one syllable more than *sermo*, has one increment, while *sermōnĭbus* has two increments.

630. A verb is said to *increase* in conjugation, when it has in any part more syllables than in the second person singular of the present indicative active, and to have as many *increments of conjugation* as it has additional syllables: *ămās*, *ămātis*, *ămābātis*.

Amātis has one increment, *ămābātis* two.

631. If there is but one increment, it is uniformly the penult, if there are more than one, they are the penult with the requisite number of syllables before it. The increment nearest the beginning of the word is called the *first* increment, and those following this are called successively the *second*, *third*, and *fourth* increments. Thus

In *ser-mon[1]-ĭ[2]-bus*, the first increment is *mon*, the second *i*; and in *mon-u[1]-e[2]-ra[3]-mus*, the first is *u*, the second *e*, the third *ra*.

I. Increments of Declension.

632. RULE VIII.—In the Increments of Declension, **a** and **o** are long; **e**, **i**, **u**, and **y**, short:

aetas, aetātis, aetātĭbus; sermo, sermōnis; puer, puĕri, puĕrōrum;

fulgur, fulgŭris; chlămys, chlamȳdis; bŏnus, bonārum, bonōrum; ille, illārum, illōrum; mĭser, misĕri; supplex, supplĭcis; sătur, satŭri.

Vowels long or short by position are of course excepted.

633. **A** in the increments of declension is long: *pax, pācis; bŏnus, bonārum; duo, duābŭs.*

Exceptions.—*A* is short in the first increment,

1. Of masculines in **al** and **ar**: *Hannĭbal, Hannibălis; Caesar, Caesăris.* Except *Car* and *Nar.*

2. Of nouns in **s** preceded by a consonant: *daps, dăpis; Arabs, Arăbis.*

3. Of Greek nouns in **a** and **ăs**: *poēma, poēmătis; Pallas, Pallădis.*

4. Of the following:—(1) *baccar, hēpar, jŭbar, lar, nectar, par* and its compounds,—(2) *ănas, mas, vas* (vădis),—(3) *sal, fax,* and a few rare Greek words in *ax.*

634. **O** in the increments of declension is long: *hŏnor, honōris; bŏnus, bonōrum; duo, duōbus.*

Exceptions.—*O* is short in the first increment,

1. Of Neuters in Decl. III.: *aequor, aequŏris; tempus, tempŏris.* Except *os* (ōris), *ădor* (adŏris), and comparatives.

2. Of words in **s** preceded by a consonant; *ĭnops, inŏpis.* Except *Cyclops* and *hydrops.*

3. Of *arbor, bos, lĕpus,—compos, impos, mĕmor, immĕmor,—Allŏbrox, Cappădox, praecox.*

4. Of most Patrials: *Măcēdo, Macedŏnis.*

5. Of many Greek nouns,—(1) those in **or**: *rhētor, Hector,*—(2) many in **o** and **on** increasing short in Greek: *aēdon, aedŏnis,*—(3) in Greek compounds in **pus**: *trĭpus* (ŏdis), *Oedĭpus.*

635. **E** in the increments of declension is short: *puer, puĕri; līber, libĕri.*

Exceptions.—*E* is long in the first increment,

1. Of Decl. V., except in the forms *fidĕi, rĕi,* and *spĕi;* as *diēi, diērum, diēbus, rēbus.*

2. Of nouns in **ēn**, mostly Greek: *liēn, liēnis; Sīrēn, Sirēnis.* So *Anio, Aniēnis.*

3. Of *Celtĭber, Iber, ver,—hēres, lŏcŭples, merces, quies, inquies, rĕquies, plebs,—lex, rex, ālec, ālex, vervex.*

4. Of a few Greek words in **es** and **er**, except *aēr* and *aether;* as *lĕbes, lebētis; crāter, cratēris.*

636. **I** in the increments of declension is short: *mīles, mīlitis, mīlitibus; anceps, ancĭpitis.*

Exceptions.—*I* is long in the first increment,

1. Of most words in **ix**: *rādix, radīcis; fēlix, felīcis.*

But short in: *appendix, călix, Cĭlix, fīlix, fornix, nix, pix, sălix, strix,* and a few others, chiefly proper names.

2. Of *dis*, *glis*, *lis*, *vis*, *Quiris*, *Samnis*.
3. Of *delphin* and a few rare Greek words.
4. For quantity of the ending **ius**, see 612. 3.

637. **U** in the increments of declension is short: *dux*, *dŭcis*; *arcus*, *arcŭbus*; *sătur*, *satŭri*.

Exceptions.—*U* is long in the first increment,

1. Of nouns in **us** with the genitive in **uris**, **utis**, **udis**: *jus*, *jūris*; *sălus*, *salūtis*; *pălus*, *palūdis*. Except *intercus*, *Ligus*, *pĕcus*.
2. Of *fur*, *frux*, *lux*, *plus*, *Pollux*.

638. **Y** in the increments of declension is short: *chlămys*, *chlamy̆dis*.

Exceptions.—This increment occurs only in Greek words, and is long in those in *yn*, *ȳnis*, and in a few others.

II. *Increments of Conjugation.*

639. Rule IX.—In the Increments of Conjugation (630), **a**, **e**, and **o** are long; **i** and **u** short:

ămāmus, amēmus, amātōte, rĕgĭmus, sŭmus.

1. In ascertaining the increments of the irregular verbs, *fĕro*, *vŏlo*, and their compounds, the full form of the second person, *feris*, *volis*, etc., must be used. Thus in *fĕrēbam* and *vŏlēbam*, the increments are *re* and *le*.

2. In ascertaining the increments of reduplicated forms (254), the reduplication is not counted. Thus *dĕdĭmus* has but one increment *di*.

640. **A** in the increments of conjugation is long: *ămāre*.

Exceptions.—*A* is short in the first increment of **do**: *dăre*, *dăbam*, *circumdăbam*.

641. **E** in the increments of conjugation is long: *mŏnēre*.

Exceptions.—*E* is short before **r**,

1. In the tenses in **ram**, **rim**, **ro**: *ămāvĕram*, *amavĕrim*, *amavĕro*; *rexĕrat*, *rexĕrit*.
2. In first increment of the Present and Imperfect of Conj. III.: *rĕgĕre*, *regĕris*, *regĕrem*, *regĕrer*.
3. In the Fut. ending **bĕris**, **bĕre**: *ămābĕris*, or -ĕre, *mŏnēbĕris*.
4. Rarely in the Perf. ending **erunt**: *stĕtĕrunt* for *stetērunt*. See 235, also *Systole*, 669. IV.

642. **O** in the increments of conjugation is long without exception: *mŏnētōte*, *rĕgĭtōte*.

643. **I** in the increments of conjugation is short: *rĕgĭtis, rexĭmus.*

Exceptions.—*I* is long, except before a vowel,

1. In the first increment of Conj. IV., except *ĭmus* of the Perf.: *audīre, audīvi, audītum; sentio, sentīmus, sensĭmus* (perf.).

2. In Conj. III. in the first increment of perfects and supines in **īvi** and **ītum** (276. III.) and of the parts derived from them (except *ĭmus* of Perf.: *trivĭmus*): *cŭpīvi, cupīvĕrat, cupītus; pĕtīvi, petītus; căpessīvi, capessītūrus. Gāvīsus* from *gaudeo* follows the same analogy.

3. In the endings **īmus** and **ītis** of Pres. Subj.: *sīmus, sītis; vĕlīmus, velītis* (289. 3).

4. In *nōlīte, nolīto, nolītōte,* and in the different persons of *ībam, ībo,* from *eo* (295).

5. Sometimes in the endings **rĭmus** and **rĭtis** of the Fut. Perf. and Perf. Subj.: *ămāvĕrĭmus, ămāvĕrĭtis.*

644. **U** in the increments of conjugation is short: *vŏlŭmus.*

Exceptions.—*U* is long in the Supine and the parts formed from it: *vŏlūtum, volūtūrus, ămātūrus.*

III. Quantity of Derivative Endings.

645. Rule X.—The following derivative endings have the penult long:

I. **ābrum, āorum, ātrum:**
flābrum, sĭmŭlācrum, ărātrum.

II. **ēdo, īdo, ūdo; āgo, īgo, ūgo:**
dulcēdo, cŭpīdo, sōlĭtūdo; vŏrāgo, ŏrīgo, aerūgo.

III. **āis, ēis, ōis, ōtis, īne, ōne**—*in patronymics:*
Ptŏlĕmāis, Chrȳsēis, Mīnōis, Icăriōtis, Nērīne, Acrĭsiōne.

Except *Dănăis, Phōcăis, Thēbăis, Nērēis.*

IV. **ēla, īle; ālis, ēlis, ūlis:**
quĕrēla, ŏvīle; mortālis, fĭdēlis, cŭrūlis.

V. **ānus, ēnus, ōnus, ūnus; āna, ēna, ōna, ūna:**
urbānus, ĕgēnus, patrōnus, trĭbūnus; membrāna, hăbēna, annōna, lăcūna.

Except *galbănus.*

VI. **āris, ārus; ōrus, ōsus; āvus, īvus:**
sălūtāris, ăvārus; cănōrus, ănĭmōsus; octāvus, aestīvus.

VII. **ātus, ītus, ūtus; ātim, ītim, ūtim; ētum, ēta:**

ālātus, turrītus, cornūtus; singŭlātim, vĭrītim, trĭbūtim; quercētum, mŏnēta.

Except (1) *ănhēlĭtus, fortuĭtus, grātuĭtus, hālĭtus, hospĭtus, servĭtus, spīrĭtus,* (2) *affătim, stătim,* and adverbs in *ĭtus,* as *dīvīnĭtus;* and (3) participles provided for by 639.

VIII. **ēni, īni, ōni,**—*in distributives:*

septēni, quīni, octōni.

646. Rule XI.—The following derivative endings have the penult short:

I. **ădes, iădes, ĭdes,**—*in patronymics:*

Aenēădes, Lāërtiădes, Tantălĭdes.

Except (1) those in *īdes* from nouns in *eus* and *es;* as, *Pēlīdes* (Peleus), *Neoclīdes* (Neocles), and (2) *Amphiărāīdes, Amȳclīdes, Bēlīdes, Crŏnīdes, Lȳcurgīdes.*

II. **iăcus, ĭcus, ĭdus:**

Cŏrinthiăcus, mŏdĭcus, cŭpĭdus.

Except *ămīcus, antīcus, aprīcus, mendīcus, postīcus, pŭdīcus.*

III. **ŏlus, ŏla, ŏlum; ŭlus, ŭla, ŭlum; cŭlus, cŭla, cŭlum,**—*in diminutives:*

fīliŏlus, fīliŏla, atriŏlum; hortŭlus, virgŭla, oppĭdŭlum; floscŭlus, partĭcŭla, mūnuscŭlum.

IV. **ĕtas, ĭtas,**—*in nouns;* **ĭter, ĭtus,**—*in adverbs:*

piĕtas, vērĭtas; fortĭter, dīvīnĭtus.

V. **ātĭlis, ĭlis, bĭlis,**—*in verbals;* **ĭnus,**—*in adjectives denoting material* or *time:*

versātĭlis, dŏcĭlis, ămābĭlis; ădămantĭnus, cedrĭnus, crastĭnus, diūtĭnus.

Except *mātūtīnus, rĕpentīnus, vespertīnus.*

1. **Ilis** in adjectives from nouns usually has the penult long: *cīvīlis, hostīlis, puĕrīlis, vĭrīlis.*

2. **Inus** denoting *characteristic* (325) usually has the penult long: *cănīnus, ĕquīnus, mărīnus.*

647. Rule XII.—The following derivative endings have the antepenult long:

I. **āceus, ūceus, āneus, ārius, ārium, ōrius:**

rŏsāceus, pannūceus, sŭbĭtāneus, cĭbārius, cŏlumbārium, censōrius.

II. **ābĭlis, ātĭlis, ātĭcus:**

ămābĭlis, versātĭlis, ăquātĭcus.

III. **āginta, īginti, ēsĭmus,**—*in numerals:*
nōnāginta, vīginti, centēsĭmus.

648. Rule XIII.—The following derivative endings have the antepenult short:

I. **ĭbĭlis, ĭtūdo, ŏlentus, ŭlentus.**
crēdĭbĭlis, sōlĭtūdo, vīnŏlentus, ŏpŭlentus.

II. **ŭrio,**—*in desideratives:*
ēsŭrio, emptŭrio, partŭrio.

IV. Quantity of Stem Syllables.

I. In Primitives.

649. The quantity of stem-syllables in primitive words, when not determined by the General Rules (Sec. I.), is in most cases best referred to authority. Thus,

In māter, cēdo, scrībo, dōno, ūtor, the first syllable is *long by authority*, while in păter, tĕgo, mĭco, sŏno, ŭter, it is *short by authority.*

650. Rule XIV.—The quantity of stem-syllables remains unchanged in inflection:

In declension,—ăvis, ăvem; nūbes, nūbium.
In comparison,—lĕvis, lĕvior, lĕvissĭmus.
In conjugation,—mŏneo, mŏnēbam, mŏnui.

1. Position may however affect the quantity: *ăger, āgri* (611, 612); *possum, pŏtui; solvo, sŏlūtum; volvo, vŏlūtum.*

Here *ă* becomes *ā* before *gr*. The *o* in *possum, solvo,* and *volvo,* long only by position, becomes short before a single consonant.

2. *Gigno* gives *gĕnui, gĕnĭtum,* and *pōno, pŏsui, pŏsĭtum.*
3. See also 651, 652.

651. Dissyllabic Perfects and Supines have the first syllable long, unless short by position:

jŭvo, jūvi, jūtum; fŏveo, fōvi, fōtum.

1. These Perfects and Supines, if formed from Presents with the first syllable short, are exceptions to 650.

2. Seven Perfects have the first syllable short:
bĭbi, dĕdi, fĭdi, scĭdi, stĕti, stĭti, tŭli.

3. Ten Supines have the first syllable short:

cĭtum, dătum, ĭtum, lĭtum, quĭtum, rătum, rŭtum, sătum, sĭtum, stătum.[1]

652. In trisyllabic Reduplicated Perfects the first two syllables are short:

cădo, cĕcĭdi; căno, cĕcĭni; disco, dĭdĭci.

1. *Caedo* has *cĕcīdi* in distinction from *cĕcĭdi* from *cădo*.

2. The second syllable may be made long by position: *cŭcurri, mŏmordi*.

II. In Derivatives.

653. Rule XV.—Derivatives retain the quantity of their primitives:

bŏnus, bŏnĭtas; tĭmeo, tĭmor; ănĭmus, ănĭmōsus; cīvis, cīvĭcus; cūra, cūro.

1. Frequentatives in ito, have i short: *clāmĭto*. See 332. I.

2. In a few Derivatives the short vowel of the primitive is lengthened:

hŏmo,	hūmānus,	rĕgo,	rēx, rēgis, rēgŭla,
lăteo,	lāterna,	sĕcus,	sēcius,
lĕgo,	lēx, lēgis,	sĕdeo,	sēdes, sēdŭlus,
măcer,	mācĕro,	sĕro,	sēmen,
mŏveo,	mōbĭlis,	suspĭcor,	suspīcio,
persŏno,	persōna,	tĕgo,	tēgŭla.

3. In a few Derivatives the long vowel of the primitive is shortened:

ācer,	ăcerbus,	nōtum,	nŏta,
dīco,	dĭcax,	ōdi,	ŏdium,
dūco,	dux, dŭcis,	sōpio,	sŏpor,
fīdo,	fĭdes,	vādo,	vădum,
lūceo,	lŭcerna,	vōx, vōcis,	vŏco.
mōles,	mŏlestus,		

This change of quantity in some instances is the result of contraction: *mŏvĭbĭlis, mŏĭbĭlis, mōbĭlis*, and in others it serves to distinguish words of the same orthography: as the verbs *lĕgis, lĕges, rĕgis, rĕges, sĕdes*, from the nouns *lēgis, lēges, rēgis, rēges, sēdes*, or the verbs *dūcis, dūces, fīdes*, from the nouns *dŭcis, dŭces, fĭdes*.

III. In Compounds.

654. Rule XVI.—Compounds generally retain the quantity of their elements:

antĕ-fĕro, dē-fĕro, dē-dūco, ĭn-aequālis, prō-dūco.

1. The change of a vowel or diphthong does not affect the quantity:

dē-lĭgo (*lĕgo*), oc-cĭdo (*cădo*), oc-cīdo (*caedo*).

[1] From *sisto*, but *stătum* from *sto*.

2. INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS.—**Dī, sē,** and **vē** are long, **rĕ** short: **ne** sometimes long and sometimes short:

dīdūco, sēdūco, vēcors, rĕdūco, nēdum, nĕfas:

1) *Di* is short in *dĭrĭmo, dĭsertus.*

2) *Ne* is long in *nēdum, nēmo, nēquam, nēquāquam, nēquidquam, nēquĭtia,* and *nēve.* In other words it is short.

3) *Re* is sometimes lengthened in a few words: *rēlĭgio, rēlĭquiae, rēpĕrit, rēpŭlit, rētŭlit,* etc.

3. CHANGE OF QUANTITY.—In a few words the quantity of the second element is changed. Thus

Dīco gives *-dĭcus; jūro, -jĕro; nōtus, -nĭtus; nūbo, nŭba:* mălĕ-dĭcus, de-jĕro, cog-nĭtus, prō-nŭba.

4. PRO.—*Pro* is short in the following words:

Prŏcella, prŏcul, prŏfānus, prŏfāri, prŏfecto, prŏfestus, prŏfĭciscor, prŏfĭteor, prŏfŭgio, prŏfŭgus, prŏfundus, prŏnĕpos, prŏneptis, prŏtervus, and most Greek words, as *prŏphēta,* generally in *prŏfundo, prŏpāgo, prŏpīno,* rarely in *prŏcūro, prŏpello.*

5. STEM.—When the first element is the stem of a word (338. III.), it is often followed by a short connecting vowel:

căl-ĕ-făcio, lăb-ĕ-făcio, bell-ĭ-gĕro, aed-ĭ-fĭco, art-ĭ-fex, ampl-ĭ-fĭco, lŏc-ŭ-ples.

Before *făcio* in a few compounds *e* is sometimes lengthened: *lĭquēfăcio, pătēfăcio, putrēfăcio, tĕpēfacio.* The first *e* in *vĭdēlĭcet* is long.

6. I LONG.—*I* is long,—(1) in the first part of compounds of *dies:* mĕrīdies, prīdie, postrīdie, quŏtīdie, trīduum, and (2) in the contracted forms, *bīgae, trīgae, quadrīgae, īlĭcet, scīlĭcet, tībĭcen* for *tībiicen.*

But *i* is short in *bĭduum* and *quădrĭduum.*

7. O LONG.—*O* is long in *contrō-, intrō-, retrō-,* and *quandō-* in composition; as: *contrōversia, intrōdūco, retrōverto, quandōque,* but *quandŏquĭdem.*

8. SPECIAL WORDS.—*Hŏdie, quăsi, quŏque,* and *sĭquĭdem,* have the first syllable short.

CHAPTER II.

VERSIFICATION.

SECTION I.

GENERAL VIEW OF THE SUBJECT

655. Latin Versification is based upon Quantity and Accent. Syllables are combined into certain metrical groups called Feet, and feet, singly or in pairs, are combined into Verses.

I. METRICAL FEET.

656. Feet are either simple or compound. For convenience of reference we add the following list:

I. Simple Feet.

DISSYLLABIC FEET.

Spondee,	*two long syllables,*	– –	Lēgēs.
Trochee,[1]	*a long and a short,*	– ⏑	Lēgĭs.
Iambus,	*a short and a long,*	⏑ –	Părēns.
Pyrrhic,	*two short,*	⏑ ⏑	Pătĕr.

TRISYLLABIC FEET.

Dactyl,	*a long and two short,*	– ⏑ ⏑	cārmĭnă.
Anapaest,	*two short and a long,*	⏑ ⏑ –	bŏnĭtās.
Tribrach,	*three short,*	⏑ ⏑ ⏑	dŏmĭnŭs.
Molossus,	*three long,*	– – –	lībērtās.
Amphibrach,	*a short, a long, and a short,*	⏑ – ⏑	ămīcŭs.
Amphimacer,[2]	*a long, a short, and a long,*	– ⏑ –	mīlĭtēs.
Bacchīus,	*a short and two long,*	⏑ – –	dŏlōrēs.
Antibacchīus,	*two long and a short,*	– – ⏑	pāstōrĭs.

II. Compound Feet.

These are only compounds of the dissyllabic feet, and all have four syllables.

---

[1] Sometimes called *Choree.* [2] Also called *Cretic.*

Dispondee,	*double spondee,*	— — — —	praēcēptōrēs.
Ditrochee,	*double trochee,*	— ⏑ — ⏑	cīvĭtātĭs.
Diiambus,	*double iambus,*	⏑ — ⏑ —	ămoēnĭtās.
Proceleusmatic,	*double pyrrhic,*	⏑ ⏑ ⏑ ⏑	mĕmŏrĭă.
Greater Ionic,	*spondee and pyrrhic,*	— — ⏑ ⏑	sēntēntĭă.
Lesser Ionic,	*pyrrhic and spondee,*	⏑ ⏑ — —	ădŏlēscēns.
Choriambus,	*trochee* (choree), *and iambus,*	— ⏑ ⏑ —	īmpătĭēns.
Antispast,	*iambus and trochee,*	⏑ — — ⏑	vĕrēcūndŭs.
First Epitrite,	*iambus and spondee,*	⏑ — — —	ămāvērūnt.
Second Epitrite,	*trochee and spondee,*	— ⏑ — —	cōndĭtōrēs.
Third Epitrite,	*spondee and iambus,*	— — ⏑ —	aūctōrĭtās.
Fourth Epitrite,	*spondee and trochee,*	— — — ⏑	ōrnāmēntă.
First Paeon,	*trochee and pyrrhic,*	— ⏑ ⏑ ⏑	hīstŏrĭă.
Second Paeon,	*iambus and pyrrhic,*	⏑ — ⏑ ⏑	ămābĭlĭs.
Third Paeon,	*pyrrhic and trochee,*	⏑ ⏑ — ⏑	pŭĕrīlĭs.
Fourth Paeon,	*pyrrhic and iambus,*	⏑ ⏑ ⏑ —	cĕlĕrĭtās.

1. Common Feet.—The feet of most frequent occurrence in the best Latin poets are,

1) The *Dactyl* and *Spondee,* used in the Heroic Hexameter.

2) Less frequent the *Iambus, Trochee, Tribrach, Anapaest,* and *Choriambus.*

2. Groups.—A *Dipody* is a group of two feet; a *Tripody,* of three; a *Tetrapody,* of four, etc. A *Triemimĕris* is a group of three half feet, i. e., a foot and a half; *Penthemimĕris,* of two and a half; *Hephthemimĕris,* of three and a half, etc.

657. Metrical Equivalents.—A long syllable may often be resolved into two short ones, as equivalent to it in quantity, or two short ones may be contracted into a long one. The forms thus produced are metrical equivalents of the original forms. Thus,

The Dactyl becomes a Spondee by contracting the two short syllables into one long syllable; the Spondee becomes a Dactyl by resolving the second syllable, or an Anapaest by resolving the first. Accordingly the Dactyl, the Spondee, and the Anapaest are metrical equivalents. In like manner the Iambus, the Trochee, and the Tribrach are metrical equivalents.

658. Metrical Substitutes.—In certain kinds of verse, feet are sometimes substituted for those which are not their metrical equivalents. Thus,

The Spondee is often substituted for the Iambus or the Trochee, though not equivalent to either. See 679, 682.

659. Ictus or Rhythmic Accent.—As in the pronunciation of a word one or more syllables receive a special stress of voice called accent, so in the pronunciation of a metrical foot one or more syllables receive a special stress of voice called Rhythmic Accent or Ictus.

1. Simple Feet.—Feet consisting of both long and short syllables have the ictus uniformly on the long syllables, unless used for other feet. Thus,

The Dactyl and the Trochee have the ictus on the first syllable; the Anapaest and the Iambus on the last.

2. Equivalents and Substitutes.—These take the ictus of the feet for which they are used. Thus,

The Spondee, when used for the Dactyl, takes the ictus of the Dactyl, i. e., on the first syllable; but when used for the Anapaest, it takes the ictus of the Anapaest, i. e., on the last syllable.

1) Feet consisting entirely of long or entirely of short syllables are generally equivalents or substitutes, and are accented accordingly.

2) When two short syllables of an equivalent take the place of an accented long syllable of the original foot, the ictus rests chiefly on the first of these two. Thus the Dactyl used for the Anapaest takes the ictus on the first short syllable.

3. Compound Feet.—These take the ictus of the feet of which they are composed. Thus,

The *Choriambus* (trochee and iambus) takes the ictus of the trochee on the first syllable and that of the iambus on the last.

But *Ionic* feet are generally read with the ictus on the first long syllable.

660. Arsis and Thesis.—The accented part of each foot is called the Arsis (*raising*); and the unaccented part, Thesis (*lowering*).

II. Verses.

661. A verse is a line of poetry, and is either simple or compound.

I. A Simple verse has one characteristic or fundamental foot, which determines the ictus for the whole verse. Thus,

Every Dactylic Verse has the ictus on the first syllable, because the Dactyl, its characteristic foot, has it on that syllable.

II. A Compound verse has a characteristic foot for each member. See 692.

662. Caesural Pause.—Most verses are divided into two nearly equal parts by a pause or rest called the caesura[1] or caesural pause. See 673, 674.

663. Metrical Names of Verses.—The metrical name of a verse designates,

I. The Characteristic foot. Thus,

---

[1] Caesura (from *caedo*, to cut) means a cutting; it cuts or divides the verse into parts.

Dactylic, Trochaic, and Iambic verses have respectively the Dactyl, the Trochee, and the Iambus as the characteristic foot.

II. The Number of Feet or Measures.[1] Thus,

1. Dactylic Hexameter is Dactylic verse of six measures.

2. A verse consisting of one measure is *Monometer*; of two, *Dimeter*; of three, *Trimeter*; of four, *Tetrameter*; of five, *Pentameter*; of six, *Hexameter*.

III. The Completeness or Incompleteness of the measures. Thus,

1. A verse is termed *Acatalectic*, when its last measure is complete; *Catalectic*, when it is incomplete.

1) A *Catalectic* verse is said to be *catalectic in syllăbam*, *in disyllăbum*, or *in trisyllăbum*, according as the incomplete foot has one, two, or three syllables.

2) A *Brachycatalectic* verse wants the closing foot of the last Dipody.

3) An *Acephalous* verse wants the first syllable of the first foot.

4) A *Hypercatalectic* verse, also called *Hypermeter*, has an excess of syllables.

2. The full metrical name combines the three particulars enumerated under I. II. and III., as *Dactylic Hexameter Acatalectic*, *Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic*, etc.

1) But for the sake of brevity the term *Acatalectic* is often omitted when it can be done without ambiguity.

2) Verses are sometimes known by names which merely designate the number of feet or measures. Thus *Hexameter* (six measures) sometimes designates the *Dactylic Hexameter Acatalectic*, and *Senarius* (six feet), the *Iambic Trimeter Acatalectic*.

664. Special Names of Verses.—Many verses are often designated by names derived from celebrated poets. Thus,

Alcaic from Alcaeus, *Archilochian* from Archilochus, *Sapphic* from Sappho, *Glyconic*, from Glycon, etc.

Verses sometimes receive a name from the kind of subjects to which they were applied: as *Heroic*, applied to heroic subjects; *Paroemiac*, to proverbs, etc.

665. Final Syllable.—The final syllable of a verse may generally be either long or short.

666. Stanza.—A stanza is a combination of two or more verses of different metres into one metrical whole. See 699, 700.

A stanza of two lines is called a *Distich*; of three, a *Tristich*; of four, a *Tetrastich*.

---

[1] A measure is a single foot, except in Anapaestic, Trochaic, and Iambic verses, where it is a Dipody or Pair of feet.

667. Metre.—Metre signifies *measure*, and is used to designate,

1. A Foot or Dipody, as the measure, or metrical element of a verse.
2. A Verse or Stanza, as the measure of a poem.

668. Scanning.—Scanning consists in separating a poem, or verse, into the feet of which it is composed.

III. Figures of Prosody.

669. The ancient poets sometimes allowed themselves, in the use of letters and syllables, certain liberties generally termed Figures of Prosody. These are,

I. Synaloepha.—This is the elision of a final vowel or diphthong, or of a final *m* with the preceding vowel, before a word beginning with a vowel:

Monstr' horrend' inform' ingens, *for* Monstrum horrendum informe ingens. *Virg.*

1. No account is taken of *h*, as it is only a breathing (2. 2). Hence *horrendum* is treated as a word beginning with a vowel.

2. Interjections, *o*, *heu*, *ah*, *proh*, etc., are not elided, but in other words the elision generally takes place in the best poets. But see *Virg. Aen.* III. 74.

3. Final *e* in the interrogative *ne* is sometimes elided before a consonant:

Pyrrhīn' connūbia servas? *for* Pyrrhīne connūbia servas? *Virg.*

4. The elision of *s* occurs in the early poets:

Ex omnĭbu' rēbus, *for* Ex omnĭbus rēbus. *Lucr.*

5. *Synaloepha* may occur at the end of a line when the next line begins with a vowel. It is then called *Synapheia.*

II. Synaeresis.—This is the contraction of two syllables into one:

aureā, dēinde, dēinceps, īīdem, īīsdem.

1. Synaeresis is of frequent application. It may unite

1) Two successive vowels, as in the examples above.

2) A vowel and a diphthong: *ēaēdem.*

3) Two vowels separated by *h*, as only a breathing: *prohĭbeat*, pronounced *proibeat.*

2. In the different parts of *dēsum*, *ee* is generally pronounced as one syllable: *dēēsse, dēēst, dēērat, dēērit*, etc.: so *ei* in the verb *anteeo: antēīre, antēīrem, antēīs, antēīt.*

3. *I* and *u* before vowels are sometimes used as consonants with the sound of *y* and *w*: Thus, *ăbĭĕtĕ* and *ărĭĕte*, become *ăbyĕtĕ* and *ăryĕtĕ*; *gĕnŭă* and *tĕnŭĕs* become *gĕnwă* and *tĕnwĕs.*

III. Diaeresis.—This is the resolution of one syllable into two:

aurāï *for* aurae, Orphĕŭs *for* Orphēūs, soluendus, *for* solvendus, silua *for* silva.

As a matter of fact the Latin poets seldom, if ever, actually divide any syllable into two, and the examples generally explained by *diaeresis* are only ancient forms, occasionally used by them for effect or convenience.

IV. Systole.—This is the shortening of a long syllable:

tŭlĕrunt *for* tŭlērunt, stĕtĕrunt *for* stĕtērunt (235), vĭdĕ'n *for* vĭdēsne.

This is a rare poetical license, occurring most frequently in the final vowels and diphthongs, which would otherwise be elided. See 669. I. 2.

V. Diastole.—This is the lengthening of a short syllable:

Prīămĭdes *for* Prĭămĭdes.

1. This is a poetical license, used chiefly in proper names and in final syllables in the arsis of the foot (660). In the latter case the syllable is said to be lengthened by the *ictus*.

SECTION II.

VARIETIES OF VERSE.

I. Dactylic Verse.

670. All Dactylic Verses are measured by single feet (663. II.), and consist of Dactyls and their metrical equivalents, Spondees. The ictus is on the first syllable of every foot.

I. Dactylic Hexameter.

671. The Dactylic Hexameter consists of six feet. The first four are either Dactyls or Spondees, the fifth a Dactyl, and the sixth a Spondee (665).

The scale is,[1]

´ ˘ ˘ | ´ ˘ ˘ | ´ ˘ ˘ | ´ ˘ ˘ | ´ ˘ ˘ | ´ ⏓.
— — | — — | — — | — — | |

Quādrŭpĕ- | dāntĕ pŭ- | trem sŏnĭ- | tū quătĭt | ūngŭlă | cāmpum. *Virg.*

Armă vĭ- | rūmquĕ că- | nō Trō- | jāe quī | prīmŭs ăb | ōris. *Virg.*

Infān- | dūm rē- | gīnă jŭ- | bēs rĕnŏ- | vārĕ dŏ- | lōrem. *Virg.*

Illi[2] īn- | tēr sē- | sē māg- | nā vī | brāchĭă | tōllūnt. *Virg.*

---

[1] In this scale the sign ´ marks the *ictus* (659).

[2] The final *i* of *illi* is elided by *Synaloepha* (669).

672. Varieties.—The scale of dactylic hexameters admits sixteen varieties, produced by varying the relative number and arrangement of dactyls and spondees.

1. Illustration.—Thus a verse may contain,

1) Five dactyls and one spondee, as in the first example above.

2) Four dactyls and two spondees. These again admit four different arrangements.

3) Three dactyls and three spondees, as in the second and third examples above. But these again admit six different arrangements.

4) Two dactyls and four spondees. These admit four different arrangements.

5) One dactyl and five spondees, as in the fourth example.

2. Effect of Dactyls.—Dactyls produce a rapid movement and are adapted to lively subjects. Spondees produce a slow movement and are adapted to grave subjects. But generally the best effect is produced in successive lines by variety in the number and arrangement of dactyls and spondees.

3. Spondaic Line.—The Hexameter sometimes takes a spondee in the fifth place. It is then called Spondaic, and generally has a dactyl as its fourth foot:

Cără dĕ- | ūm sŏbŏ- | lēs măg- | num Jŏvĭs | incrē- | mentum. *Virg.*

673. Caesural Pause.—The favorite caesural pause of the Hexameter is *after the arsis*, or *in the thesis*, of the third foot:

Armă- | tī tēn- | dūnt; ‖ īt | clāmŏr ĕt | āgmĭnĕ | fāctō. *Virg.*

Infān- | dūm, rē- | gīnă, ‖ jŭ- | bēs rĕnŏ- | vārĕ dŏ- | lōrem. *Virg.*

In the first line the caesural pause, marked ‖, is after *tendunt*, after the arsis of the third foot; and in the second line after *regina*, in the thesis (*nă jŭ*) of the third foot.

1. Rare Caesural Pause.—The caesural pause is sometimes in the fourth foot, and then an additional pause is often introduced in the second foot. Sometimes indeed this last becomes the principal pause:

Crēdĭdĕ- | rīm; ‖ vēr | īllŭd ĕ- | rāt, ‖ vēr | māgnŭs ă- | gēbat. *Virg.*

2. Bucolic Caesura.—A pause between the fourth and fifth feet is generally called the *bucolic caesura*, because often used in pastoral poetry:

Ingēn- | tem coe- | lō sŏnĭ- | tūm dĕdĭt; ‖ īndĕ sĕ- | cūtus. *Virg.*

3. Faulty Caesura.—A caesural pause at the end of the third foot is regarded as a blemish in the verse:

Pūlvĕrŭ- | lēntŭs ĕ- | quīs fŭrĭt; ‖ ōmnēs | ārmă rĕ- | quīrunt. *Virg.*

674. Caesura and Caesural Pause.—The ending of a word within a foot always produces a *caesura*. A line may therefore have several caesuras, but generally only one of these (sometimes two) is marked by the caesural pause:

Armă vĭ- | rumque că- | nō, || Trō- | jaē quī | prīmŭs ăb | ōris. *Virg.*

1. Here there is a caesura in every foot except the last, but only one of these, that after *căno*, has the caesural pause.

2. In determining which caesura is to be marked by the pause the reader must be guided by the sense, introducing the pause where there is a pause of sense, or where at least it will not interfere with the sense.

3. The caesura, with or without the pause, is an important feature in every hexameter. A line without it is prosaic in the extreme:

Rōmaē | moēnĭă | tĕrrŭĭt | ĭmpĭgĕr | Hānnĭbăl | ārmis. *Enn.*

675. Last Word of the Hexameter.—The last word of the Hexameter should be either a dissyllable or a trisyllable. See examples above.

1. Two monosyllables are not particularly objectionable, and sometimes even produce a happy effect:

Praecĭpĭ- | tant cū- | rae, || tūr- | bātăquĕ | fūnĕrĕ | mēns est. *Virg.*

Est is indeed often used even when not preceded by another monosyllable.

2. A single monosyllable, except *est*, is not often used at the end of the line, except for the purpose of emphasis or humor:

Pārtŭrĭ- | ūnt mōn- | tēs, || nas- | cētūr | rīdĭcŭ- | lūs mus. *Hor.*

II. Dactylic Pentameter.

676. The Dactylic Pentameter consists of two parts separated by the caesural pause. Each part consists of two Dactyls and the arsis of a third. The Spondee may take the place of the Dactyl in the first part, but not in the second:

–́ ⏑ ⏑ | –́ ⏑ ⏑ | –́ || –́ ⏑ ⏑ | –́ ⏑ ⏑ | –́
– – | – – |

Admŏnĭ- | tū coe- | pī || fŏrtĭŏr | ēssĕ tŭ- | ō. *Ovid.*

1. Pentameter.—The name *Pentameter* is founded on the ancient division of the line into five feet; the first and second being dactyls or spondees; the third, a spondee; the fourth and fifth, anapaests.

2. Elegiac Distich.—The Dactylic Pentameter is seldom, if ever, used, except in the Elegiac Distich, which consists of the Hexameter followed by the Pentameter:

Sēmĭsĕ- | pūltă vĭ- | rūm || cūr- | vīs fĕrĭ- | ūntŭr ă- | rātris
Ossă, rŭ- | īnō- | sās || ŏccŭlĭt | hērbă dŏ- | mūs. *Ov.*

III. Other Dactylic Verses.

677. The other varieties of dactylic verse are less important, but the following deserve mention:

I. Dactylic Tetrameter.—This consists of the last four feet of the Hexameter:

Ibĭmŭs | O sŏcĭ- | ī, cŏmĭ- | tēsque. *Hor.*

In compound verses, as the Greater Archilochian, the tetrameter in composition with other metres, has a dactyl in the fourth place. See 691. I.

II. Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic.—This is the Lesser Archilochian, and is identical with the second half of the Dactylic Pentameter:

Arbŏrĭ- | būsquĕ cŏ- | mae. *Hor.*

III. Dactylic Dimeter.—This is the Adonic, and consists of a Dactyl and Spondee:

Mōntĭs ĭ- | māgŏ. *Hor.*

II. Anapaestic Verse.

678. Anapaestic verses consist of Anapaestic dipodies.

An Anapaestic dipody consists of two Anapaests, but admits Spondees or Dactyls as equivalents.

I. Anapaestic Dimeter consists of two dipodies:

Vĕnĭēnt ⋮ ānnīs || saecŭlă ⋮ sērīs.[1] *Sen.*

This is sometimes catalectic (663. III. 1), and has only a long syllable in place of the last foot. It is then called *Paroemiac.*

II. Anapaestic Monometer consists of one dipody:

Dătă rēs ⋮ pătrĭae. *Auson.*

1. In Anapaestic verse Dactyls are used sparingly, and are generally followed by Spondees. Each dipody generally ends with a word.

2. The last syllable is not common, as in most kinds of verse (665), but subject to the ordinary rules of quantity.

3. Anapaestic verse does not occur in the best Latin Poets.

III. Trochaic Verse.

679. Trochaic verses consist of Trochaic dipodies.

A Trochaic dipody consists of two Trochees, or of a Trochee and a Spondee; but it admits the Tribrach as the equivalent of the Trochee, and the Anapaest, of the Spondee. The first foot has a heavier ictus than the second:

---

[1] In verses measured by dipodies, a dotted line is placed between the feet, a single line between the dipodies, and a double line in the place of the caesural pause.

```
–́ ⏑   ⋮ –́ ⏑
⏑ ⏑ ⏑ ⋮ ⏑ ⏑ ⏑
      ⋮ – –
      ⋮ ⏑ ⏑ –.
```

I. Trochaic Tetrameter Catalectic.

680. This consists of four Trochaic Dipodies with the last foot incomplete. The caesural pause is at the end of the fourth foot, and the incomplete dipody admits no equivalents:

```
–́ ⏑   ⋮ –́ ⏑    | –́ ⏑   ⋮ –́ ⏑    || –́ ⏑   ⋮ –́ ⏑    | –́ ⏑ ⋮ –́
⏑ ⏑ ⏑ ⋮ ⏑ ⏑ ⏑  | ⏑ ⏑ ⏑ ⋮ ⏑ ⏑ ⏑  || ⏑ ⏑ ⏑ ⋮ ⏑ ⏑ ⏑  |     ⋮
      ⋮ – –    |       ⋮ – –    ||       ⋮ – –    |     ⋮
      ⋮ ⏑ ⏑ –  |       ⋮ ⏑ ⏑ –  ||       ⋮ ⏑ ⏑ –  |     ⋮
```

Nūllă ⋮ vōx hū- | mānă ⋮ cōnstăt || ābsquĕ ⋮ sĕptĕm | līttĕ- ⋮ ris,
Rītĕ ⋮ vōcā- | lēs vŏ- ⋮ căvīt || quās mă- ⋮ gīstră | Graēcĭ- ⋮ a. *Ter. Mau.*

1. In *Proper Names*, a dactyl may be introduced in any foot except the fourth and seventh.

2. The *Proceleusmatic* for the Spondee sometimes occurs.

3. In *Comedy* the Spondee and its equivalents occur in the odd feet, as well as in the even, except in the last dipody.

4. The *Trochaic Tetrameter* also occurs in the earlier poets in its complete form, i. e., with eight full feet:

Ipsĕ ⋮ sūmmīs | sāxīs ⋮ fīxŭs || āspĕ- ⋮ rīs ĕ- | viscĕ- ⋮ rātus. *Enn.*

II. Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic.

681. This consists of two Trochaic Dipodies with the last foot incomplete. In Horace it admits no equivalents and has the following scale,

```
–́ ⏑ ⋮ –́ ⏑ | –́ ⏑ ⋮ –́
```

Aulă ⋮ dīvĭ- | tēm mă- ⋮ net. *Hor.*

1. This is sometimes called *Iambic Dimeter Acephalous*, i. e., an Iambic Dimeter with the first syllable wanting.

2. A *Trochaic Tripody*,—three Trochees—technically called a *Trochaic Dimeter Brachycatalectic*, or an *Ithyphallicus*, occurs in the Greater Archilochian. See 691. I.

3. For *Sapphic Verse*, see 691. IV.

4. For *Phalaecian*, see 691. V.

IV. Iambic Verse.

682. Iambic verses consist of Iambic dipodies.

An Iambic dipody consists of two Iambi, or of a Spondee and an Iambus; but it admits the Tribrach as the equivalent of the Iambus, and sometimes the Dactyl or the

Anapaest, of the Spondee. The first foot has a heavier ictus than the second.

In its full form it has the following scale:

⏑ ´–	⋮	⏑ ´–
⏑ ⏑ ⏑	⋮	⏑ ⏑ ⏑
– –	⋮	
– ⏑ ⏑	⋮	
⏑ ⏑ –	⋮	

I. Iambic Trimeter.

683. This verse, also called *Senarius*, consists of three Iambic Dipodies.

I. The first dipody has the full form.

II. The second admits no Anapaest.

III. The third admits no Anapaest or Dactyl, and in its second foot, no equivalent whatever.

IV. The Caesural Pause is usually in the third foot, but may be in the fourth.

The scale is,

⏑ ´– ⋮	⏑ ´– |	⏑ ´– ⋮	⏑ ´– |	⏑ ´– ⋮	⏑ ´–̆
⏑ ⏑ ⏑ ⋮	⏑ ⏑ ⏑ |	⏑ ⏑ ⏑ ⋮	⏑ ⏑ ⏑ |	⏑ ⏑ ⏑ ⋮	
– – ⋮	|	– – ⋮	|	– – ⋮	
– ⏑ ⏑ ⋮	|	– ⏑ ⏑ ⋮	|	⋮	
⏑ ⏑ – ⋮	|	⋮	|	⋮	

Quĭd ōb- ⋮ sĕrā- | tĭs ‖ au- ⋮ rĭbūs | fūndĭs ⋮ prĕces? *Hor.*
Nĕptū- ⋮ nŭs ăl- | tō ‖ tūn- ⋮ dĭt hĭ- | bĕrnūs ⋮ sălo. *Hor.*
Hās ĭn- ⋮ tĕr ĕpŭ- | lās ‖ ūt ⋮ jŭvāt | pāstās ⋮ ŏves. *Hor.*

1. Proper Names.—In proper names an Anapaest is admissible in any foot, except the last, but must be in a single word.

2. Horace.—In Horace the only feet freely admitted are the Iambus and the Spondee; their equivalents, the Tribrach, the Dactyl and Anapaest, are used very sparingly. The Tribrach never occurs in the fifth foot and only once in the first. The Anapaest occurs only twice in all.

3. Comedy.—In Comedy great liberty is taken, and the Spondee and its equivalents are freely admitted in any foot except the last.

4. Choliambus.—This is a variety of *Iambic Trimeter* with a Spondee in the sixth foot and an Iambus in the fifth:

Mĭsĕr ⋮ Cătūl- | lĕ dē- ⋮ sĭnās | ĭnĕp- ⋮ tīre. *Catul.*

Choliambus means *lame* or *limping Iambus*, and is so called from its limping movement. It is sometimes called *Scazon* for the same reason, and sometimes *Hipponactēan*, from Hipponax, its reputed inventor.

684. Iambic Trimeter Catalectic.—This is the Iambic Trimeter with the last foot incomplete. But in Horace the only feet admissible besides the Iambus are the Tri-

brach in the second foot and the Spondee in the first and third:

⏑ –́ ⁝ ⏑ –́ | ⏑ –́ ⁝ ⏑ –́ | ⏑ –́ ⁝ ⏑̄
– – ⁝ ⏑ ⏑ ⏑ | – – ⁝ |

Vŏcā- ⁝ tŭs āt- | quĕ nōn ⁝ vŏcā- | tŭs au- ⁝ dit. *Hor.*

II. Iambic Dimeter.

685. This verse consists of two Iambic Dipodies with their usual equivalents. But in Horace the only feet admissible besides the Iambus are the Tribrach in the second place, the Spondee in the first and third, and the Dactyl in the first:

⏑ –́ ⁝ ⏑ –́ | ⏑ –́ ⁝ ⏑ –
– – ⁝ ⏑ ⏑ ⏑ | – – ⁝
– ⏑ ⏑ ⁝ | ⁝

Quĕrūn- ⁝ tŭr īn | sīlvīs ⁝ ăves. *Hor.*
Imbrēs ⁝ nĭvēs- | quĕ cōm- ⁝ părat. *Hor.*
Ast ĕgŏ ⁝ vĭcīs- | sīm rī- ⁝ sĕro. *Hor.*

1. Iambic Dimeter Hypermeter occurs in Horace with the following scale:

⏑ –́ ⁝ ⏑ –́ | – –́ ⁝ ⏑ –́ | ⏑̄
– – ⁝ | ⁝ |

Pŭĕr | quĭs ĕx | aulā | căpĭl- | lis. *Hor.*

This is sometimes called the Alcaic Enneasyllabic verse and forms the third line in the Alcaic Stanza. See 700. I.

2. Iambic Dimeter Catalectic does not occur in the pure Latin poets. Its scale is,

⏑ –́ ⁝ ⏑ –́ | ⏑ –́ ⁝ ⏑̄
– – ⁝ | ⁝

Mănū ⁝ pŭĕr | lŏquā- ⁝ ci. *Pet. Arb.*

3. Iambic Dimeter Acephalous.—This name is sometimes given to the Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic (681), which is then treated as Iambic Dimeter without the first syllable. Thus

Au- ⁝ lă dī- | vĭtēm ⁝ mănet. *Hor.*

III. Iambic Tetrameter.

686. The Iambic Tetrameter is little used in Latin except in Comedy. It consists of four Iambic Dipodies with their usual equivalents. The caesural pause is usually after the fourth foot:

Quāntum īn- ⁝ tĕllĕx- | ī mŏdŏ ⁝ sĕnīs || sĕntēn- ⁝ tĭām | dē nūp- ⁝ tĭīs. *Ter.*

The *Iambic Tetrameter Catalectic* belongs mostly to comedy, but occurs also in Catullus:

Quŏt cōm- ⁝ mŏdās | rēs āt- ⁝ tŭlī ? || quŏt au- ⁝ tem ădĕ- | mī cū- ⁝ rās. *Ter.*

V. Ionic Verse.

687. The Ionic a Minōre consists entirely of Lesser Ionics. It may be either Tetrameter or Dimeter:

⏑ ⏑ –́ – | ⏑ ⏑ –́ – | ⏑ ⏑ –́ – | ⏑ ⏑ –́ –

⏑ ⏑ –́ – | ⏑ ⏑ –́ –

Sĭmŭl ūnctōs | Tĭbĕrīnīs | hŭmĕrōs lā- | vĭt ĭn ūndīs. *Hor.*

Nĕquĕ sēgnī | pĕdĕ vĭctus. *Hor.*

1. Horace has this metre only in one short ode (III. 12). In some editions this ode consists entirely of Tetrameters; but in others it is arranged in stanzas of three lines; the first two, Tetrameters, and the third, a Dimeter.

2. In this verse the last syllable is not common, but subject to the ordinary rules of quantity, as in the Anapaestic verse. See 678. 2.

3. The Ionic a Majore, *Sotadēan Verse,* scarcely occurs in Latin, except in Comedy. In its pure state it consists of three Greater Ionic feet and a Spondee, but in Martial the third foot is a Ditrochee:

–́ – ⏑ ⏑ | –́ – ⏑ ⏑ | –́ – ⏑ ⏑ | –́ ⏓

–́ ⏑ – ⏑

Hās cūm gĕmĭ- | nā cōmpĕdĕ | dēdĭcāt că- | tēnās. *Mart.*

VI. Choriambic Verse.

688. Choriambic verses begin with a Spondee followed by one, two, or three Choriambi, and end with an Iambus.

In Horace the Choriambic verse uniformly begins with the Spondee, but in some of the other poets the Trochee, the Anapaest, or the Iambus occasionally takes the place of the Spondee.

689. A Choriambic verse with one Choriambus is called the *Glyconic;* or, if catalectic, the *Pherecratēan;* with two, the *Asclepiadēan;* with three, the Greater *Asclepiadēan.*

I. The Glyconic has the following scale:

–́ – | –́ ⏑ ⏑ –́ | ⏑ ⏓́

Dōnĕc | grātŭs ĕrām | tĭbi. *Hor.*

II. The Pherecratean is catalectic, but otherwise identical with the Glyconic. Its scale is,

–́ – | –́ ⏑ ⏑ –́ | ⏓

Vīx dū- | rārĕ cărī- | nae. *Hor.*

III. The ASCLEPIADĒAN has the following scale:

⏗ – | ⏗ ⏑ ⏑ ⏗ || ⏗ ⏑ ⏑ ⏗ | ⏑ ⏗

Maecē- | nās ătăvīs || ēdĭtĕ rēg- | ĭbus. *Hor.*

IV. The GREATER ASCLEPIADĒAN has the following scale:

⏗ – | ⏗ ⏑ ⏑ ⏗ || ⏗ ⏑ ⏑ ⏗ || ⏗ ⏑ ⏑ ⏗ | ⏑ ⏗

Seu plū- | rēs hĭĕmēs, || seu trĭbŭĭt || Jūpĭtĕr ŭl- | tĭmam. *Hor.*

This is sometimes called *Choriambic Pentameter* and sometimes *Choriambic Tetrameter.*

Epichoriambic Verse.

690. When a verse begins with a Second Epitrite followed by one or two Choriambi, and ends with a Bacchīus, it is called Epichoriambic. Of this there are two important varieties:

I. THE SAPPHIC VERSE.—This consists of a Second Epitrite, a Choriambus and a Bacchīus:

⏗ ⏑ ⏗ – | ⏗ ⏑ ⏑ ⏗ | ⏑ ⏗ ⏘

Nāmquĕ mē sīl- | vā || lŭpŭs ĭn | Săbīna. *Hor.*

1. But the Sapphic verse may also be measured as a Trochaic Dipody followed by an Aristophanic verse, i. e., as composed of a Trochee, a Spondee, a Dactyl, and two Trochees. See 691. IV.

2. The Caesural Pause usually occurs after the fifth syllable, as in the example, but sometimes after the sixth.

3. Catullus admits two Trochees in place of the Epitrite.

II. THE GREATER SAPPHIC VERSE.—This differs from the Sapphic proper only in introducing a second Choriambus before the Bacchīus:

⏗ ⏑ ⏗ – | ⏗ ⏑ ⏑ ⏗ || ⏗ ⏑ ⏑ ⏗ | ⏑ ⏗ ⏘

Intĕr aequā- | lēs ĕquĭtăt, || Găllĭcă nĕc | lŭpātis. *Hor.*

This is sometimes improperly called *Choriambic Tetrameter.*

VII. LOGAOEDIC VERSE.

691. Logaoedic verses consist of Dactyls, or their equivalents, followed by Trochees.

I. GREATER ARCHILOCHIAN.—This consists of a Dactylic Tetrameter (677. I.) followed by a Trochaic Tripody. The first three feet are either Dactyls or Spondees; the fourth, a Dactyl; and the last three, Trochees:

´– ⏑ ⏑ | ´– ⏑ ⏑ | ´– ⏑ ⏑ | ´– ⏑ ⏑ || ´– ⏑ ⋮ ´– ⏑ | ´– ⏑̄
– – | – – | – – |

Vītaĕ | sūmmă brĕ- | vīs spēm | nōs vĕtăt, || īnchŏ- ⋮ ărĕ | lōngam. *Hor.*

The caesural pause is between the two members.

II. Alcaic Verse.—This consists of two Dactyls followed by two Trochees:

´– ⏑ ⏑ | ´– ⏑ ⏑ | ´– ⏑ ⋮ ´– ⏑̄

Purpŭrĕ- | ō vărī- | ŭs cŏ- ⋮ lōre. *Hor.*

III. Aristophanic Verse.—This consists of a Dactyl followed by two Trochees:

´– ⏑ ⏑ | ´– ⏑ ⋮ ´– ⏑̄

Cūr nĕquĕ | mīlĭ- ⋮ tāris. *Hor.*

This verse is variously named, *Aristophanic*, *Choriambic Dimeter*, and *Choriambic Dimeter Catalectic*.

IV. Sapphic Verse.—This prefixes to the Aristophanic a Trochaic Dipody consisting of a Trochee and a Spondee (690. I.). The scale is,

´– ⏑ ⋮ ´– – | ´– ⏑ ⏑ | ´– ⏑ ⋮ ´– ⏑̄

Nāmquĕ ⋮ mē sīl- | vā lŭpŭs | īn Să- ⋮ bīna. *Hor.*

Sapphic verse may be classed at pleasure either with the *Logaoedic* verses, as here, or with the *Epichoriambic* verses, as in article 690. I.

V. Phalaecian Verse.—This consists of a Spondee, a Dactyl, and three Trochees:

´– – | ´– ⏑ ⏑ | ´– ⏑ ⋮ ´– ⏑ | ´– ⏑̄

Nōn ēst | vīvĕrĕ, || sēd vă- ⋮ lērĕ | vīta. *Mart.*

This verse is sometimes called, from the number of its syllables, *Hendecasyllabic*, of eleven syllables. It does not occur in Horace. In Catullus it sometimes has a Trochee, or an Iambus, in the first place.

VIII. Miscellaneous Verses.

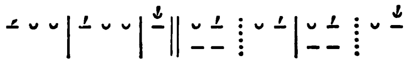
692. Greater Alcaic Verse.—This consists of an *Iambic Penthemimeris* and a pure *Dactylic Dimeter*, i. e., an Iambic Dipody, a long syllable and two Dactyls:

⏑ ´– ⋮ ⏑ ´– | – || ´– ⏑ ⏑ | ´– ⏑ ⏑̄
– – ⋮

Vīdēs ⋮ ŭt āl- | tā || stēt nĭvĕ | cāndĭdum
Sōrāc- ⋮ tĕ nēc | jām || sūstĭnĕ- | ānt ŏnŭs. *Hor.*

1. The Caesural Pause is usually between the two members.
2. In Horace the first foot is generally a Spondee.
3. This verse forms the first and second lines of the Alcaic Stanza. See 700. I.

693. Dactylico-Iambic Verse.—This consists of a pure *Dactylic Penthemimeris* (656. 2) and an *Iambic Dimeter* (685):

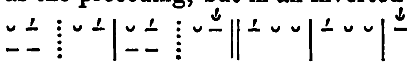


Jussŭs ăb- | īrĕ dŏ- | mūm, || fĕrē- ⁞ băr īn- | cērtō ⁞ pĕde. *Hor.*

1. This verse is sometimes called *Elegiambus.*

2. This verse and the following compounds—the *Iambico-Dactylic* and the *Priapeian*—have the peculiarity that the two members of each may be treated as separate lines, as the last syllable of the first member is common, as at the end of a line.

694. Iambico-Dactylic Verse.—This consists of an *Iambic Dimeter* and a *Dactylic Penthemimeris*, i. e., of the same parts as the preceding, but in an inverted order:

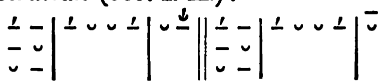


Nīvēs- ⁞ quĕ dē- | dūcūnt ⁞ Jŏvēm: || nūnc mărĕ, | nūnc sīlŭ- | ae. *Hor.*

1. This verse is sometimes called *Iambelegus.*

2. For the final syllable of the first member, see 693. 2.

695. Priapeian Verse.—This consists of a *Glyconic* and a *Pherecratēan* (689. I. II.):



Quērcŭs | ārĭdă rūs- | tĭcă || cōnfōr- | mătă sĕcū- | ri. *Catul.*

1. In this verse, as it appears in Catullus, the Glyconic and the Pherecratēan appear with such variations as are allowed in that poet (688). Hence the Trochee *quercŭs* for the Spondee, in the example.

2. For the final syllable of the first member, see 693. 2.

SECTION III.

THE VERSIFICATION OF VIRGIL, HORACE, OVID, AND JUVENAL.

696. Virgil and Juvenal.—Virgil in his Eclogues, Georgics, and Aeneid, and Juvenal in his Satires use only the Dactylic Hexameter. See 671.

697. Ovid.—Ovid uses the Hexameter in his Metamorphoses, but the Elegiac Distich in his Epistles and other works. See 676. 2.

698. Horace.—Horace uses the Hexameter in his Epistles and Satires, but in his Lyrics, i. e., in his Odes and Epodes, he uses a great variety of Metre.

699. Lyrics of Horace.—Most of the Odes and Epodes consist of Stanzas of two, three, or four verses; but a few of them consist entirely of a single kind of verse.

Lyric Metres of Horace.

700. For convenience of reference the following outline of the Lyric metres of Horace is here inserted.

A. *Stanzas of Four Verses.*

I. Alcaic Stanza.—First and second verses, Greater Alcaics (692); third, Iambic Dimeter Hypermeter (685. I.); fourth, Alcaic (691. II.).

1., 2. ⏑ –́ (or – –) ⋮ ⏑ –́ | – || –́ ⏑ ⏑ | –́ ⏑ ⏑̄
3. ⏑ –́ (or – –) ⋮ ⏑ –́ | – –́ ⋮ ⏑ –́ | ⏑̄
4. –́ ⏑ ⏑ | –́ ⏑ ⏑ | –́ ⏑ ⋮ –́ ⏑̄

In thirty-seven Odes: I. 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37; II. 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20; III. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29; IV. 4, 9, 14, 15.

II. Sapphic and Adonic.—The first three verses, Sapphics (691. IV.); the fourth, Adonic (677. III.).

1., 2., 3. –́ ⏑ ⋮ –́ – | –́ ⏑ ⏑ | –́ ⏑ ⋮ –́ ⏑̄
4. –́ ⏑ ⏑ | –́ ⏑̆–

In Twenty-six Odes: I. 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 38; II. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16; III. 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27; IV. 2, 6, 11, and Sec. Hymn.

III. Asclepiadēan and Glyconic.—The first three verses, Asclepiadēans (689. III.); the fourth, Glyconic (689. I.).

1., 2., 3. –́ – | –́ ⏑ ⏑ –́ | –́ ⏑ ⏑ –́ | ⏑ –
4. –́ – | –́ ⏑ ⏑ –́ | ⏑ –

In nine Odes: I. 6, 15, 24, 33; II. 12; III. 10, 16; IV. 5, 12.

IV. Asclepiadēan, Pherecratēan, and Glyconic.—The first two verses, Asclepiadēans (689. III.); the third, Pherecratēan (689. II.); the fourth, Glyconic (689. I.).

1., 2. –́ – | –́ ⏑ ⏑ –́ | –́ ⏑ ⏑ –́ | ⏑ –
3. –́ – | –́ ⏑ ⏑ –́ | ⏑̄
4. –́ – | –́ ⏑ ⏑ –́ | ⏑ –

In seven Odes: I. 5, 14, 21, 23; III. 7, 13; IV. 13.

B. *Stanzas of Three Verses.*

V. Ionic a Minore (687).—The first two verses, Tetrameters: the third, Dimeter.

1. } ⏑ ⏑ –́ – | ⏑ ⏑ –́ – | ⏑ ⏑ –́ – | ⏑ ⏑ –́ –
2. }
3. ⏑ ⏑ –́ – | ⏑ ⏑ –́ –

In Ode III. 12.

C. *Stanzas of Two Verses.*

VI. Iambic Trimeter and Iambic Dimeter (683, 685).

1.	⏑ –́	⏑ –́	⏑ –́	⏑ –́	⏑ –́	⏑ ⏓
	⏑ ⏑ ⏑	⏑ ⏑ ⏑	⏑ ⏑ ⏑	⏑ ⏑ ⏑	– –	
	– –		– –			
	– ⏑ ⏑		– ⏑ ⏑			
	⏑ ⏑ –					

2.	⏑ –́	⏑ –́	⏑ –́	⏑ ⏓
	– –	⏑ ⏑ ⏑	– –	
	– ⏑ ⏑			

In the first ten Epodes.

VII. Glyconic and Asclepiadēan (689. I., III.).

1. –́ – | –́ ⏑ ⏑ –́ | ⏑ ⏓
2. See IV. 1.

In twelve Odes: I. 3, 13, 19, 36; III. 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28; IV. 1, 3.

VIII. Hexameter and Dactylic Tetrameter (671; 677. I.).

1. –́ ⏑ ⏑ (–́ –) | –́ ⏑ ⏑ (–́ –) | –́ ⏑ ⏑ (–́ –) | –́ ⏑ ⏑ (–́ –) | –́ ⏑ ⏑ | –́ ⏒
2. –́ ⏑ ⏑ (–́ –) | –́ ⏑ ⏑ (–́ –) | –́ ⏑ ⏑ | –́ ⏒

In two Odes: I. 7, 28, and Epode 12.

IX. Hexameter and Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic (671; 677. II.).

1. See VIII. 1.
2. –́ ⏑ ⏑ | –́ ⏑ ⏑ | ⏓

In Ode IV. 7.

X. Hexameter and Iambic Trimeter (671, 683).

See VIII. 1 and VI. 1.

In Epode 16.

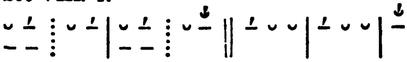
XI. Hexameter and Iambic Dimeter (671, 685).

See VIII. 1 and VI. 2.

In Epodes 14 and 15.

XII. Hexameter and Iambico-Dactylic (671, 694).

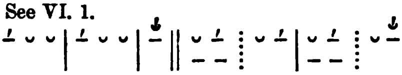
1. See VIII. 1.

2. 

In Epode 13.

XIII. Iambic Trimeter and Dactylico-Iambic (683, 693).

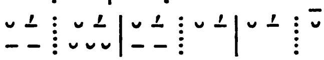
1. See VI. 1.

2. 

In Epode 11.

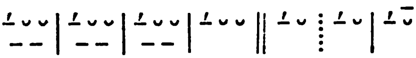
XIV. Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic and Iambic Trimeter Catalectic (681, 684).

1. 

2. 

In Ode II. 18.

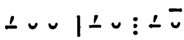
XV. Greater Archilochian and Iambic Trimeter Catalectic (691. I.; 684).

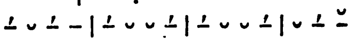
1. 

2. See XIV. 2.

In Ode I. 4.

XVI. Aristophanic and Greater Sapphic (691. III.; 690. II).

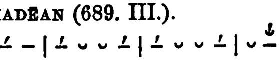
1. 

2. 

In Ode I. 8.

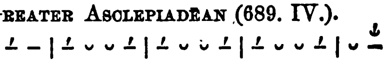
D. *Verses used Singly.*

XVII. Asclepiadean (689. III.).



In three Odes: I. 1; III. 30; IV. 8.

XVIII. Greater Asclepiadean (689. IV.).



In three Odes: I. 11, 18; IV. 10.

XIX. Iambic Trimeter (683). See VI. 1.

In Epode 17.

701. Index to the Lyric Metres of Horace.

The Roman numerals refer to articles in the preceding outline, 700.

BOOK I.

Odes.	Metres.
1,	XVII.
2,	II.
3,	VII.
4,	XV.
5,	IV.
6,	III.
7,	VIII.
8,	XVI.
9,	I.
10,	II.
11,	XVIII.
12,	II.
13,	VII.
14,	IV.
15,	III.
16,	I.
17,	I.
18,	XVIII.
19,	VII.
20,	II.
21,	IV.
22,	II.
23,	IV.
24,	III.
25,	II.
26,	I.
27,	I.
28,	VIII.
29,	I.
30,	II.
31,	I.
32,	II.
33,	III.
34,	I.
35,	I.
36,	VII.
37,	I.
38,	II.

BOOK II.

Odes.	Metres.
1,	I.
2,	II.
3,	I.
4,	II.
5,	I.
6,	II.
7,	I.
8,	II.
9,	I.
10,	II.
11,	I.
12,	III.
13,	I.
14,	I.
15,	I.
16,	II.
17,	I.
18,	XIV.
19,	I.
20,	I.

BOOK III.

Odes.	Metres.
1,	I.
2,	I.
3,	I.
4,	I.
5,	I.
6,	I.
7,	IV.
8,	II.
9,	VII.
10,	III.
11,	II.
12,	V.
13,	IV.
14,	II.
15,	VII.
16,	III.
17,	I.
18,	II.
19,	VII.
20,	II.
21,	I.
22,	II.
23,	I.
24,	VII.
25,	VII.
26,	I.
27,	II.
28,	VII.
29,	I.
30,	XVII.

BOOK IV.

Odes.	Metres.
1,	VII.
2,	II.
3,	VII.
4,	I.
5,	III.
6,	II.
7,	IX.
8,	XVII.
9,	I.
10,	XVIII.
11,	II.
12,	III.
13,	IV.
14,	I.
15,	I.

EPODES.

Epodes.	Metres.
1,	VI.
2,	VI.
3,	VI.
4,	VI.
5,	VI.
6,	VI.
7,	VI.
8,	VI.
9,	VI.
10,	VI.
11,	XIII.
12,	VIII.
13,	XII.
14,	XI.
15,	XI.
16,	X.
17,	XIX.
SECULAR HYMN,	II.

APPENDIX.

I. Figures of Speech.

702. A Figure is a deviation from the ordinary *form*, *construction*, or *signification* of words.

Deviations from the ordinary forms are called *Figures of Etymology*; from the ordinary constructions, *Figures of Syntax*, and from the ordinary significations, *Figures of Rhetoric.*

703. The Figures of Etymology are the following:

1. Aphaeresis takes a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word: *'st* for *est.*
2. Syncope takes a letter or syllable from the middle of a word: *vĭrum* for *vĭrōrum*, *dixe* for *dixisse.*
3. Apocope takes a letter or syllable from the end of a word: *tūn'* for *tūne.*
4. Prosthesis prefixes a letter or syllable to a word: *tĕtŭli* for *tŭli.*
5. Epenthesis inserts a letter or syllable in a word: *Alcŭmēna* for *Alcmēna*, *ălĭtuum* for *ălĭtum.*
6. Paragoge adds a letter or syllable to a word: *dīcier* for *dīci.*
7. Metathesis transposes letters or syllables: *pistris* for *pristis.*
8. Antithesis substitutes one letter for another: *volnus* for *vulnus*, *olli* for *illi.* See also Figures of Prosody, 669.

704. The Figures of Syntax are the following:

I. Ellipsis is the omission of one or more words of a sentence:

Hăbĭtābat ad Jŏvis (*sc. templum*), *He dwelt near the temple of Jupiter.* Liv. Abiit, ēvāsit (*et*), *He has gone, has escaped.* Cic.

1. Asyndeton is an ellipsis of a conjunction. See 587. I. 6; 587. III. 4.
2. Zeugma is an ellipsis which employs a single verb with two subjects or objects, though strictly applicable to only one:

Pācem an bellum gĕrens, *whether at peace* (ăgens) *or waging war.* Sall.

3. Aposiopesis, also called *Reticentia*, used for rhetorical effect, is an ellipsis which leaves the sentence unfinished:

Quos ego —— sed mōtos praestat compōnĕre fluctus. *Whom I —— but it is better to calm the troubled waves.* Virg.

4. Proverbs are often elliptical.
5. Ellipsis of Facio, Dico, Oro. See 460. 3; 602, II. 3.

II. Pleonasm is the use of superfluous words:

Erant ĭtĭnĕra duo, quĭbus ĭtĭnerĭbus exīre possent, *There were two ways by which ways they might depart.* Caes. Eurusque Nŏtusque ruunt, *Both Eurus and Notus rush forth.* Virg.

1. Polysyndeton is a pleonasm in the use of conjunctions, as in the last example.
2. Hendiadys is the use of two nouns with a conjunction, instead of a noun with an adjective or genitive:

Armis virisque, *for* viris armātis, *with armed men.* Tac.

3. ANAPHORA is the repetition of a word at the beginning of successive clauses:

Me cuncta Itălia, me ūniversa cīvitas consŭlem dēclārāvit, *Me all Italy, me the whole state declared consul.* Cic.

4. EPIPHORA is the repetition of a word at the end of successive clauses:

Laelius nāvus ĕrat, doctus ĕrat, *Laelius was diligent, was learned.* Cic.

5. Monosyllabic prepositions are often repeated before successive nouns, regularly so with *et—et:*

Et in bellicis et in cīvīlibus officiis, *both in military and in civil offices.* Cic.

Other prepositions are sometimes repeated.

6. A demonstrative, pronoun or adverb, *id, hoc, illud, sic, ita,* is often used somewhat redundantly to represent a subsequent clause. So also *quid,* in *quid censes* with a clause:

Illud te ōro ut dīligens sis, *I ask you* (that thing) *to be* (that you be) *diligent.* Cic.

7. Pronouns redundant with *quidem.* See 446. 1.

8. Pleonasm often occurs with *licet:*

Ut liceat permittitur = licet, *It is lawful* (is permitted that it is, &c.). Cic.

9. A word is often repeated for emphasis.

10. Circumlocutions with *res, gĕnus, mŏdus,* and *rătio* are common.

III. ENALLAGE is the substitution of one part of speech for another, or of one grammatical form for another:

Pŏpŭlus lāte rex (for *regnans*), *a people of extensive sway* (ruling extensively). Virg. Sērus (*sēro*) in coelum rĕdeas, *May you return late to heaven.* Hor. Vīna cădis (*vīnis cădos*) ŏnĕrāre, *to fill the flasks with wine.* Virg.

1. ANTIMERĬA is the use of one part of speech for another, as in the first two examples.

2. HYPALLAGE is the use of one case for another, as in the last example.

3. SYNESIS is a construction according to sense, without regard to grammatical forms. See 438. 6 and 461.

4. ANACOLŬTHON is a want of harmony in the construction of the different parts of a sentence:

Si, ut dīcunt, omnes Graios esse (*Graii sunt*), *if, as they say, all are Greeks.* Cic.

IV. HYPERBATON is a transposition of words or clauses:

Praeter arma nihil ĕrat sŭper (*sŭperĕrat*), *Nothing remained, except their arms.* Nep. Vălet atque vīvit (*vīvit atque vălet*), *He is alive and well.* Ter.

1. ANASTROPHE is the transposition of words only, as in the first example.

2. HYSTERON PROTERON is a transposition of clauses, as in the second example.

3. TMESIS is the separation of a compound word. See 528. 2. 2).

705. Figures of Rhetoric, also called Tropes, comprise several varieties. The following are the most important.

I. METAPHOR.—This is an implied comparison, and assigns to one object the appropriate name, epithet or action of another:

Rei pūblīcae vulnus (for *damnum*), *the wound of the republic.* Cic. Naufrăgium fortūnae, *the wreck of fortune.* Cic.

II. METONYMY is the use of one name for another naturally suggested by it:

Aequo Marte (for *proelio*) pugnātum est, *They fought in an equal contest.* Liv. Fŭrit Vulcānus (*ignis*), *The fire rages.* Virg.

By this figure the cause is often put for the effect and the effect for the cause; the property for the possessor, the place or age for the people, the sign for the thing signified, etc.: *Mars* for *bellum*, *Vulcānus* for *ignis*, *Bacchus* for *vinum*, *nōbĭlĭtas* for *nōbĭles*, *Graecia* for *Graeci*, *laurea for victōria*, etc.

III. SYNECDOCHE is the use of a part for the whole, or of the whole for a part; of the special for the general, or of the general for the special:

In vestra tecta (*vestras dŏmos*) discēdĭte, *Depart to your homes.* Cic. Stătio măle fīda cărīnis (*nāvibus*), *a station unsafe for ships.* Virg.

IV. IRONY is the use of a word for its opposite:

Lēgātos *bŏnus* (for *mălus*) impĕrātor vester non admīsit, *Your good commander did not admit the ambassadors.* Liv.

1. *Enim*, *ĕtĕnim*, *scīlĭcet*, *vĭdēlĭcet*, *nīmīrum*, *crēdo*, and the like, are often ironical. See 508. 8.

V. HYPERBOLE is an exaggeration:

Ventis et fulmĭnis ōcior ālis, *swifter than the winds and the wings of the lightning.* Virg.

VI. LITOTES denies something instead of affirming the opposite:

Non ŏpus est = pernĭciōsum est, *It is not necessary.* Cic.

II. LATIN AUTHORS.

706. The history of Roman literature embraces about eight centuries, from 250 B. C. to 550 A. D., and has been divided by Dr. Freund into three principal periods:

I. The ANTE-CLASSICAL PERIOD.—From 250 to 81 B. C. The principal authors of this period are:

Ennius,	Plautus,	Terence,	Lucretius.

II. The CLASSICAL PERIOD.—This embraces the Golden and the Silver age:

1. The *Golden Age.*—From 81 B. C. to 14 A. D. The principal authors are:

Cicero,	Nepos,	Horace,	Tibullus,
Caesar,	Livy,	Ovid,	Propertius.
Sallust,	Virgil,	Catullus,	

2. The *Silver Age.*—From 14 to 180 A. D. The principal authors are:

Phaedrus,	The Plinies,	Quintilian,	Persius,
Velleius,	Tacitus,	Suetonius,	Lucan,
The Senecas,	Curtius,	Juvenal,	Martial.

III. The Post-Classical Period.—This embraces the Brazen and the Iron Age:

1. The *Brazen Age.*—From 180 to 476 A.D. The principal authors are:

Justin,	Eutropius,	Lactantius,	Claudian,
Victor,	Macrobius,	Ausonius,	Terentian.

2. The *Iron Age.*—From 476 to 550 A.D. The principal authors are:

Boëthius,	Cassiodorus,	Justinian,	Priscian.

III. The Roman Calendar.

707. The Julian Calendar of the Romans is the basis of our own, and is identical with it in the number of months in the year and in the number of days in the months.

708. Peculiarities.—The Roman calendar has the following peculiarities:

I. The days were not numbered from the beginning of the month, as with us, but from three different points in the month:

1. The Calends, the *first* of each month;
2. The Nones, the *fifth*,—but the *seventh* in March, May, July, and October;
3. The Ides, the *thirteenth*,—but the *fifteenth* in March, May, July, and October.

II. From these three points the days were numbered, not forward, but backward.

Hence after the *Ides* of each month, the days were numbered from the *Calends* of the following month.

III. In numbering backward from each of these points, the day before each was denoted by *prīdie Călendas, Nōnas*, etc.; the second before each by *die tertio* (not sĕcundo; third, not second) *ante Călendas*, etc., the third, by *die quarto*, etc., and so on through the month.

1. Numerals.—This peculiarity in the use of the numerals, designating the *second* day before the Calends, etc., as the *third*, and the *third* as the *fourth*, etc., arises from the fact that the Calends, etc., were themselves counted as the first. Thus *prīdie ante Călendas* becomes the second before the Calends, *die tertio ante Călendas*, the third, etc.

2. Name of Month.—In dates the name of the month is added in the form of an adjective in agreement with *Călendas, Nōnas*, etc., as, *die quarto ante Nōnas Jānuārias*, often shortened to, *quarto ante Nōnas Jan.* or *IV. ante Nōnas Jan.* or without *ante*, as, *IV. Nōnas Jan.*, the second of January.

3. ANTE DIEM.—Instead of *die—ante*, *ante diem* is common, as, ***ante diem quartum Nōnas Jan.*** for *die quarto ante Nōnas Jan.*

4. AS INDECLINABLE NOUNS.—The expressions *ante diem—Cal.*, etc., *prīdie Cal.*, etc., are often used as indeclinable nouns with a preposition, as, ***ex ante diem V. Idus Oct.***, from the 11th of Oct. *Liv.* ***Ad prīdie Nōnas Maias***, till the 6th of May. *Cic.*

709. CALENDAR FOR THE YEAR.

Days of the Month.	March, May, July, Oct.	Jan. Aug. December.	April, June, Sept. Nov.	February.
1	CALENDIS.[1]	CALENDIS.	CALENDIS.	CALENDIS.
2	VI. Nonas.[1]	IV. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.
3	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
4	IV. "	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.
5	III. "	NONIS.	NONIS.	NONIS.
6	Pridie Nonas.	VIII. Idus.	VIII. Idus.	VIII. Idus.
7	NONIS.	VII. "	VII. "	VII. "
8	VIII. Idus.	VI. "	VI. "	VI. "
9	VII. "	V. "	V. "	V. "
10	VI. "	IV. "	IV. "	IV. "
11	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
12	IV. "	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.
13	III. "	IDIBUS.	IDIBUS.	IDIBUS.
14	Pridie Idus.	XIX. Calend.[2]	XVIII. Calend.[2]	XVI. Calend.[2]
15	IDIBUS.	XVIII. "	XVII. "	XV. "
16	XVII. Calend.[2]	XVII. "	XVI. "	XIV. "
17	XVI. "	XVI. "	XV. "	XIII. "
18	XV. "	XV. "	XIV. "	XII. "
19	XIV. "	XIV. "	XIII. "	XI. "
20	XIII. "	XIII. "	XII. "	X. "
21	XII. "	XII. "	XI. "	IX. "
22	XI. "	XI. "	X. "	VIII. "
23	X. "	X. "	IX. "	VII. "
24	IX. "	IX. "	VIII. "	VI. "
25	VIII. "	VIII. "	VII. "	V. (VI.)[3] "
26	VII. "	VII. "	VI. "	IV. (V.) "
27	VI. "	VI. "	V. "	III. (IV.) "
28	V. "	V. "	IV. "	Prid. Cal (III. Cal.)
29	IV. "	IV. "	III. "	(Prid. Cal.)
30	III. "	III. "	Pridie Calend.	
31	Pridie Calend.	Pridie Calend.		

710. ENGLISH AND LATIN DATES.—The table (709) will furnish the learner with the English expression for any Latin date, or the Latin expression for any English date; but in translating Latin, it may be convenient also to have the following rule:

I. If the day is numbered from the Nones or Ides, subtract the number diminished by one from the number of the day on which the Nones or Ides fall:

---

[1] To the Calends, Nones, etc., the name of the month must of course be added. Before Nonas, Idus, etc., *ante* is sometimes used and sometimes omitted (708. III. 2).

[2] The Calends of the following month are of course meant, as the 16th of March for instance is, *XVII. Calendas Aprīles.*

[3] The enclosed forms apply to *leap-year.*

VIII. ante Idus Jan. = 13 − (8 − 1) = 13 − 7 = 6th of January.

II. If the day is numbered from the Calends of the following month, subtract the number diminished by two from the number of days in the current month:

XVIII. ante Cal. Feb. = 31 − (18 − 2) = 31 − 16 = 15th of January.

In Leap-year the 24th and 25th February are both called the sixth before the Calends of March, *VI. Cal. Mart.* The days before the 24th are numbered precisely as if the month contained as usual only 28 days, but the days after the 25th are numbered regularly for a month of 29 days: *V., IV., III. Cal. Mart.*, and *pridie Cal. Mart.*

711. Divisions of Day and Night.—The Roman day, from sun-rise to sun-set, and the night from sun-set to sun-rise, were each divided at all seasons of the year into twelve hours.

1. Night Watches.—The night was also divided into four watches of three Roman hours each.

2. Length of Roman Hour.—The hour, being uniformly $\frac{1}{12}$ of the day or of the night, of course varied in length, with the length of the day or night at different seasons of the year.

IV. Roman Money, Weights, and Measures.

712. Coins.—The principal Roman coins were the *as*, of copper, the *sestertius*, *quīnārius*, *dēnārius*, of silver, and the *aureus*, of gold. Their value in the classical period was as follows:

As,	1 to 2 cents.
Sestertius,	4 "
Quīnārius,	8 "
Dēnārius,	16 "
Aureus = 25 dēnārii,	$4.00.

1. As—the Unit of Money.—The *As* was originally the unit of the Roman currency, and contained a pound of copper, but it was diminished from time to time in weight and value till at last it contained only $^1/_{24}$ of a pound.

But whatever its weight, $\frac{1}{12}$ of the *as* is always called an *uncia*, $\frac{2}{12}$ a *sextans*, $\frac{3}{12}$ a *quadrans*, $\frac{4}{12}$ a *triens*, $\frac{5}{12}$ a *quincunx*, $\frac{6}{12}$ a *sēmis*, $\frac{7}{12}$ a *septunx*, $\frac{8}{12}$ a *bes*, $\frac{9}{12}$ a *dodrans*, $\frac{10}{12}$ a *dextans*, $\frac{11}{12}$ a *deunx*.

2. Sestertius, Quinarius, and Denarius.—The *sestertius* contained originally 2½ asses, the *quīnārius* 5, and the *dēnārius* 10; but as the *as* depreciated in value, the number of *asses* in these coins was increased.

3. As—the General Unit of Computation.—The *as* is also used as the unit in other things as well as in money. Thus

1) *In Weight.*—The *as* is then a pound, and the *uncia* an ounce.

2) *In Measure.*—the *as* is then a foot or a jugĕrum (718), and the *uncia* is $\frac{1}{12}$ of a foot or of a jugerum.

3) *In Interest.*—The *as* is then the unit of interest, which was one per cent. a month, i. e., twelve per year, the *uncia* is $\frac{1}{12}$ per month, i. e., 1 per year, and the *sēmis* is $\frac{6}{12}$ per month, i. e., 6 per year, etc.

4) *In Inheritance.*—The *as* is then the whole estate, and the *uncia* $\frac{1}{12}$ of it: *hēres ex asse*, heir of the whole estate; *hēres ex dodrante*, heir of $\frac{9}{12}$.

713. Computation of Money.—In all sums of money the common unit of computation was the *sestertius*, also called *nummus*; but four special points deserve notice:

I. In all sums of money, the units, tens, and hundreds are denoted by *sestertii* with the proper cardinals:

Quinque sestertii, 5 *sesterces*, vīginti sestertii, 20 *sesterces*, dŭcenti sestertii, 200 *sesterces*.

II. One thousand sesterces are denoted by *mille sestertii*, or *mille sestertium*.

III. In sums less than 1,000,000 sesterces, the thousands are denoted either (1) by *millia sestertiûm* (gen. plur.), or (2) by *sestertia*:

Duo millia sestertium, *or* duo sestertia, 2,000 *sesterces*; quinque millia sestertium, *or* quinque sestertia, 5,000 *sesterces*

With *sestertia* the distributives were generally used, as, *bīna sestertia*, for *duo sestertia*.

IV. In sums containing one or more millions of sesterces, *sestertium* with the value of 100,000 sesterces is used with the proper numeral adverb, dĕcies, vīcies, etc. Thus

Dĕcies sestertium, 1,000,000 (10 × 100,000) sesterces; Vīcies sestertium, 2,000,000 (20 × 100,000) sesterces.

1. Sestertium.—In the examples under IV., *sestertium* is treated and declined as a neuter noun in the singular, though originally it was probably the genitive plur. of *sestertius*, and the full expression for 1,000,000 sesterces was *Dĕcies centēna millia sestertium*. *Centēna millia* was afterward generally omitted, and finally *sestertium* lost its force as a genitive plural, and became a neuter noun in the singular, capable of declension

2. Sestertium Omitted.—Sometimes *sestertium* is omitted, leaving only the numeral adverb: as, *dĕcies*, 1,000,000 sesterces.

3. Sign HS.—The sign HS, is often used for *sestertii*, and sometimes for *sestertia*, or *sestertium*:

Decem HS = 10 *sesterces* (HS = sestertii). Dena HS = 10,000 *sesterces* (HS = sestertia). Decies HS = 1,000,000 *sesterces* (HS = sestertium).

714. Weight.—The basis of Roman weights is the *Lībra*, also called *As* or *Pondo*, equal probably to about 11½ ounces avoirdupois.

1. Ounces.—The *Lībra*, like the *as* in money, is divided into 12 parts called by the names given under 712. 1.

2. Fractions of Ounces.—Parts of ounces also have special names: ½ = sēmiuncia, ⅓ = duella, ¼ = sīcilicus, ⅙ = sextŭla, ⅛ = drachma, $\frac{1}{24}$ = scrūpŭlum, $\frac{1}{48}$ = obŏlus.

715. Dry Measure.—The *Modius* is the basis, equal to about a peck.

1. Sextarius.—This is $\frac{1}{16}$ of a modius.

2. Parts of the Sextarius.—These have special names: $\frac{1}{2}$ = hēmīna, $\frac{1}{8}$ = ăcĕtābŭlum, $\frac{1}{12}$ = cyăthus.

716. Liquid Measure.—The *Amphŏra* is the most convenient unit of the Roman liquid measure, and contained a Roman cubic foot, equivalent probably to about seven gallons, wine measure.

1. Culeus.—Twenty *amphŏrae* make one *Cŭleus*.

2. Parts of Amphora.—These have special names: $\frac{1}{2}$ = urna, $\frac{1}{8}$ = congius, $\frac{1}{48}$ = sextārius, $\frac{1}{96}$ = hēmīna, $\frac{1}{192}$ = quartārius, $\frac{1}{384}$ = ăcētābŭlum, $\frac{1}{576}$ = cyăthus.

717. Long Measure.—The basis of this measure is the Roman foot, equivalent to about 11.6 inches.

1. Combinations of Feet.—Palmipes = $1\frac{1}{4}$ Roman feet; cŭbitus = $1\frac{1}{2}$; passus = 5; stădium = 625.

2. Parts of Foot.—Palmus = $\frac{1}{4}$ foot; uncia = $\frac{1}{12}$; digitus = $\frac{1}{16}$.

718. Square Measure.—The basis of this measure is the *Jūgĕrum*, containing 28,800 Roman square feet, equivalent to about six tenths of an acre.

The parts of the *jugĕrum* have the same name as those of the *As:* uncia = $\frac{1}{12}$, sextans = $\frac{2}{12}$, etc. See 712. 1.

V. Abbreviations.

719. *Names.*

A. = Aulus.
Ap. = Appius.
C. (G.) = Caius (Gaius).
Cn. (Gn.) = Cnaeus (Gnaeus).
D. = Dĕcĭmus.
L. = Lūcius.
M. = Marcus.
M'. = Mānius.
Mam. = Māmercus.
N. = Nŭmĕrius.
P. = Publius.
Q. (Qu.) = Quintus.
S. (Sex.) = Sextus.
Ser. = Servius.
Sp. = Spŭrius.
T. = Tĭtus.
Ti. (Tib.) = Tibĕrius.

720. *Other Abbreviations.*

A. D. = ante diem.
Aed. = aedīlis.
A. U. C. = anno urbis condĭtae.
Cal. (Kal.) = Călendae.
Cos. = consul.
Coss. = consŭles.
D. = dīvus.
D. D. = dōno dĕdit.
Des. = dēsignātus.
D. M. = diis mānĭbus.
D. S. = de suo.
D. S. P. P. = de sua pĕcūnia pŏsuit.
Eq. Rom. = Eques Rōmānus.
F. = fīlius.
F. C. = făciendum cūrāvit.
Id. = Idus.
Imp. = impĕrātor.
Leg. = lēgātus.
Non. = Nōnae.
O. M. = optĭmus maxĭmus.
P. C. = patres conscripti.
Pont. Max. = pontĭfex maxĭmus.
P. R. = pŏpŭlus Rōmānus.
Pr. = praetor.
Praef. = praefectus.
Proc. = prōconsul.
Q. B. F. F. Q. S. = quod bŏnum, fēlix, faustumque sit.
Quir. = Quirītes.
Resp. = res publĭca.
S. = sĕnātus.
S. C. = sĕnātus consultum.
S. D. P. = sălūtem dīcit plūrĭmam.
S. P. Q. R. = sĕnātus pŏpŭlusque Rōmānus.
Tr. Pl. = trĭbūnus plēbis.

INDEX OF VERBS.

721. THIS Index contains an alphabetical list, not only of all the simple verbs in common use which involve any important irregularities, but also of such compounds as seem to require special mention.

But, in regard to compounds of prepositions, two important facts must be borne in mind:

1. That the elements—preposition and verb—often appear in the compound in a changed form. See 338, 2, and 341, 3.

2. That the stem-vowel is often changed in the Perfect and Supine. See 214.

B.

C.

D.

E.

F.

INDEX OF SUBJECTS.

NOTE.—The numbers refer to *articles*, not to pages. *Constr.* = construction; *w.* = with; *ff.* = and the following; *compds.* = compounds; *gen.* or *genit.* = genitive; *gend.* = gender; *acc.* or *accus.* = accusative; *accs.* = accusatives; *loc.* or *locat.* = locative; *adjs.* = adjectives; *preps.* = prepositions, etc.

It has not been thought adviseable to overload this index with such separate words as may be readily referred to classes, or to general rules, or even with such exceptions as may be readily found under their respective heads. Accordingly, the numerous exceptions in Dec. III., and in gender, are not inserted, as they may be best found under the respective endings, 55–115.

TABLE

Showing the corresponding articles in the two editions.

Old.	New.
1–12	1–12
13	——
14–16	19
17	13, 18
18, 19	14, 18
——	15–17
20–23	20–23
24	23, 1
25	——
26	24, 25
27	25, 4
28	25, 5
——	26–36
29	37
30	38
31	39
32	40
33	41
34	41, 1
35	42
36	43
37	44
38	45
39	46
40	47
41	46, 1
42	48
42, 3	49
43	50
44	48, 5
45	51
45, 5	52
46	54
47	53
48	55
49	56
50	57–59
50	63, 64
51	60, 61
——	62, 66
52–54	57, 63, 67
55–57	——
58	69
59	70
60	71
61	72
62	73
63	74
64	75
65	76
66	77
67	78
68	79
69	80
70	81
71	82
72	83
73	84
74	85
75	86–88
76	89–91
77	92
78	93
79	94
80	95
81	96
82	97
83	98
84	67, 1
85, 87	62
86	68, 3
88	67
89	65
90	67, 58, 2, 66, 68, 5
91–98	68
99–104	99–104
——	105
105	106
106, 107	107
108–116	108–116
116, 4	117
117	119
118	118
119	120
120	121
121–123	122, 123
124–148	124–148
148	149, 150
149	151
150	152
151	153
152	154
153	155
154–158	156–158
159–174	159–174
175	175, 176

OLD.	NEW.
176	175
177–198	177–198
199, 200	199
201	200
202	201
203	202
204	203, 204
205–212	205–212
213	221
214	222
215	223
216	217
217	218
218	219
219	224
220	220
221	225
222	226
223	227
224	228
225	229
226	230
227, 228, 230	231
229, 231	232
232, 233	233
234–239	234–239
240	218
241	215
242–247	213, 216, 240
——	241–248
242	249–251
248	258
249	221
250	261, 1
251–254	252–255

OLD.	NEW.
255–258	256, 257
259, 260	214
261	259
262	260
263	262
264	261
265	263
266	264
266, II	265
266, III	268
267	266
268	267
269	269, 270, III.
270	270, II.
271	270, I.
272	271
273	272
273, II	279
273, III	272, II., 273, III.
274	280
275	281
276	274–278
277, 278	276, 278, 3
279	273, II.
280	273, I.
281	282
282	283
283	284
284	285, 286
285	287
286	288
287	289
288–290	290
291–721	291–721

STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.

Arnold's Greek Reading Book, containing the Substance of the Practical Introduction to Greek Construing and a Treatise on the Greek Particles; also, copious Selections from Greek Authors, with Critical and Explanatory English Notes, and a Lexicon. 12mo. 618 pages.

Boise's Exercises in Greek Prose Composition. Adapted to the First Book of Xenophon's Anabasis. By JAMES R. BOISE, Prof. of Greek in University of Michigan. 12mo. 185 pages.

Champlin's Short and Comprehensive Greek Grammar. By J. T. CHAMPLIN, Professor of Greek and Latin in Waterville College. 12mo. 208 pages.

First Lessons in Greek;* or, the Beginner's Companion-Book to Hadley's Grammar. By JAMES MORRIS WHITON, Rector of Hopkins's Grammar School, New Haven, Ct. 12mo.

Hadley's Greek Grammar,* for Schools and Colleges. By JAMES HADLEY, Professor in Yale College. 12mo. 366 pages.

——— **Elements of the Greek Grammar.** 12mo.

Herodotus, Selections from; comprising mainly such portions as give a Connected History of the East, to the Fall of Babylon and the Death of Cyrus the Great. By HERMAN M. JOHNSON, D. D., 12mo. 185 pages.

Homer's Iliad, according to the Text of WOLF, with Notes, by JOHN J. OWEN, D. D., LL. D., Professor of the Latin and Greek Languages and Literature in the Free Academy of the City of New York. 1 vol., 12mo. 759 pages.

——— **Odyssey,** according to the Text of WOLF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. Sixteenth Edition. 12mo.

Kuhner's Greek Grammar. Translated by Professors EDWARDS and TAYLOR. Large 12mo. 620 pages.

Kendrick's Greek Ollendorff.* Being a Progressive Exhibition of the Principles of the Greek Grammar. By ASAHEL C. KENDRICK, Prof. of Greek Language in the University of Rochester. 12mo. 371 pages.

Owen's Xenophon's Anabasis. A new and enlarged edition, with numerous references to Kuhner's, Crosby's, and Hadley's Grammars. 12mo.

——— **Homer's Iliad.** 12mo. 759 pages.

——— **Greek Reader.** 12mo.

——— **Acts of the Apostles,** in Greek, with a Lexicon. 12mo.

——— **Homer's Odyssey.** Tenth Edition. 12mo.

——— **Thucydides.** With Map. 12mo. 700 pages.

——— **Xenophon's Cyropædia.** Eighth Edition. 12mo.

Plato's Apology and Crito.* With Notes by W. S. TYLER, Graves Professor of Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 180 pp.